This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

Educ T 918.98.795

Harvard College Library

FROM THE ESTATE OF

JAMES BRADSTREET GREENOUGH

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN HARVARD COLLEGE
1883–1901

RECEIVED JULY 12, 1910

3 2044 097 078 216

THE

BEGINNER'S LATIN BOOK

BY

JAMES B. SMILEY, A.M. (HARVARD)

AND

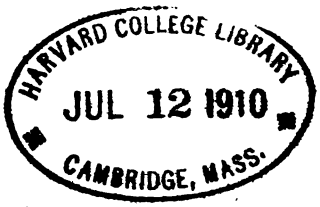
HELEN L. STORKE, A.B. (VASSAR)

INSTRUCTORS IN GREEK AND LATIN IN THE CLEVELAND WEST HIGH SCHOOL

NEW YORK ·:· CINCINNATI ·:· CHICAGO

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

Educ T 918.98.795
Educ T 968.97
~~Educ T 918.98~~



COPYRIGHT, 1898, BY
J. B. SMILEY AND H. L. STORKE.

BEGINNER'S LAT. BK.

W. P. I

PREFACE

THIS book is different in some essential points from every other designed for beginners now in use in our schools. This fact gives the reason for its existence.

Its vocabulary is made up largely of words common to Caesar, Nepos, and the Viri Romae, and has been selected with great care from those found most frequently in these sources.

The noun and verb have been treated for the most part in alternating lessons. Their forms have been analyzed in such a manner as to give practical guidance to the pupil, without any effort on our part to trace in such analysis the historical development of the words, even where exact knowledge in this line is possible. Verb and noun exercises as mere form drill have been suggested, rather than given in set exercises.

Carefully graded reading lessons, fifty in number, are an important feature of the book. About three fifths of these are based on Caesar, about one fifth consists of fables, and the rest of a Latin version of the Labors of Hercules. These are led up to gradually in vocabulary and exercises in such a way as to smooth the path of the pupil, and at the same time leave difficulties sufficient to compel mental exertion on his part.

Word formation has been treated in a simple and suggestive way, and made practical by brief exercises running through the latter half of the book. Word lists occur at intervals, in which

related words are starred. These furnish material to the teacher for almost unlimited exercises on vocabulary, form, word comparison, and English derivatives.

The main part of the book concludes with a series of connected English passages for translation into Latin, and colloquia drawn from incidents, historical and traditional, in Caesar's life. These may be taken or omitted at the discretion of the teacher.

The appendix contains a review of forms and constructions, with full references to the treatment of the same subjects in the text.

In spelling we have in most instances used Brambach as our authority, and in the marking of hidden quantities we have followed in the main the usage of Marx. We have, for the sake of uniformity in the principal parts of verbs, given the masculine form of the perfect passive participle, even where, in the nature of the case, the neuter form would be used.

We wish to acknowledge our especial obligation to Professor John Williams White of Harvard University for his kind permission to use the results of his experience as embodied in his Greek textbooks for beginners, and to Dr. Theodore H. Johnston, Principal of the Cleveland West High School, for his helpful suggestions during the progress of our work.

We send this book forth in the belief that it will supply a need in its department, and lead easily and naturally into the broad and beautiful fields of Latin literature.

JAMES B. SMILEY.
HELEN L. STORKE.

CLEVELAND, May, 1898.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Lesson		Page
I.	The Alphabet. — Pronunciation	11
II.	Syllables. — Quantity. — Accent	12
III.	Inflection	15
IV.	First Declension. — Agreement of Adjectives	16
V.	First Conjugation, Present and Imperfect Indicative Active. — Direct Object	19
VI.	Second Conjugation, Present and Imperfect Indicative Active.	22
VII.	Second Declension, Nouns in **-us** and **-um**. — Limiting Genitive	23
VIII.	Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions. — Indirect Object. — Kinship of Words. — Word List I.	25
IX.	Third Conjugation, Present and Imperfect Indicative Active	28
X.	Second Declension, Nouns in **-er** and **-ir**. — Ablative of Separation	30
XI.	Adjectives of the Second Declension. — Complementary Infinitive. — Predicate Nominative and Appositive	32
XII.	Third Declension, Mute Stems, Labials and Palatals	35
XIII.	Third Declension, Mute Stems, Linguals	37
XIV.	Word List II. — How to Read. — Reading Lesson	39
XV.	Fourth Conjugation, Present and Imperfect Indicative Active. — Ablative of Specification. — Questions and Answers	40
XVI.	Third Declension, Liquid and Sibilant Stems	43
XVII.	Third Conjugation, Verbs in **-iō**, Present and Imperfect Indicative Active	45
XVIII.	Third Declension, **I**-Stems. — Ablative of Accompaniment	47
XIX.	First and Second Conjugations, Future Indicative Active. — Substantive Use of Adjectives	49
XX.	**I**-Stems continued. — Word List III. — Reading Lesson	51
XXI.	Third and Fourth Conjugations, Future Indicative Active. — Double Dative	54
XXII.	Fourth Declension. — Demonstrative Pronoun **Is**	55

LESSON		PAGE
XXIII.	Cardinal Numerals. — Accusative of Time and Space. — Reading Lesson	58
XXIV.	The Irregular Verb **Sum**, Present, Imperfect, and Future. — The Relative Pronoun. — Dative of the Possessor	60
XXV.	First Conjugation, Perfect System, Active. — Ablative of Description	63
XXVI.	Ordinal Numerals. — Word List IV. — Reading Lesson	66
XXVII.	Second Conjugation, Perfect System, Active. — Ablative of Time	68
XXVIII.	Third Declension, General Rules for Gender. — Irregular Nouns	70
XXIX.	Third Declension, Exceptions to General Rules for Gender. — Ablative Absolute. — Reading Lesson	72
XXX.	Third Conjugation, Perfect System, Active. — Ablative of Cause	75
XXXI.	Adjectives of the Third Declension. — Ablative of Manner	77
XXXII.	Fourth Conjugation and Verbs in -iō of the Third Conjugation, Perfect System, Active. — Word List V. — Reading Lesson	79
XXXIII.	Comparison of Adjectives. — Ablative with Comparatives	82
XXXIV.	The Verb **Sum**, Perfect System. — **Possum**. — The Fifth Declension. — Reading Lesson	85
XXXV.	First Conjugation, Passive Voice. — Ablative of Means. — Reading Lesson	88
XXXVI.	Prepositions. — Ablative of the Agent. — Reading Lesson	91
XXXVII.	Comparison of Adjectives, Irregular. — Reading Lesson	94
XXXVIII.	Second Conjugation, Passive Voice. — Word List VI. — Reading Lesson	96
XXXIX.	Pronominal Adjectives. — Review of Comparison. — Reading Lesson	99
XL.	Formation and Comparison of Adverbs. — Reading Lesson	101
XLI.	Third Conjugation, Passive Voice. — Simple Forms of Indirect Discourse. — Reading Lesson	104
XLII.	Review of Cardinals and Ordinals. — Ablative of Degree of Difference. — Reading Lesson	106
XLIII.	Personal and Reflexive Pronouns. — Reading Lesson	108
XLIV.	Fourth Conjugation, Passive Voice. — Review of the Passive. — Word List VII. — Reading Lesson	111
XLV.	Demonstrative Pronouns. — Dative with Adjectives. — Reading Lesson	113

Lesson		Page
XLVI.	Third Conjugation, Verbs in -iō, Passive Voice. — Dative with Intransitives. — Reading Lesson	117
XLVII.	Possessive Pronouns. — Partitive Genitive. — Indirect Discourse continued. — Reading Lesson	119
XLVIII.	Compounds of **Sum**. — Dative with Compounds. — Reading Lesson	123
XLIX.	Deponent Verbs. — Ablative with Certain Deponents. — Reading Lesson	125
L.	Semi-Deponents. — Review of Passive. — Word List VIII. — Reading Lesson	127
LI.	Participles. — Reading Lesson	130
LII.	Word Formation	133
LIII.	Word Formation continued. — Root **duc**, *lead*	135
LIV.	Interrogative Pronoun. — Two Accusatives. — Reading Lesson. — Root **spec**, *see, spy*	137
LV.	Irregular Verbs, Indicative. — **Ferō** and its Compounds. — Reading Lesson. — Root **mit**, *send*	139
LVI.	Indefinite Pronouns. — Word List IX. — Reading Lesson. Root **fac**, *make* or *do*	142
LVII.	Irregular Verbs, **Volō** and its Compounds. — Reading Lesson. — Root **fer**, *bear*	145
LVIII.	Review of Pronouns. — Root **leg**, *gather*	147
LIX.	Irregular Verbs, Indicative, **Eō** and **Fīō**. — Constructions of Place. — Reading Lesson. — Root **da**, *give*	149
LX.	Subjunctive Mood, **Sum**. — Independent Uses of the Subjunctive. — Reading Lesson. — Root **ac**, *sharp*	153
LXI.	Subjunctive Mood, Sequence of Tenses. — Reading Lesson. — Root **sta**, *stand*	155
LXII.	Subjunctive Mood, First Conjugation. — Purpose Clauses. — Reading Lesson. — Root **fa**, *shine, show*	158
LXIII.	Subjunctive Mood, Second Conjugation. — Verbs of Fearing. — Reading Lesson. — Root **dic**, *show, point*. — Word List X.	161
LXIV.	Subjunctive Mood, Third Conjugation. — Relative Clauses of Purpose. — Reading Lesson. — Root **es**, *be, exist*	165
LXV.	Subjunctive Mood, Fourth Conjugation. — Clauses of Result. — Reading Lesson. — Root **ag**, *drive*	167
LXVI.	Subjunctive Mood, Third Conjugation, Verbs in -iō. — Relative Clauses of Characteristic. — Reading Lesson. — Root **ten**, *stretch, hold*	170

Lesson		Page
LXVII.	Review of the Subjunctive Mood, Regular Verbs. — Indirect Questions. — Reading Lesson. — Root **cap**, *take*	173
LXVIII.	Subjunctive Mood, **Ferō**. — Conditional Sentences, Simple. — Reading Lesson. — Root **reg**, *stretch, guide*	175
LXIX.	Subjunctive Mood, **Eō**. — Future Conditions. — Reading Lesson. — Root **i**, *go*	178
LXX.	Subjunctive Mood, **Fīō**. — Conditions Contrary to Fact. — Reading Lesson. — Root **luc**, *shine*. — Word List XI.	181
LXXI.	Subjunctive Mood, **Volō** and its Compounds. — Noun and Adjective Review. — Reading Lesson. — Root **mu, mov**, *move*	185
LXXII.	**Cum**, Causal and Concessive. — Noun and Adjective Review. — Reading Lesson. — Root **iug**, *join, yoke*	187
LXXIII.	Temporal Clauses, **Cum** Temporal. — Noun and Adjective Review. — Reading Lesson. — Root **ped**, *tread*	189
LXXIV.	Imperative Mood, Regular Verbs. — Noun Review. — Reading Lesson. — Root **cla**, *call*	192
LXXV.	Imperative Mood, Irregular Verbs. — Noun Review completed	195
LXXVI.	Gerund and Gerundive. — Some Ways of expressing Purpose. — Reading Lesson. — Root **voc**, *call*	198
LXXVII.	Supine. — Expressions of Purpose. — Reading Lesson. — Root **flu**, *flow*. — Word List XII.	201
LXXVIII.	Periphrastic Conjugations. — Dative of the Agent. — Reading Lesson. — Root **cad**, *fall*	205
LXXIX.	Indirect Discourse, Principal and Subordinate Clauses. — Reading Lesson. — Root **col**, *till*	208
LXXX.	General Verb Review, Regular Verbs. — Reading Lesson. — Root **man, ma**, *measure*	211
LXXXI.	General Verb Review, Irregular Verbs. — Reading Lesson. — Root **hab**, *have*. — Word List XIII.	212

Continuous Exercises in Latin Prose, I.–XI.	214
Conloquia, I.–XI.	219
Table of Declension	225
Table of Conjugation	240
Rules of Syntax	243
Table of Abbreviations	250
Vocabulary	251

SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS

1. Every Latin exercise should be carefully pronounced by the pupils.

2. Groups of words in common phrases should be committed to memory and frequently recited, and brief passages in Latin prose or verse should be learned by the pupils.

3. No word should be accepted from the pupil as correctly written unless every syllable long by nature has its mark of quantity.

4. Constant attention should be called to related words.

5. The word lists should be made in each case a separate lesson and used for emphasizing suggestion four, as well as for drill in remembering words.

6. "Vocabulary and form" should be made a daily watchword, and frequent attention should be called to the terminal parts of inflected words as showing their relation to others.

7. Rapid oral work should be demanded in translating from Latin into English and from English into Latin.

8. No pupil should be allowed in translating to violate in the slightest degree the purity of the English idiom.

9. The reading lessons should be made the basis, whenever time serves, of easy colloquia between pupil and teacher or between pupil and pupil.

10. Stories of Roman life should be told in the class, and the pupils encouraged in every way to learn more of the people whose language they are studying; Caesar, Cicero, Pompey, and other eminent Romans should be made living personalities to them.

11. Some ideas of the house and of the home life of the Romans should be given to the pupils.

12. The Roman arms, armor, and utensils should be described and, as far as possible, shown in pictures and models.

HINTS TO PUPILS

1. Observe closely every word, form, and construction as you meet it in your work.

2. Learn each lesson with absolute thoroughness.

3. Connect each lesson with the preceding one by a systematic review in thought of its prominent points. No teacher's assigned review can benefit you so much.

4. Compare words with one another and note carefully those that are related in form and meaning.

5. Observe the turn in meaning given to the body or root of a word by the various prefixes and suffixes.

6. Try to gain an idea of a new sentence or paragraph by seeing the words in the Latin order. Think your way into the meaning. Use your imagination to guide you in deciding what a person would be likely to say under the circumstances.

7. Consult the general vocabulary sparingly, and never until you have used your utmost endeavor to discern the meaning of a word through association or connection.

8. Observe sharply and pronounce accurately such words as you must look up, and make them thoroughly your own. Then turn to the vocabulary for their meaning.

9. Learn to use all helps in the most effective way. Look up all references and learn them. Never shirk the effort to understand and use every suggestion made in note and example.

10. Read these hints frequently and follow the instructions here given.

THE BEGINNER'S LATIN BOOK

LESSON I

THE ALPHABET

1. The Latin alphabet has twenty-four letters, and is the same as the English, except that it lacks **j** and **w**. The character **i** has the force of both a vowel and a consonant; **k** is seldom used; **y** and **z** occur chiefly in words borrowed from the Greek.

2. Vowels. — The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u, y**; the other letters are consonants.

3. Vowels may be either long or short. In this book long vowels will be marked (¯); all others are to be regarded as short.

4. Consonants. — The consonants are divided into Mutes, Liquids, Spirants, and Double Consonants.

The mutes are	labials or p-mutes:	**p, b, (ph).**
	linguals or t-mutes:	**t, d, (th).**
	palatals or k-mutes:	**k, c, g, q, (ch).**
The liquids are		**l, m, n, (r).**
The spirants are		**f, h, s, z.** (**s** and **z** are also sibilants.)
The double consonants are . . .		**x** (**cs** or **gs**) and **z** (**ds**).

PRONUNCIATION

5. The two methods in use are the Roman and the English. The Roman is recommended.

6. Roman Method. — The vowels are pronounced as follows: —

ā like the second *a* in *ahd*	**ă** like the first *a* in *ahd*
ē " *e* in *prey*[1]	**ĕ** " *e* in *met*
ī " *i* " *machine*[1]	**ĭ** " *i* " *pin*
ō " *o* " *tone*[1]	**ŏ** " *o* " *for*
ū " *oo* " *tool*[1]	**ŭ** " *oo* " *took*

y is pronounced like the German **ü**, a sound intermediate between **u** and **i**.

7. The diphthongs are pronounced as follows: —

ae like *ai* in *aisle*[1]	**oe** like *oi* in *toil*
au " *ou* " *our*[1]	**eu** " *eu* " *feud*
ei " *ei* " *vein*[1]	**ui** " *we*

8. Most of the consonants are pronounced as in English. The following points are to be emphasized: —

c is like *c* in *can*	**v** is like *w* in *went*
g " *g* " *go*	**ph** " *ph* " *alphabet*
i consonant is like *y* in *yes*	**ch** " *ch* " *ache*
s is like *s* in *so*	**bs** " *ps* " *lips*
t " *t* " *tin*	**h** is a mere breathing

9. English Method. — In this method the words are in the main pronounced as in English.

LESSON II

SYLLABLES — QUANTITY — ACCENT

10. Syllables. — Each Latin word has as many syllables as it has separate vowels and diphthongs.

11. A single consonant between two vowels is joined with the following vowel: **a-nī-mus**, *mind*.

12. Doubled consonants are always separated: **pu-el-la**, *girl*.

---

[1] But without the English glide.

13. Of two or more consonants standing between two vowels, as many are joined with the following vowel as can be pronounced with it: **e-pi-stu-la**, *letter;* **mā-gnus**, *great;* **ma-gi-strī**, *masters;* but in compounds the component parts are separated: **sub-le-vō**, *I lift up.*

14. The last syllable of a word is called the ultima; the next to the last, the penult; the one before that, the antepenult.

15. Quantity of Vowels. —

NOTE. — A few general rules for determining the length of vowels are here given, but in many cases the quantity can be learned by observation only. The pupil should carefully note and learn the length of each vowel in every Latin word as it occurs in this book. Too much stress cannot be laid upon this point.

1. A vowel before another vowel or **h** is short: **cō-pĭ-a**, *abundance;* **mĭ-hi**, *to me.*

2. A vowel before **nd** and **nt** is short: **vo-căn-dus**, *to be called;* **vo-cănt**, *they call.*

3. A vowel formed by contraction is long: **nīl (nĭ-hil)**, *nothing.*

4. A vowel before **i** consonant is long: **Pom-pē-ius**, *Pompey.*

5. A vowel before **nf, ns, gm, gn** is long: **īn-fe-rō**, *I bring in;* **īn-su-la**, *island;* **ā-gmen**, *line of march;* **ī-gnis**, *fire.*

6. Diphthongs are long: **cāu-sa**, *cause.*

16. Quantity of Syllables. — Syllables[1] are distinguished as long or short, according to the time required in pronunciation, a long syllable in general requiring double the time of a short one.

1. A syllable containing a long vowel or diphthong is long by nature: **hūi-us**, *of this one;* **ae-dēs**, *temple.*

2. A syllable containing a short vowel followed by a double consonant or by two or more consonants (except a mute followed by **l** or **r**) is long by position[2]: **vo-cant**, *they call.*

---

[1] Distinguish carefully between length of syllable and length of vowel.

[2] Such a vowel retains its short sound.

3. A syllable containing a short vowel not followed by two or more consonants is short.

4. A syllable ending in a short vowel followed by a mute with l or r is common; that is, the syllable is short in prose, but in poetry may be either long or short.

17. Accent. — 1. Words of two syllables are accented on the penult: **mā-ter**, *mother*.

2. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult if it is long, otherwise on the antepenult: **a-mī-cus**, *friend;* **dŏ-mi-nus**, *master*.

3. The ultima is never accented.

4. Certain words like **-ne**, **-que**, called enclitics and always attached to some other word, draw the accent to the syllable next preceding, whether this is long or short.

18. The following list of words should be carefully noted and accurately learned. They are in very common use and are often mispronounced.

bene, *well*
cottīdiē, *daily*
dēbeō, *I owe*
enim, *for*
etiam, *also*
ferē, *almost*
fīlius, *son*
hīc, *here, he*
īdem (masc.), *the same*
idem (neut.), *the same*
īnferō, *I bring in*
īnsula, *island*
ita, *thus*
Ītalia, *Italy*
item, *likewise*
māter, *mother*
mihi, *to me*
modo, *only*
-ne (enclitic), sign of a question
nē . . . quidem, *not even*
nē, *lest*
pater, *father*
quia, *because*
quīdam, *certain*
quīn, *but that*
quis, *who*
rēgnō, *I rule*
rēx, *king*
sīc, *so*
tot, *so many*
vērō, *in truth*

LESSON III

INFLECTION

19. Parts of Speech. — These are, as in English, the noun, adjective, pronoun, verb, adverb, preposition, conjunction, and interjection. To the last four the common name of particle is given.

20. Inflection. — This is a change made in the form of a word, to show its grammatical relations. Of the parts of speech the first four are capable of inflection, which in the case of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns is called declension, and, in the case of verbs, conjugation.

21. Declension. — In Latin, declined words have six cases[1]: Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, Ablative.

1. The Nominative is the case of the Subject or Predicate of a finite[2] verb.

2. The Genitive denotes Possession and some other relations, and may usually be translated by the English possessive or by the objective with *of* and some other prepositions.

3. The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object, and corresponds to the English objective with *to* or *for*.

4. The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object of transitive verbs and of some prepositions.

5. The Vocative is the case of Direct Address.

6. The Ablative expresses relations usually translated by the English objective with *in*, *at*, *on*, *by*, *with*, and *from*, and is often accompanied by a preposition.

---

[1] The group of languages to which the Latin belongs had originally at least eight cases; but the Locative and Instrumental have, except in the case of a few forms, been absorbed by the others.

[2] A finite verb is any form of the verb found in the Indicative, Subjunctive, or Imperative moods.

Stem. — That part of a noun to which significant suffixes, [illegible] endings, are attached is called its Stem. These end- [illegible] in all instances be separated from their combination [illegible] final vowel of the stem. Tables of terminations, made [illegible] most part of such combinations, will be given with the [illegible] declensions. These should be thoroughly committed to [illegible]

[illegible] part of the word which remains unchanged in inflec- [illegible] called the Base. A noun is declined by [illegible] to the base the proper case endings.

Gender. — There are three genders in Latin: the Mascu- [illegible] and Neuter.

[illegible] noun is determined partly by significa- [illegible] by termination.

General Rules for Gender. — Names of males, rivers, winds, [illegible] are masculine.

[illegible] countries, cities, islands, trees, and plants are [illegible]

[illegible] are neuter.

[illegible] as [illegible]

Number. — [illegible] numbers, as in English, the [illegible] their terminations.

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible] distinguished by the [illegible] of the stem.[1]

[illegible]

28. Latin nouns of the First Declension end regularly in **ă** and are feminine. Those denoting males are masculine. The stem ends in **ă**.[1]

29. **Silva**,[2] f., *forest, wood;* stem **silva-**, base **silv-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	TABLE OF TERMINATIONS	
			SING.	PLUR.
N.	**silv-a**, *a forest*[3]	**silv-ae**, *forests*	**a**	**ae**
G.	**silv-ae**, *of a forest*	**silv-ārum**, *of forests*	**ae**	**ārum**
D.	**silv-ae**, *to a forest*, etc.	**silv-īs**, *to forests*, etc.	**ae**	**īs**
Ac.	**silv-am**, *a forest*	**silv-ās**, *forests*	**am**	**ās**
V.	**silv-a**, *oh forest*	**silv-ae**, *oh forests*	**a**	**ae**
Ab.	**silv-ā**, *from a forest*, etc.	**silv-īs**, *from forests*, etc.	**ā**	**īs**

30. Observe the stem and base as given above. The stem may be found by dropping **-rum** of the Genitive plural. The stem vowel joined with the case ending forms the termination. The terminations added to the base give the several case forms.

31. **VOCABULARY**

fossa, **ae**, f., *ditch, trench.*
Gallia, **ae**, f., *Gaul* (a country of ancient Europe).
īnsula, **ae**, f., *island.*
porta, **ae**, f., *gate, door.*
terra, **ae**, f., *land, country.*
alta, *high, deep.*
longa, *long.*
māgna, *large, great.*
et, conj., *and.*
est,[4] *he*,[5] *she*, or *it is.*
sunt,[4] *they are.*

Decline all the nouns and adjectives in the above vocabulary like **silva**.

---

[1] The stem ended originally in **ā**.

[2] Notice cases having like endings. Learn the base and the table of terminations, and you will be able to decline any noun of the First Declension.

[3] There is no article in Latin. **Silva** means *forest, a forest*, or *the forest.*

[4] Observe that the third person singular of the verb ends in **-t**, and the third person plural in **-nt**. This is true of every verb in the language in the Indicative and Subjunctive moods.

[5] **Est** alone means *he is*, etc.; but with an expressed subject it is translated by *is* simply. So also of other verbs.

22. Stem. — That part of a noun to which significant suffixes, called case endings, are attached is called its Stem. These endings cannot in all instances be separated from their combination with the final vowel of the stem. Tables of terminations, made up for the most part of such combinations, will be given with the several declensions. These should be thoroughly committed to memory.

23. That part of the word which remains unchanged in inflection is for convenience called the Base. A noun is declined by joining to the base the proper case endings.

24. Gender. — There are three genders in Latin: the Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

The gender of the Latin noun is determined partly by signification, but more largely by termination.

25. General Rules for Gender. — Names of males, rivers, winds, mountains, and months are masculine.

Names of females, countries, cities, islands, trees, and plants are feminine.

Indeclinable nouns are neuter.

Special rules will be given as needed.

26. Number. — There are two numbers, as in English, the Singular and the Plural, distinguished by their terminations.

LESSON IV

THE FIRST OR A-DECLENSION

27. There are five declensions in Latin, distinguished by the ending of the Genitive singular and the final letter of the stem.[1]

[1] See **22**.

28. Latin nouns of the First Declension end regularly in **ă** and are feminine. Those denoting males are masculine. The stem ends in **ă**.[1]

29. **Silva**,[2] f., *forest, wood;* stem **silva-**, base **silv-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	TABLE OF TERMINATIONS	
			SING. **a**	PLUR. **ae**
N.	**silv-a**, *a forest*[3]	**silv-ae**, *forests*		
G.	**silv-ae**, *of a forest*	**silv-ārum**, *of forests*	**ae**	**ārum**
D.	**silv-ae**, *to a forest*, etc.	**silv-īs**, *to forests*, etc.	**ae**	**īs**
Ac.	**silv-am**, *a forest*	**silv-ās**, *forests*	**am**	**ās**
V.	**silv-a**, *oh forest*	**silv-ae**, *oh forests*	**a**	**ae**
Ab.	**silv-ā**, *from a forest*, etc.	**silv-īs**, *from forests*, etc.	**ā**	**īs**

30. Observe the stem and base as given above. The stem may be found by dropping **-rum** of the Genitive plural. The stem vowel joined with the case ending forms the termination. The terminations added to the base give the several case forms.

31. **VOCABULARY**

fossa, **ae**, f., *ditch, trench.*
Gallia, **ae**, f., *Gaul* (a country of ancient Europe).
īnsula, **ae**, f., *island.*
porta, **ae**, f., *gate, door.*
terra, **ae**, f., *land, country.*
alta, *high, deep.*
longa, *long.*
māgna, *large, great.*
et, conj., *and.*
est,[4] *he*,[5] *she*, or *it is.*
sunt,[4] *they are.*

Decline all the nouns and adjectives in the above vocabulary like **silva**.

---

[1] The stem ended originally in **ā**.

[2] Notice cases having like endings. Learn the base and the table of terminations, and you will be able to decline any noun of the First Declension.

[3] There is no article in Latin. **Silva** means *forest, a forest,* or *the forest.*

[4] Observe that the third person singular of the verb ends in **-t**, and the third person plural in **-nt**. This is true of every verb in the language in the Indicative and Subjunctive moods.

[5] **Est** alone means *he is*, etc.; but with an expressed subject it is translated by *is* simply. So also of other verbs.

32. Examine the following: —

Īnsula est māgna, *the island is large.*

Observe that **īnsula** is the subject of **est**, and is in the Nominative case; and that **māgna** is in the Nominative case, in agreement with **īnsula**.

RULES. — 1. The subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative case.

2. The adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.

33. EXERCISES

I. 1. Fossa est alta. 2. Porta est alta et longa. 3. Terra est māgna. 4. Gallia est māgna. 5. Īnsulae sunt māgnae. 6. Portae sunt māgnae et longae. 7. Silvae sunt māgnae. 8. Fossae sunt longae. 9. Fossae sunt altae et longae. 10. Porta est māgna.

Pronounce the above exercise with careful attention to quantity and accent. After translating, copy the Latin accurately, marking the quantity of all long vowels and indicating accented syllables. This practice is valuable, and, if continued for the first fifteen or sixteen lessons, will amply repay you for the time spent.

In the following exercise, and in all your future translations into Latin, mark the quantity of the vowels in all syllables long by nature.

II. 1. The ditch is long. 2. The islands are large. 3. The gate is high and long. 4. Gaul is large. 5. The land is large. 6. The ditches are deep. 7. The gates are high. 8. The island is long.

ANCIENT ROMAN COINS

LESSON V

THE FIRST CONJUGATION, PRESENT AND IMPERFECT TENSES — THE DIRECT OBJECT

34. The Latin verb is regularly inflected through four conjugations, distinguished by the vowel preceding the ending **-re** of the Present Infinitive active: **ā** in the First Conjugation, **ē** in the Second, **ĕ** in the Third, and **ī** in the Fourth. Examples: **vocā-re,** *to call;* **monē-re,** *to advise;* **rege-re,** *to rule;* **audī-re,** *to hear.*

35. Voice. — Mood. — The Latin has two voices, the Active and the Passive, and three moods, the Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative, besides other forms of the verb: Infinitive, Participle, Gerund, and Supine, to be explained later.

36. Tenses. — The Latin has, in the Indicative mood, six tenses, the Present, Imperfect, and Future, called tenses of continued action, and Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect, called tenses of completed action.

Each tense is inflected through two numbers, the singular and the plural.

37. Principal Parts. — The principal parts of a Latin verb in the active voice consist of the first pers. sing. Pres. Ind. act., the Pres. Inf. act., the first pers. sing. Perf. Ind. act., and the Perf. Pass. Participle.

They are so called because from them all parts of the verb may be formed.

Example:	PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PART.
	vocō	**vocāre**	**vocāvī**	**vocātus**

38. Stems. — Verb forms are built upon three stems, the Present, the Perfect, and the Participial.

The Present stem of verbs of the First Conjugation ends in **ā**, and may be found by dropping the ending **-re** of the Pres. Inf. act.: **vocā-re,** *to call:* stem **vocā.**

39. Personal Endings. — The Present tense is formed from the Present stem by adding to it the following endings, which should be thoroughly committed to memory.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
First Person	**-m** (or **-ō**)[1]	**-mus**
Second "	**-s**	**-tis**
Third "	**-t**	**-nt**

All verbs whose Present stem ends in **ā** are classed under the First Conjugation.

40. **Vocō**, *I call.* Pres. stem **vocā-**

Princ. Parts, **voc-ō, vocā-re, vocā-vī, vocā-tus**

PRESENT TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. **voc-ō**,[2] *I*[3] *call*[4]	**vocā-mus**, *we call*
2. **vocā-s**,[5] *thou callest* (*you call*)	**vocā-tis**, *you call*
3. **voca-t**, *he calls*	**voca-nt**, *they call*

41. In the Indicative, **-bā** is the sign of the Imperfect tense. The Imperfect tense of **vocō** consists of the Present stem **vocā** + the Imperfect tense-sign, **bā** + personal endings.

IMPERFECT TENSE

1. **vocā-ba-m**, *I called*[6]	**vocā-bā-mus**, *we called*
2. **vocā-bā-s**, *you called*	**vocā-bā-tis**, *you called*
3. **vocā-ba-t**, *he called*	**vocā-ba-nt**, *they called*

---

[1] These endings are remnants of old pronouns, used as subjects, which by their form indicate the person of the verb.

[2] **Voc-ō** is for **vocā-ō**. Instead of **m**, **ō** is generally used as the ending of the first pers. Pres. Ind. act. In the First Conjugation it absorbs **ā** of the stem. See **39**.

[3] Observe that in English the personal pronouns, when used as subjects, are expressed and precede the verb; that in Latin they are not expressed as separate words (except for emphasis), but are indicated by suffixes. The same is true of modifications of mood, tense, and number. It is the end of a verb, then, that must be examined to determine its relations of mood, tense, person, and number: **voca-t**, *calls-he;* i.e. *he calls.*

[4] Also, *I am calling* or *do call.*

[5] Always used when but one person is referred to, and usually translated *you call.*

[6] Also, and frequently, *I was calling* or *did call.*

42. Examine the following: —

Agricola nautam vocat, *the farmer calls the sailor.*

Nautam is the direct object of **vocat,** and is in the Accusative case.

RULE. — The direct object of a transitive verb is in the Accusative case.

43. VOCABULARY

agricola, ae, m., *farmer.*
nauta, ae, m., *sailor.*
prōvincia, ae, f., *province.*
rīpa, ae, f., *river bank.*
bona, *good.*
dēnsa, *dense, thick.*
convocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call together.*
laudō, āre, āvī, ātus, *praise.*
in, prep. with Acc., *into, against;* with Abl., *in, on, upon, over.*
erant, *they were* (*there were*).
erat, *he was* (*there was*).

NOTE. — Inflect with suitable objects selected from the vocabulary **convocō** and **laudō,** in the Present and Imperfect tenses, translating the forms in each case.

44. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Agricola nautās vocat. 2. Nauta agricolās in silvam convocābat. 3. Nauta in prōvinciā māgnā est. 4. Agricolās in dēnsās silvās convocābant. 5. Nautae in altā rīpā erant. 6. Silva est dēnsa et māgna. 7. Prōvincia māgna est in Galliā. 8. Nautās in īnsulam māgnam convocābās. 9. Fossae in prōvinciā erant bonae. 10. Nautās et agricolās laudābāmus. 11. In Galliam nautās convocās.

II. 1. The sailor was calling the farmers. 2. The farmers were in the dense woods. 3. The provinces were large. 4. The sailors were on the high river bank. 5. The woods were high and dense. 6. He called the sailors into Gaul. 7. You were calling together the sailors into the large province. 8. The island is large and long. 9. We are praising the farmers in the large province. 10. They were praising the sailors on the island.

LESSON VI

THE SECOND CONJUGATION, PRESENT AND IMPERFECT TENSES

45. All verbs whose Present stem ends in **ē** are classed under the Second Conjugation.

46. **Moneō**, *I advise* or *warn*. Pres. Stem **monē-**
Princ. Parts, **mone-ō, monē-re, mon-uī, moni-tus**

PRESENT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1.	**mone-ō**, *I advise* or *am advising*	**monē-mus**, *we advise*, etc.
2.	**monē-s**, *you advise*, etc.	**monē-tis**, *you advise*, etc.
3.	**mone-t**, *he advises*, etc.	**mone-nt**, *they advise*, etc.

IMPERFECT TENSE

1.	**monē-ba-m**, *I advised* or *was advising*	**monē-bā-mus**, *we advised*, etc.
2.	**monē-bā-s**, *you advised*, etc.	**monē-bā-tis**, *you advised*, etc.
3.	**monē-ba-t**, *he advised*, etc.	**monē-ba-nt**, *they advised*, etc.

47. The Imperfect tense of **moneō** consists of the present stem **monē** + the Imperfect tense sign **-bā** + the personal endings. See **39**.

NOTE. — Inflect **moneō** in the singular with the direct object **agricolam**, and in the plural with **nautās**. Inflect all the verbs in the following vocabulary with suitable objects selected from Vocabularies 1–3. Translate your forms into English, taking them in irregular order, and render them again into Latin in the same way. Repeat this exercise with every verb-paradigm given in this book.

48. VOCABULARY

Belgae, ārum, m. pl., *the Belgae*,[1] a people of Gaul.
Celtae, ārum, m. pl., *the Celts*, a people of Gaul.
cōpia, ae, f., *abundance*; in pl., *supplies, troops*.
via, ae, f., *way, road*.
armō, āre, āvī, ātus, *arm*.
habeō, ēre, uī, itus, *have*.
properō, āre, āvī, ātus, *hasten*.
videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *see*.
nōn, adv., *not*.
per, prep. w. Acc., *through*.
saepe, adv., *often*.

[1] Many Latin proper names are rendered by the same form into English.

49. EXERCISES

I. 1. Belgae per prōvinciam properant. 2. Videō māgnam īnsulam. 3. Gallia longās viās habet. 4. Celtae agricolās in dēnsīs silvīs armābant. 5. Belgās in Galliā saepe vidēbāmus. 6. Belgae cōpiās in prōvinciam vocābant. 7. Dēnsās silvās in īnsulīs māgnīs vident. 8. Per māgnās silvās in prōvinciam properābam. 9. Celtās et Belgās in Galliā vidēbat. 10. In viā longā agricolās nōn videt.

II. 1. We were often seeing farmers on the road. 2. They were warning the sailors and farmers. 3. You were hastening into the province. 4. We see the high gates. 5. We were not hastening through the dense forests. 6. There[1] are farmers in the forest and sailors on the island. 7. The Belgae were in the large and dense forests. 8. We were often calling the sailors together into the island.

LESSON VII

THE SECOND DECLENSION — NOUNS IN -us AND -um

50. **Lēgātus**, ī, m., *lieutenant, ambassador;* Stem **lēgāto-**, base **lēgāt-**

Bellum, ī, n., *war;* Stem **bello-**, base **bell-**

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.	lēgāt-us	lēgāt-ī	bell-um	bell-a
G.	lēgāt-ī	lēgāt-ōrum	bell-ī	bell-ōrum
D.	lēgāt-ō	lēgāt-īs	bell-ō	bell-īs
Ac.	lēgāt-um	lēgāt-ōs	bell-um	bell-a[2]
V.	lēgāt-e	lēgāt-ī	bell-um	bell-a
Ab.	lēgāt-ō	lēgāt-īs	bell-ō	bell-īs

TABLE OF TERMINATIONS

	Masc.		*Neut.*	
	SG.	PL.	SG.	PL.
	us	ī	um	a
	ī	ōrum	ī	ōrum
	ō	īs	ō	īs
	um	ōs	um	a
	e	ī	um	a
	ō	īs	ō	īs

51. Nouns in **-us** are usually masculine, in **-um** neuter. The stem ends in **o**, and is formed by dropping **-rum** of the Gen. plur.

[1] Omit *there* in translating, — **Sunt agricolae**, etc. In such sentences *there* is redundant, and has no Latin equivalent.

[2] All neuter nouns have their Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative alike, and in the plural they always end in **a**.

Learn carefully the table of terminations, and observe that a noun in **-us** or **-um** of the Second Declension is inflected by joining those endings to the base, which is found by dropping **ī** of the Genitive singular.

Inflect all nouns in the following vocabulary.

52. Examine the following: —

Fossae agricolārum erant longae, *the farmers' ditches were long.*

Observe that **agricolārum** limits **fossae**, and is in the Genitive case.

RULE. — A noun limiting another noun and denoting a different person or thing is in the Genitive case.

53. Examine the following: —

1. **Belgae agricolās armant,** *the Belgae are arming the farmers.*
2. **Agricolās Belgae armant,** *the Belgae are arming the* farmers.
3. **Agricolās armant Belgae,** *the* Belgae *are arming the farmers.*
4. **Armant Belgae agricolās,** *the Belgae* are arming *the farmers.*

In 1, no special emphasis is laid on any one word; in 2, **agricolās** is emphatic; in 3, **Belgae**; in 4, **armant.**

The normal order of a Latin sentence is: subject, modifiers of the subject, modifiers of the verb, verb; but this order is constantly changed for the sake of emphasis.

54. VOCABULARY

Aquītānī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Aquitani,*[1] a people of Gaul.
castra, ōrum, n. pl., *camp.*
nūntius, ī,[2] m., *messenger.*
oppidum, ī, n., *town.*
lāta, *broad, wide.*
moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move.*
oppūgnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *attack, assault.*
ad, prep. w. Acc., *to, towards, near.*
multa, *much,* pl. *many.*
quoque, conj., *also* (always following the emphatic word).

[1] Or *Aquitanians.* Many Latin proper names have in their translation both a Latin and an English form.

[2] Nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** often make the Genitive singular in a single **ī**, with no change of accent.

55. EXERCISES

I. 1. Oppida lātās portās habent. 2. Ad castra Belgārum nautae properābant. 3. Nōn saepe agricolae oppida oppūgnant. 4. Nūntiī in castra Belgārum multās cōpiās convocābant. 5. Oppida Aquītānōrum quoque oppūgnābant. 6. In castrīs Celtārum nautās armābāmus. 7. Per castra ad oppidum agricolae properant. 8. Belgae cōpiās in castra convocant. 9. Celtae quoque ad oppidum saepe properant. 10. Aquītānī castra saepe movēbant.

II. 1. The Belgae assault a town of the Celts. 2. The Aquitanians also hasten to the town. 3. The Celts move their [1] camp. 4. We often saw the towns of the Aquitanians. 5. They were warning the sailors of the province. 6. There [2] were messengers of the Belgae in the town. 7. The lieutenants are arming the farmers in the broad province. 8. We were praising the troops of the Aquitanians.

LESSON VIII

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION — INDIRECT OBJECT

56. **Fīdus**, m., **fīda**, f., **fīdum**, n., *faithful*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	**fīd-us**	**fīd-a**	**fīd-um**	**fīd-ī**	**fīd-ae**	**fīd-a**
G.	**fīd-ī**	**fīd-ae**	**fīd-ī**	**fīd-ōrum**	**fīd-ārum**	**fīd-ōrum**
D.	**fīd-ō**	**fīd-ae**	**fīd-ō**	**fīd-īs**	**fīd-īs**	**fīd-īs**
Ac.	**fīd-um**	**fīd-am**	**fīd-um**	**fīd-ōs**	**fīd-ās**	**fīd-a**
V.	**fīd-e**	**fīd-a**	**fīd-um**	**fīd-ī**	**fīd-ae**	**fīd-a**
Ab.	**fīd-ō**	**fīd-ā**	**fīd-ō**	**fīd-īs**	**fīd-īs**	**fīd-īs**

[1] The possessives *my, your, his, their*, etc., when not emphatic, are frequently left untranslated.

[2] Omit. See **49**, n.

57. Observe that this adjective is declined in the feminine like a noun of the First Declension, and in the masculine and neuter like nouns of the Second Declension in **-us** and **-um** respectively.

Decline together **nauta fīdus, frūmentum multum, carrus māgnus.** Observe that an adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case, but not always in form.

58. Examine the following: —

Belgae populō Rōmānō frūmentum dant, *the Belgae give grain to the Roman people.*

Observe that **populō Rōmānō** represents the persons to whom the grain is given, and that it is in the Dative case.

RULE. — The Dative is the case of the indirect object, and is used with verbs of giving, and others whose meaning permits.

59. **VOCABULARY**

Aquītānia, ae, f., *Aquitania*, a division of Gaul.
arma, ōrum, n. pl., *arms.*
carrus, ī, m., *cart.*
fīlia,[1] **ae,** f., *daughter.*
frūmentum, ī, n., *grain;* pl., *crops of grain.*
Gallī, ōrum, m. pl., *Gauls.*
incola, ae, m. and f., *inhabitant.*
inopia, ae, f., *scarcity, lack.*
populus, ī, m., *people.*
Rōmānus, a, um,[2] *Roman.*
populus Rōmānus,[3] *Roman people.*
comparō, āre, āvī, ātus, *prepare, provide.*
dō, dare, dedī, datus, *give.*
contrā, prep. w. Acc., *against.*

GALLI

[1] The Dative and Ablative plural is generally **fīlIābus.**

[2] The adjectives previously given have masculine and neuter forms of the Second Declension.

[3] Always in this order, used in the singular, and with the verb in the singular.

60. EXERCISES

I. 1. Inopia frūmentī est in Aquītāniā. 2. Gallī carrōs incolīs oppidī māgnī dant. 3. Belgae contrā populum Rōmānum bellum comparābant. 4. Fīlia bona agricolae nautīs frūmentum dat. 5. Populus Rōmānus frūmentum multum in lātā prōvinciā comparābat. 6. Gallī incolās fīdōs māgnōrum oppidōrum armant. 7. Incolae oppidī multa arma comparant. 8. Gallī fīliābus agricolārum arma nōn dabant. 9. Fīliam bonam nautae in silvā dēnsā vident. 10. Belgae contrā populum Rōmānum properābant.

II. 1. The Gauls give arms to the faithful inhabitants of the towns. 2. Aquitania is in Gaul. 3. The faithful farmers are providing much grain. 4. The sailor's daughter saw the farmers on the high river bank. 5. There is a great scarcity of carts in the province. 6. The Belgae do not give arms to the daughters of the faithful farmers. 7. The Gauls are hastening against the Roman people. 8. The inhabitants of the town were faithful.[1]

61. KINSHIP OF WORDS

Study the following list with great care, and do not leave it until you have thoroughly mastered it, so that you know every Latin word and its English equivalent.

Note all words — marked by double stars — that are related to one another in form and meaning. Learn these by associating them together; as, **arma**, *arms;* **armō**, *I arm;* **vocō**, *I call;* **con-vocō**, *I call together;* **Gallī**, *Gauls;* **Gallia**, *Gaul.*

The words marked with a single star are related to one or more found in other lists. These should be noted and retained in memory with especial care, as an aid to the acquisition of their kindred words. Those similarly marked in subsequent lists refer both backward and forward, and will serve as a review of related words already learned as well as an aid in acquiring new words which are akin to them.

---

[1] Nom. plur. masc., in agreement with the subject.

62. WORD LIST I

ad	*comparō	fossa	*longus	porta
*agricola	*contrā	*frūmentum	*māgnus	properō
*altus	**convocō	**Gallī	*moneō	prōvincia
**Aquītānī	*cōpia	**Gallia	*moveō	quoque
**Aquītānia	dēnsus	*habeō	*multus	rīpa
**arma	*dō	in	*nauta	*Rōmānus
**armō	*erant	*incola	*nōn	saepe
Belgae	*erat	inopia	*nūntius	silva
*bellum	*est	*īnsula	*oppidum	*sunt
*bonus	et	*lātus	*oppūgnō	terra
carrus	*fīdus	laudō	per	via
*castra	*fīlia	*lēgātus	*populus	*videō
Celtae				**vocō

LESSON IX

THE THIRD CONJUGATION, PRESENT AND IMPERFECT TENSES

63. **Regō**, *I rule.* Present Stem **rege-**
Princ. Parts, **reg-ō, rege-re, rēx-ī, rēc-tus**

PRESENT TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. **reg-ō**, *I rule*, etc.	**regi-mus**, *we rule*, etc.
2. **regi-s**, *you rule*	**regi-tis**, *you rule*
3. **regi-t**, *he rules*	**regu-nt**, *they rule*

IMPERFECT TENSE

1. **regē-ba-m**, *I ruled* or *was ruling*	**regē-bā-mus**, *we ruled*
2. **regē-bā-s**, *you ruled*	**regē-bā-tis**, *you ruled*
3. **regē-ba-t**, *he ruled*	**regē-ba-nt**, *they ruled*

64. All verbs whose Present stem ends in **ĕ** are regularly classed under the Third Conjugation.

The vowel **ĕ** is dropped before **ō**, becomes **u** before **nt**, and **i** before the other endings of the Present Indicative active. The **ē** of the Imperfect tense is long.

NOTE. — A thorough review should here be made of the preceding verb-paradigms, and the verbs in the following vocabulary should be inflected like **regō**. See also **47**, note.

65. VOCABULARY

animus, ī, m., *mind, spirit.*
proelium,[1] ī, n., *battle.*
tēlum, ī, n., *missile, weapon, javelin.*
tribūnus, ī, m., *tribune, a Roman officer.*
contendō, ere, dī, tentus, *contend, hasten.*
dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead.*
ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead out.*
gerō, ere, gessī, gestus, *wage, carry on.*
incolō, ere, coluī, cultus, *live in, inhabit.*
quondam, adv., *once.*
cum, prep. w. Abl., *with.*

66. EXERCISES

I. 1. Belgae bellum longum cum populō Rōmānō gerunt. 2. Gallī et[2] Belgae et Aquītānī Galliam incolunt. 3. Populus Rōmānus cum Belgīs contendēbat. 4. Tribūnus fīdus incolīs oppidōrum arma dabat. 5. Cōpia tēlōrum in māgnō oppidō Gallōrum erat. 6. Tribūnus oppidī incolās ad silvās quondam ēdūcēbat. 7. Belgae ad proelium properābant. 8. Animus quoque fīliae est bonus. 9. Populus Rōmānus quondam Galliam regēbat. 10. Nautae fīdī ad rīpam altam contendunt. 11. Tribūnōs populī Rōmānī quondam laudābāmus.

II. 1. The Belgae were carrying on war with the Gauls. 2. The tribune often gives grain to the faithful inhabitants of the town. 3. The Aquitani were contending with the lieutenant's[3] forces. 4. There[4] is a great scarcity of grain in the province of the Roman people. 5. The farmers also were hastening to the large town. 6. They are leading out the inhabitants of the towns into the camp. 7. You were often carrying on war with the Aquitanians. 8. The Celts inhabit the large towns. 9. We were praising the lieutenant's weapons.

---

[1] See **54**, n. 2.

[2] In a series of words **et** is either used with each additional word or omitted altogether.

[3] See **21**, 2.

[4] Omit. See **49**, n.

LESSON X

THE SECOND DECLENSION — NOUNS IN -er AND -ir

67.

	Puer, erī, m., *boy;* Stem **puero-**, base **puer-**		**Ager, rī**, m., *field;* Stem **agro-**, base **agr-**		**Vir, ī**, m., *man;* Stem **viro-**, base **vir-**		TABLE OF TERMINATIONS	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SG.	PL.
N.V.	**puer**	**puer-ī**	**ager**	**agr-ī**	**vir**	**vir-ī**	—	**ī**
G.	**puer-ī**	**puer-ōrum**	**agr-ī**	**agr-ōrum**	**vir-ī**	**vir-ōrum**	**ī**	**ōrum**
D.	**puer-ō**	**puer-īs**	**agr-ō**	**agr-īs**	**vir-ō**	**vir-īs**	**ō**	**īs**
Ac.	**puer-um**	**puer-ōs**	**agr-um**	**agr-ōs**	**vir-um**	**vir-ōs**	**um**	**ōs**
Ab.	**puer-ō**	**puer-īs**	**agr-ō**	**agr-īs**	**vir-ō**	**vir-īs**	**ō**	**īs**

68. Nouns of the Second Declension in **-er** and **-ir** are masculine. The stem ends in **o**, as in nouns in **-us** and **-um**. Note, also, the base to which the endings are joined to make the various case-forms. It is found by dropping **ī** of the Genitive singular.

Observe that the table of terminations is the same as in nouns in **-us**, except that the ending is lacking in the Nominative and Vocative singular.

SIGNIFER

69. Like **puer**, decline —

gener, erī, m., *son-in-law.*
socer, erī, m., *father-in-law.*
līberī, ōrum, m. pl., *children* (freeborn[1]).
armiger, erī, m., *armor bearer.*
signifer, erī, m., *standard bearer.*
vesper, erī, m., *evening.*

Learn these words. Most nouns of the Second Declension in **-er** are declined like **ager**.

70. Examine the following: —

1. **Lēgātum vītā prīvat,** *he deprives the ambassador of life.*
2. **Nūntium cūrā līberat,** *he frees the messenger from care.*

[1] Compare **līberī, līber** (*free*) and **līberō** (*deliver*).

Observe that **prīvat** and **līberat** are verbs of depriving and freeing, and that they are used with the Ablative case without a preposition.

RULE. — Verbs of depriving and freeing take the Ablative without a preposition.

This rule extends to adjectives of like meaning: **fīlia agricolae cūrā lībera**[1] **erat,** *the farmer's daughter was free from care.*

In case of other verbs of separation the usage varies, some taking the ablative with a preposition, some without, and some admitting either construction.

71. VOCABULARY

aper, aprī, m., *wild boar.*
cūra, ae, f., *care.*
magister, trī, m., *master, teacher.*
vīta, ae, f., *life.*
novus, a, um, *new.*
līberō, āre, āvī, ātus, *free, deliver.*
prīvō, āre, āvī, ātus, *deprive.*
prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus, *prohibit, keep from, hinder.*
ā,[2] **ab,** prep. w. Abl., *from, away from, by.*

72. EXERCISES

I. 1. Tribūnī lēgātōs armīs prīvant. 2. Magistrī līberōs cūrā līberant. 3. In lātīs et dēnsīs silvīs multōs aprōs vidēs. 4. Ab oppidō in castra nova contendēbant. 5. Gallī multa bella gerunt. 6. Lēgātōs proeliō prohibēbant. 7. Incolae Aquītāniae multa tēla habent. 8. Castra populī Rōmānī māgna erant. 9. Gallī cum Aquītānīs saepe contendunt. 10. Carrōs ad castra Gallōrum movet. 11. Tribūnī populī Rōmānī nūntiōs vītā prīvant. 12. Socer generum vītā prīvat. 13. Multī armigerī in castrīs populī Rōmānī erant.

II. 1. We are freeing the messengers of the Gauls from care. 2. The master's children are in the camp of the Roman people. 3. The Aquitani were waging war near the large and dense for-

[1] From **līber, lībera, līberum.**

[2] **ā** before consonants, **ab** before vowels and often before consonants.

est. 4. I was hastening from the island to the town. 5. The Gauls were depriving the Roman people of grain. 6. We were keeping the Gauls from battle. 7. The master was giving arms to the farmer's children. 8. There are wild boars in the forest. 9. They were leading out the inhabitants of the town into the fields. 10. The standard bearers of the Roman people hastened into the camp.

LESSON XI

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION IN **-er, -a, -um** — COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE, PREDICATE NOMINATIVE, AND APPOSITIVE

73. **Miser, era, erum,** *wretched.* Masc. like **puer**

	SINGULAR		
N.V.	**miser**	**miser-a**	**miser-um**
G.	**miser-ī**	**miser-ae**	**miser-ī**
D.	**miser-ō**	**miser-ae**	**miser-ō**
Ac.	**miser-um**	**miser-am**	**miser-um**
Ab.	**miser-ō**	**miser-ā**	**miser-ō**
	PLURAL		
N.V.	**miser-ī**	**miser-ae**	**miser-a**
G.	**miser-ōrum**	**miser-ārum**	**miser-ōrum**
D.	**miser-īs**	**miser-īs**	**miser-īs**
Ac.	**miser-ōs**	**miser-ās**	**miser-a**
Ab.	**miser-īs**	**miser-īs**	**miser-īs**

Noster, tra, trum, *our, ours.* Masc. like **aper**

	SINGULAR		
N.V.	**noster**	**nostr-a**	**nostr-um**
G.	**nostr-ī**	**nostr-ae**	**nostr-ī**
D.	**nostr-ō**	**nostr-ae**	**nostr-ō**
Ac.	**nostr-um**	**nostr-am**	**nostr-um**
Ab.	**nostr-ō**	**nostr-ā**	**nostr-ō**

	PLURAL		
N.V.	**nostr-ī**	**nostr-ae**	**nostr-a**
G.	**nostr-ōrum**	**nostr-ārum**	**nostr-ōrum**
D.	**nostr-īs**	**nostr-īs**	**nostr-īs**
Ac.	**nostr-ōs**	**nostr-ās**	**nostr-a**
Ab.	**nostr-īs**	**nostr-īs**	**nostr-īs**

What are the stems of **miser**, masc., fem., and neut.? of **noster**? What is the base of each word?

Decline **miser agricola, noster puer, līber populus.**

74. Examine the following: —

1. **Cōnstituunt oppidum oppūgnāre,** *they decide to attack the town.*
2. **Mātūrat līberōs convocāre,** *he hastens to call the children together.*

Observe that the use of the Infinitive in the above is exactly the same as in the English sentences.

RULE. — The Infinitive is used with verbs meaning to decide, hasten, begin, and in general with those requiring a second action of the same subject to complete their meaning (Complementary Infinitive).

75. Examine the following: —

1. **Aquītānī sunt incolae Galliae,** *the Aquitani are inhabitants of Gaul.*
2. **Aquītānī, incolae Galliae, multa bella gerunt,** *the Aquitani, inhabitants of Gaul, are waging many wars.*

In 1, **incolae** is a predicate noun, and agrees in case with the subject, **Aquītānī**; in 2, it limits **Aquītānī**, denotes the same persons, and agrees with it in case.

RULES. — 1. A noun in the predicate, with an intransitive verb, agrees with the subject in case.

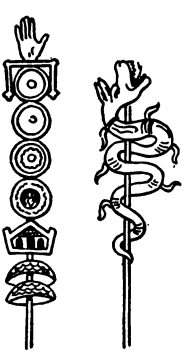
2. A noun limiting another, and denoting the same person or thing, is said to be in apposition with it, and agrees with it in case.

76. VOCABULARY

Helvētiī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Helvetii*, a people of Gaul.
sīgnum, ī, n., *standard.*
cottīdiānus, a, um, *daily.*
crēber, bra, brum, *frequent, numerous.*
fortissimus, a, um, *bravest, very brave.*
līber, era, erum, *free.*
pulcher, chra, chrum, *beautiful.*
cōnstituō, ere, ī, ūtus, *decide, determine.*
mātūrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *hasten.*
cottīdiē, adv., *daily.* (Observe the relation between **cottīdiānus** and **cottīdiē**.)

77. EXERCISES

I. 1. Belgae Gallōrum fortissimī sunt. 2. Saepe cum Gallīs contendunt. 3. Mātūrat nūntiōs populī Rōmānī in castra convocāre. 4. Cōnstituit bellum cum Gallīs gerere. 5. Frūmentum Helvētiīs cottīdiē dat. 6. Vidēmus in castrīs sīgnum pulchrum. 7. Fīliam agricolae cūrā līberat. 8. Nūntius Gallōrum cūrā līber est. 9. Mātūrābat tēla et sīgna lēgātīs dare. 10. Cōnstituit cum Helvētiīs, incolīs Galliae, bellum gerere. 11. Celtae incolae Galliae sunt. 12. Cōnstituit cum multīs nautīs in oppidum properāre. 13. Socer cum generō in oppidum properābat.



SIGNA

II. 1. The farmer's beautiful daughter is in the large town. 2. We decide to give grain to the messengers of the Roman people. 3. There were frequent battles in the woods. 4. The tribunes decided to give the new weapons and the beautiful standards to the lieutenants. 5. There were daily battles in the province. 6. We see the new standards and arms of the Gauls. 7. The Belgae,[1] the Celts, and the Aquitanians inhabit Gaul, a large land. 8. He was once in Aquitania, a good and beautiful land. 9. The sailors were inhabitants of a large island. 10. The children of the armor bearer are in the camp.

[1] See **66**, I, 2.

LESSON XII

THE THIRD DECLENSION, MUTE STEMS — LABIAL AND PALATAL MUTES

78.[1] Stems of the Third Declension end in **i** or a consonant. Those ending in a consonant may be divided into mute and liquid stems.

1. Mute stems may be subdivided into labial, palatal, and lingual stems.

2. Labial stems end in **b** and **p**. Those in **b** (except **chalybs**, *steel*) are feminine; those in **p** are chiefly masculine; none are neuter.

3. Palatal stems end in **c** or **g**. Those in **c** preceded by a consonant or long vowel are chiefly feminine; those in **c** preceded by a short vowel and those in **g** are chiefly masculine.

4. The stem is found by dropping the ending **-is** of the Genitive singular: **dux, duc-is,** stem **duc.** The base is the same as the stem.

5. The Nominative is formed from the stem by adding **s**, but note vowel changes in some instances, as in **prīnceps, prīncipis,** stem **princip-**; **c** and **g** of the stem unite with **s** of the Nominative ending to form **x**.

79. PALATAL AND LABIAL STEMS

	Dux, dūcis, m., *leader;* Stem and base **duc-**		**Lēx, lēgis,** f., *law;* Stem and base **lēg-**		TABLE OF TERMINATIONS	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.V.	**dux**	**duc-ēs**	**lēx**	**lēg-ēs**	**s**	**ēs**
G.	**duc-is**	**duc-um**	**lēg-is**	**lēg-um**	**is**	**um**
D.	**duc-ī**	**duc-ibus**	**lēg-ī**	**lēg-ibus**	**ī**	**ibus**
Ac.	**duc-em**	**duc-ēs**	**lēg-em**	**lēg-ēs**	**em**	**ēs**
Ab.	**duc-e**	**duc-ibus**	**lēg-e**	**lēg-ibus**	**e**	**ibus**

[1] This article is to be used chiefly for reference.

Princeps, ipis, m., *leading man, chief;* Stem and base **princip-**

	SING.	PLUR.	TABLE OF TERMINATIONS SING.	PLUR.
N.V.	princep-s	princip-ēs	s	ēs
G.	princip-is	princip-um	is	um
D.	princip-ī	princip-ibus	ī	ibus
Ac.	princip-em	princip-ēs	em	ēs
Ab.	princip-e	princip-ibus	e	ibus

80. VOCABULARY

auxilium, ī, n., *aid, help.*
Dumnorīx, īgis, m., *Dumnorix.*
fīlius,[1] **ī,** m., *son.*
Orgetorīx, īgis, m., *Orgetorix.*
rēx, rēgis, m., *king.*
parō, āre, āvī, ātus, *prepare.*
pōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *pitch, place.*
portō, āre, āvī, ātus, *carry.*
continenter, adv., *continually.*
quod, conj., *because.*

81. EXERCISES

I. 1. Orgetorīx Helvētiōrum quondam erat dux. 2. Dumnorīx bellum continenter gerit. 3. Agricolae frūmentum in oppidum Helvētiōrum portābant. 4. Prīnceps castra in agrīs pōnēbat. 5. Helvētiī fortissimī sunt quod bellum saepe gerunt. 6. Rēx populō Rōmānō auxilium saepe dabat. 7. Fīliī rēgis in castrīs Gallōrum erant. 8. Mī fīlī,[1] dux castra movet, quod inopia frūmentī in agrīs est. 9. Belgae lēgātum ab oppidō prohibēbant. 10. Dux Helvētiōrum frūmentum parāre cōnstituit.

II. 1. The king gives arms to his son. 2. My son, the Gauls are keeping the lieutenant from their towns. 3. The Helvetii are continually waging war. 4. The chief decides to move the camp. 5. The farmers do not often give aid to the inhabitants of the town. 6. The lieutenant is hastening to prepare arms. 7. They called the leaders together into the camp. 8. The children of the kings were in the town. 9. The laws of the Roman people were often good.

---

[1] The Vocative of **fīlius** is **fīlī**. *My son* = **mī fīlī**.

LESSON XIII

THE THIRD DECLENSION, LINGUAL STEMS

82.[1] Nouns whose stems end in a lingual (**t, d**) drop the final letter of the stem before **s** in forming the Nominative singular: **aestās, aestāt-is,** stem **aestāt-**. Neuters have for the Nominative the simple stem with some modifications: **caput, capit-is,** stem **capit-**. Neuter stems ending in two consonants or in **-at,** drop the final letter in forming the Nominative: **cor, cord-is,** *heart,* stem **cord-**; **poēma, poēmat-is,** *poem,* stem **poēmat-**.

83.

	Mīles, mīlitis, m., *soldier;* Stem and base **mīlit-**		**Obses, idis,** m. and f., *hostage;* Stem and base **obsid-**		TABLE OF TERMINATIONS			
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	*Masc. & Fem.*		*Neut.*	
N.V.	**mīles**[2]	**mīlit-ēs**	**obses**	**obsid-ēs**	**s**	**ēs**	**—**	**a**
G.	**mīlit-is**	**mīlit-um**	**obsid-is**	**obsid-um**	**is**	**um**	**is**	**um**
D.	**mīlit-ī**	**mīlit-ibus**	**obsid-ī**	**obsid-ibus**	**ī**	**ibus**	**ī**	**ibus**
Ac.	**mīlit-em**	**mīlit-ēs**	**obsid-em**	**obsid-ēs**	**em**	**ēs**	**—**	**a**
Ab.	**mīlit-e**	**mīlit-ibus**	**obsid-e**	**obsid-ibus**	**e**	**ibus**	**e**	**ibus**

	Aestās,[3] **ātis,** f., *summer;* Stem and base **aestāt-**		**Caput,**[4] **itis,** n., *head;* Stem and base **capit-**		TABLE OF TERMINATIONS			
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	*Masc. & Fem.*		*Neut.*	
N.V.	**aestās**	**aestāt-ēs**	**caput**	**capit-a**	**s**	**ēs**	**—**	**a**
G.	**aestāt-is**	**aestāt-um**	**capit-is**	**capit-um**	**is**	**um**	**is**	**um**
D.	**aestāt-ī**	**aestāt-ibus**	**capit-ī**	**capit-ibus**	**ī**	**ibus**	**ī**	**ibus**
Ac.	**aestāt-em**	**aestāt-ēs**	**caput**	**capit-a**	**em**	**ēs**	**—**	**a**
Ab.	**aestāt-e**	**aestāt-ibus**	**capit-e**	**capit-ibus**	**e**	**ibus**	**e**	**ibus**

84. VOCABULARY

auctōritās, ātis, f., *authority.*
cīvitās, ātis, f., *state.*
Germānī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Germans.*

---

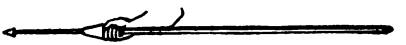
[1] This article is to be used chiefly for reference.

[2] Note the change of **i** of the stem to **e** in the Nominative after **t** and **d** are dropped and **s** added.

[3] Nouns whose stems end in **-tāt** often have **ium** in the Gen. plur.

[4] See **82**. Make a careful study of the stem and base of each noun of the third declension as you meet it in the vocabularies.

iugum, ī, n., *yoke, ridge.*
iūmentum, ī, n., *beast of burden.*
mūrus, ī, m., *wall.*
palūs, ūdis, f., *marsh, swamp.*
pīlum, ī, n., *javelin.*
expūgnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *storm, take by assault.*
mittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *send.*
perdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead along, prolong, construct.*
dē, prep. w. Abl., *down from, concerning.*



PILUM

85. EXERCISES

I. 1. Iūmentum iugum portat. 2. Multī obsidēs in Germānōrum oppidīs erant. 3. Germānī multōs mīlitēs in palūdem mittunt. 4. Auctōritās Orgetorīgis māgna erat in cīvitāte. 5. Dux Germānōrum oppidum Helvētiōrum expūgnābat. 6. Pīla mīlitum longa et māgna erant. 7. Prīncipēs cīvitātis ad Dumnorīgem nūntium dē bellō mittunt. 8. Lēgātus fossam et mūrum ad castra perdūcit. 9. Germānī cum Helvētiīs bellum saepe gerēbant. 10. Dux mīlitum mūrum perdūcere cōnstituit quod Germānī ad castra properābant.

II. 1. The authority of the state was great. 2. They send messengers to the Germans concerning war. 3. The lieutenant was leading the soldiers through the long marsh. 4. The Gauls were storming the town because there was a great supply of arms (in it).[1] 5. They are leading the beasts-of-burden into the camp. 6. Orgetorix had great authority in the state. 7. The soldiers are prolonging the ditch through the fields of the Helvetii. 8. You were sending hostages to the leader of the Germans. 9. You are sending the children of the chiefs as[2] hostages to the camp of the Roman people.

---

[1] Words in parentheses are not to be translated.
[2] Sign of apposition.

LESSON XIV

WORD LIST II—HOW TO READ—READING LESSON

86. Review Word List I., together with the discussion of the kinship of words. Be able to give the English equivalent of each word in this list. Do the same with each list as you reach it.

87. **WORD LIST II**

ā, ab	**cottīdiānus	**gerō	*noster	*puer
aestās	**cottīdiē	Helvētiī	*novus	pulcher
*ager	crēber	*incolō	*obses	*quod
animus	cum	**iugum	Orgetorīx	*quondam
aper	*cūra	**iūmentum	palūs	**regō
**armiger	dē	*lēx	*parō	**rēx
**auctōritās	**dūcō	**līber	**perdūcō	**sīgnifer
**auxilium	Dumnorīx	**līberī	pīlum	**sīgnum
**caput	**dux	**līberō	poēma	socer
*cīvitās	**ēdūcō	*magister	*pōnō	tēlum
*cōnstituō	*expūgnō	*mātūrō	*portō	*tribūnus
*contendō	*fīlius	*mīles	**prīnceps	vesper
*continenter	*fortissimus	*miser	*prīvō	*vir
*cor	*gener	*mittō	proelium	*vīta
	Germānī	*mūrus	*prohibeō	

88. HOW TO READ

1. Study, as a whole, the passage given, taking in at one view as many words as the eye can see.

2. Try to recall words previously given, and study into the meaning of those related to them in form.

3. Note forms and relations of words so as to see the entire thought before making any attempt at translation. In doing this, follow strictly the Latin order, observing carefully the arrangement of words and the marks of punctuation.

4. Translate into clear and idiomatic English.

89. READING LESSON: *Incolae Galliae*

Belgae et[1] Aquītānī et Celtae Galliam incolunt. Belgae sunt fortissimī et cum Germānīs saepe contendunt. Helvētiī sunt Celtārum fortissimī, quod cum Germānīs continentur contendunt. Helvētiōrum dux quondam erat Orgetorīx, cūius[2] auctōritās māgna erat in cīvitāte.

Decline all nouns and adjectives, and give the principal parts of all verbs in this passage.

LESSON XV

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION, PRESENT AND IMPERFECT TENSES — THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION — QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

90. The Fourth Conjugation includes all verbs whose Present stem ends in **ī**: **mūni-ō, mūnī-re,** Pres. stem **mūnī-**.

91. **Audiō,** *I hear.* Pres. stem **audī-**
Princ. Parts, **audi-ō, audī-re, audī-vī, audī-tus**

PRESENT TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. **audi-ō,** *I hear, am hearing*	**audī-mus,** *we hear, are hearing*
2. **audī-s,** *you hear,* etc.	**audī-tis,** *you hear,* etc.
3. **audi-t,** *he hears,* etc.	**audi-u-nt,** *they hear,* etc.

IMPERFECT TENSE

1. **audi-ē-ba-m,** *I heard, was hearing*	**audi-ē-bā-mus,** *we heard,* etc.
2. **audi-ē-bā-s,** *you heard,* etc.	**audi-ē-bā-tis,** *you heard,* etc.
3. **audi-ē-ba-t,** *he heard,* etc.	**audi-ē-ba-nt,** *they heard,* etc.

92. Observe that in the third person plural of the Present **u** precedes the personal ending, but that in every other form of that tense the endings are joined directly to the stem.

---

[1] Omit. See **66**, I, 2. [2] *whose,* Gen. of the relative pronoun **quī,** *who.*

93. Observe that the Imperfect tense consists of the Present stem + **ē** + tense-sign **-bā** + the personal endings.

Review carefully the Present and Imperfect tenses of the preceding conjugations,[1] and notice differences in formation where they occur. Inflect, as above, the following verbs of the fourth conjugation: **sentiō**, *I feel;* **vinciō**, *I bind;* **inveniō**, *I find.*

94. Examine the following: —

Puer magistrum virtūte praestat, *the boy excels his master in valor.*

Observe that **virtūte** is in the Ablative case, and expresses that in which the boy excels.

RULE. — The Ablative is used to express that in respect to which anything is or is done (Ablative of Specification).

95. VOCABULARY

amīcitia, ae, f., *friendship.*
cohors, rtis, f., *cohort.*
pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*
virtūs, ūtis, f., *manhood, valor, bravery.*
cōnfīrmō, āre, āvī, ātus, *establish.*
maneo, ēre, mānsī, mānsus, *remain, await.*
mūniō, īre, īvī, ītus, *fortify.*
praestō, āre, stitī, stitus, *excel.*
veniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, *come.*
nōnne, ne, num, signs of questions to be explained in this lesson.

96. Examine the following: —

1. **Nōnne Helvētiī pācem cōnfīrmant?** *do not the Helvetians establish peace?*
2. **Num est palūs māgna?** *is the marsh large* (i.e. the marsh is not large, is it)?
3. **Vidēsne signum?** *do you see the standard?*

Observe that the particle[2] **nōnne** suggests the answer yes, **num** the answer no, and that **-ne**, always enclitic,[3] simply asks for information.

---

[1] See **603.** [2] See **19.**

[3] The name enclitic is given to **-ne** and other words which like it are appended to some other word.

97. Examine the following: —

1. **Nōnne Caesar pūgnābat?** *was not Caesar fighting?*

Pūgnābat,	**Sānē pūgnābat,**	**Vērō,**	**Etiam,**	**Ita,**
He was.	*Certainly he was.*	*Certainly.*	*Yes* (lit., even).	*Yes* (so).

2. **Num Caesar agricola erat?** *Caesar was not a farmer, was he?*

Minimē,	**Minimē vērō,**	**Nōn erat**
By no means.	*Certainly not.*	*No.*

Observe that the Latin has no words for *yes* and *no*, and that answers are given by the repetition of the verb in the proper form, either with or without certain affirmative or negative particles, or by the use of these particles without the verb.

98. **EXERCISES**

I. 1. Nōnne[1] Helvētiī pācem et amīcitiam cum multīs cīvitātibus cōnfīrmābant? Sānē cōnfīrmābant. 2. Num[2] puer magistrum auctōritāte[3] praestat? Minimē vērō. 3. Venitne[4] in castra Helvētiōrum? Nōn venit. 4. Num vident multās cohortēs mīlitum? Minimē. 5. Manēbatne cum tribūnīs mīlitum in agrō? 6. Virne tēlum et sīgnum puerō dat? 7. Nōnne cohortēs populī Rōmānī Gallōs virtūte praestant? 8. Num pācem cum Belgīs cōnfīrmant? 9. Cōnstituuntne ā castrīs ad oppidum properāre? Vērō. 10. In nōn māgnam palūdem veniēbant.

II. 1. Do we not[5] come daily into the beautiful fields? Certainly we do. 2. Does the man excel the boy in valor? Certainly. 3. Do not the leaders of the Helvetians wage war continually? 4. Was not the valor of the Roman cohorts great? It was. 5. Were the Romans giving hostages and establishing peace? (They were not, were they?) 6. Do the Germans excel many states in valor? Certainly they do. 7. Were not the children of the leaders coming into the town with (their)[6] masters. 8. The bravest of the Gauls wage war continually with the Germans.

---

[1] See **96**, 1. [3] See **94**. [5] See **96**, 1.
[2] See **96**, 2. [4] See **96**, 3. [6] See **85**, 1.

LESSON XVI

THE THIRD DECLENSION — LIQUID AND SIBILANT STEMS

99. Liquid Stems. —

Legiō, ōnis, f., *legion;* Stem and base, **legiōn-**

	SING.	PLUR.
N.V.	**legiō**	**legiōn-ēs**
G.	**legiōn-is**	**legiōn-um**
D.	**legiōn-ī**	**legiōn-ibus**
Ac.	**legiōn-em**	**legiōn-ēs**
Ab.	**legiōn-e**	**legiōn-ibus**

Cōnsul, is, m., *consul;* Stem and base, **cōnsul-**

	SING.	PLUR.
	cōnsul	**cōnsul-ēs**
	cōnsul-is	**cōnsul-um**
	cōnsul-ī	**cōnsul-ibus**
	cōnsul-em	**cōnsul-ēs**
	cōnsul-e	**cōnsul-ibus**

Labor, ōris, m., *labor;* Stem and base, **labor-**

	SING.	PLUR.
N.V.	**labor**	**labōr-ēs**
G.	**labōr-is**	**labōr-um**
D.	**labōr-ī**	**labōr-ibus**
Ac.	**labōr-em**	**labōr-ēs**
Ab.	**labōr-e**	**labōr-ibus**

Flūmen, inis, n., *river;* Stem and base, **flūmin-**[1]

	SING.	PLUR.
	flūmen	**flūmin-a**
	flūmin-is	**flūmin-um**
	flūmin-ī	**flūmin-ibus**
	flūmen	**flūmin-a**
	flūmin-e	**flūmin-ibus**

100. The table of terminations is the same as for lingual stems, except in the Nominative and Vocative singular. See **102**.

101. Observe that in neuters the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative are alike, and that they end in the plural in **ă**.

102.[2] **Rules for Gender and Formation of Nominative from Stem.** — 1. Stems in **l** form the Nominative without **s**, and are masculine.

2. Stems in **r** form the Nominative without **s**, and most in **-er** and **-or** are masculine, most in **-ar** and **-ur** are neuter.

3. Most masculines and feminines in **-n** drop **n** in the Nominative, and change the preceding vowel to **ō**: **virgō, virgin-is**, f., *virgin*, stem **virgin-**. Most neuters retain **-n**, and change a preceding **i** to **e**. See **flūmen, 99**.

---

[1] Note change of vowel in the Nominative and Vocative.

[2] To be used chiefly for reference.

103. Sibilant Stems. — Many nouns with stems in **-or** were originally stems in **-os**, but **s** has changed to **r** between two vowels in the oblique cases.[1]

104. **Mōs, mōris**, m., *custom;* Stem **mōs-**, base **mōr-**

	SING.	PLUR.
N.V.	**mōs**	**mōr-ēs**
G.	**mōr-is**	**mōr-um**
D.	**mōr-ī**	**mōr-ibus**
Ac.	**mōr-em**	**mōr-ēs**
Ab.	**mōr-e**	**mōr-ibus**

Genus,[2] **eris**, n., *kind;* Stem **genes-**, base **gener-**

SING.	PLUR.
genus	**gener-a**
gener-is	**gener-um**
gener-ī	**gener-ibus**
genus	**gener-a**
gener-e	**gener-ibus**

Corpus, oris, n., *body;* Stem **corpos-**, base **corpor-**

	SING.	PLUR.
N.V.	**corpus**	**corpor-a**
G.	**corpor-is**	**corpor-um**
D.	**corpor-ī**	**corpor-ibus**
Ac.	**corpus**	**corpor-a**
Ab.	**corpor-e**	**corpor-ibus**

105. VOCABULARY

Arar,[3] **aris**, m., *the Arar.*
homō, inis, m. and f., *man, human being.*
lēgātiō, ōnis, f., *embassy.*
nōmen,[2] **inis**, n., *name.*
Rhēnus, ī, m., *the Rhine.*
dēfendō, ere, ī, fēnsus, *defend.*
trādūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *transport, lead* or *carry across.*
fīnitimus, a, um, *neighboring*, noun in m. pl., *neighbors.*
ita, adv., *thus, so.*
semper, adv., *always.*

106. EXERCISES

I. 1. Ofgetorīx lēgātiōnem ad fīnitimās cīvitātēs mittit. 2. Dux Rhēnum[4] mīlitēs trādūcēbat. 3. Homō bonus nōmen cīvitātis semper dēfendit. 4. Lēgātus cōpiās ad Ararim dūcit. 5. Helvētiī frūmentum parāre et cum fīnitimīs pācem cōnfīrmāre cōnsti-

[1] All cases except the Nominative and Vocative.
[2] See **101.**
[3] Acc. sing. **Ararim.**
[4] Acc., governed by **trāns** in composition.

tuunt. 6. Multōs mōrēs multōrum hominum vidēbās. 7. Castra in rīpīs Rhēnī pōnēbat. 8. Nōnne incolae oppidum saepe dēfendunt? 9. Lēgātus legiōnem ad castra dūcit. 10. Ita hominem vītā prīvābat.

II. 1. Do not the men defend the town? 2. They lead their forces across the river Rhine.[1] 3. Does he establish peace and friendship with his neighbors? (He does not, does he?) 4. The king leads his forces through the marsh to the river Arar. 5. I do not hear the man's name. 6. The Helvetii were establishing friendship with the neighboring states. 7. They were sending an embassy to the Germans. 8. The consul did not come to the town.

LESSON XVII

THE THIRD CONJUGATION, VERBS IN -iō, PRESENT AND IMPERFECT TENSES — READING LESSON

107. **Capi-ō**, *I take, capture, catch.* Stem **capie-**
Princ. parts, **capi-ō, cape-re, cēp-ī, cap-tus**

PRESENT TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. **capi-ō**, *I take, am taking*	**capi-mus**, *we take, are taking*
2. **capi-s**, *you take*, etc.	**capi-tis**, *you take*, etc.
3. **capi-t**, *he takes*, etc.	**capi-u-nt**, *they take*, etc.

IMPERFECT TENSE

1. **capiē-ba-m**, *I took, was taking*	**capiē-bā-mus**, *we took, were taking*
2. **capiē-bā-s**, *you took*, etc.	**capiē-bā-tis**, *you took*, etc.
3. **capiē-ba-t**, *he took*, etc.	**capiē-ba-nt**, *they took*, etc.

Observe resemblances in this paradigm to that of **audiō**, **91**. Note also some differences in quantity.

In the following vocabulary inflect **faciō** and **cōnficiō** in the same way.

[1] Acc. in apposition with the word for *river*.

108. VOCABULARY

aedificium, ī, n., *building.*
Casticus, ī, m., *Casticus.*
coniūrātiō, ōnis, f., *conspiracy.*
nōbilitās, ātis, f., *nobility, the nobles.*
amīcus, a, um, *friendly;* as a noun, *friend.*
clārus, a, um, *bright, famous.*
prīvātus, a, um, *private.*
cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *make together with, finish, accomplish.*
faciō, ere, fēcī, factus, *make, do.*
incendō, ere, ī, cēnsus, *set on fire.*
renovō, āre, āvī, ātus, *renew.*

109. EXERCISES

I. 1. Helvētiī prīvāta aedificia incendēbant. 2. Casticus coniūrātiōnem in cīvitāte facit. 3. Fīnitimī Helvētiōrum nōn semper amīcī erant. 4. Nōnne Orgetorīx coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis facit? 5. Pācem et amīcitiam cum Helvētiīs renovābat. 6. Erat dux clārus in cīvitāte. 7. Num Orgetorīx dux Helvētiōrum fīdus est? 8. Orgetorīxne bellum cum Rōmānīs cōnficit? 9. Casticus nōn erat amīcus populī Rōmānī. 10. Dumnorīx, amīcus Orgetorīgis, prīnceps erat in cīvitāte.

II. 1. Orgetorix decides to make a conspiracy of the nobility. 2. The Helvetii were hastening to set their private buildings on fire. 3. They are renewing peace and friendship with (their) neighbors. 4. They were taking many towns of our[1] neighbors. 5. Our name is famous in the province. 6. They were giving arms to our friends. 7. They were finishing many wars in our province. 8. The leader is capturing many beasts-of-burden in the camp of the Helvetians.

110. READING LESSON: *Orgetorīgis Coniūrātiō.*

Orgetorīx coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis facit et cum fīnitimīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfīrmat. Frūmentum quoque parāre mātūrat, quod Helvētiī cōpiās per nostram prōvinciam ēdūcere cōnstituunt. Oppida et prīvāta aedificia incendunt. Dumnorīx, prīnceps in cīvitāte, et Casticus quoque Dumnorīgī auxilium dant.

[1] Use the proper form of **noster.**

LESSON XVIII

THE THIRD DECLENSION — I-STEMS — THE ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

111.[1] Vowel-stems of the Third Declension end in **i**.[2] The Nominative singular of masculines and feminines is formed regularly by adding **s** to the stem.

The Nominative singular of neuters is usually the same as the stem with the change of **i** to **e**. If **i** of the stem is preceded by **-al** or **-ar**, **i** is dropped, or, in a few cases, changed to **e**: **animal, animāl-is,** stem **animāli-**; **calcar, calcār-is,** *spur,* stem **calcāri-**; **mare, mar-is,** stem **mari-**.

I-stems end regularly in **-ium** in the Genitive plural. All masculines and feminines ended originally in **-im** in the Accusative singular, but **i** has been changed to **e** except in a few forms.

Some masculines and feminines, and almost all neuters, have the Ablative singular in **-ī**.

Masculines and feminines fluctuate between **-is** and **-ēs** in the Accusative plural, but all neuters have **-ia**.

112. **I**-stems include: (*a*) nouns of the Third Declension in **-ēs, -is** and **-e** having in the Genitive the same number of syllables as in the Nominative; (*b*) those in **-er** (except **pater, māter, frāter,** and **accipiter**); (*c*) neuters in **-al, -ar,** which have lost a final **e**.

113.

	Hostis,[3] **is,** m. and f., *enemy;* Stem **hosti-**[4]	**Turris, is,** f., *tower;* Stem **turri-**	**Mare, is,** n., *sea;* Stem **mari-**	**Animal, is,** n., *animal;* Stem **animali-**	TABLE OF TERMINATIONS *M. & F.*	*N.*
N.V.	**host-is**	**turr-is**	**mar-e**	**animal**	**is**	**e**
G.	**host-is**	**turr-is**	**mar-is**	**animāl-is**	**is**	**is**
D.	**host-ī**	**turr-ī**	**mar-ī**	**animāl-ī**	**ī**	**ī**
Ac.	**host-em**	**turr-im(em)**	**mar-e**	**animal**	**em, im**	**e**
Ab.	**host-e(ī)**	**turr-ī(e)**	**mar-ī**	**animāl-ī**	**e, ī**	**ī**

[1] To be used chiefly for reference.
[2] Two stems in **-u** occur.
[3] Usually in the plur.
[4] What are the bases of these words?

N.V.	**host-ēs**	**turr-ēs**	**mar-ia**	**animāl-ia**	**ēs**	**ia**
G.	**host-ium**	**turr-ium**	**mar-ium**	**animāl-ium**	**ium**	**ium**
D.	**host-ibus**	**turr-ibus**	**mar-ibus**	**animāl-ibus**	**ibus**	**ibus**
Ac.	**host-īs (ēs)**	**turr-īs(ēs)**	**mar-ia**	**animāl-ia**	**ēs, īs**	**ia**
Ab.	**host-ibus**	**turr-ibus**	**mar-ibus**	**animāl-ibus**	**ibus**	**ibus**

114. Examine the following: —

1. **In prōvinciam multīs cum**[1] **cīvibus venit,** *he comes into the province with many citizens.*
2. **In castra multīs mīlitibus contendit,** *he hastens into the camp with many soldiers.*

RULE. — The Ablative with **cum** is used to express accompaniment, but in military phrases **cum** may be omitted.

115. VOCABULARY

castellum, ī, n., *fortress, redoubt.*
cīvis, is, m. and f., *citizen.*
fīnis, is, m., *end, limit,* pl., *territory.*
praesidium, ī, n., *guard, garrison, protection.*
rēgnum, ī, n., *kingdom, royal power.*
commūniō, īre, īvī, ītus, *fortify on all sides.*
dispōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *set, place.*
occupō, āre, āvī, ātus, *seize, occupy.*
autem, postpositive conj.,[2] *but, however.*
-que,[3] enclitic conj., *and.*

116. EXERCISES

I. 1. Hostēs oppida occupant et praesidia dispōnunt. 2. Casticus multīs mīlitibus in castra hostium[4] veniēbat. 3. In fīnēs prōvinciae veniēbat et castra commūniēbat. 4. Rēgnum in cīvitāte fīnitimōrum occupat. 5. Dux hostium multōs obsidēs, prīncipēs cīvitātis, dat, et pācem amīcitiamque cum populō Rōmānō

---

[1] Notice the position of **cum**.

[2] A postpositive word is one that is placed after one or more words in its clause.

[3] **-que** is always attached to the latter of the two words which it connects.

[4] See **112**, 1.

cōnfīrmat. 6. Nōnne[1] est in agrīs cōpia frūmentī? 7. Cōpia frūmentī in agrīs est. 8. Rēgnum in cīvitāte Gallōrum occupat, castella autem nōn commūnit. 9. Hostēs oppidum nōn capiunt quod fossae lātae et mūrī altī sunt. 10. Lēgātōs cum multīs mīlitibus ad prīncipem hostium mittunt, quod nova bella gerit.

II. 1. The leaders of the enemy send ambassadors concerning peace. 2. They were coming with many soldiers into the territory of the enemy. 3. They were assaulting the town because the wall was not high. 4. They are placing garrisons in the towns of the enemy. 5. We were coming with our friends. 6. We are bringing supplies into the camp, because the enemy are coming with many soldiers. 7. The leaders of the enemy were fortifying redoubts, but were not calling (their) soldiers together. 8. The lieutenant with many soldiers is seizing the town, but he is not placing a garrison in the fortress.

LESSON XIX

THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS, FUTURE TENSE— THE SUBSTANTIVE USE OF ADJECTIVES

117. In the First and Second Conjugations **-bi** is the sign of the Future tense.

The Future tense of **vocō** consists of the Present stem **vocā** + the Future tense sign **-bi** + the personal endings.

The Future tense of **moneō** consists of the Present stem **monē** + the Future tense sign **-bi** + the personal endings.

118.

SINGULAR	
1. **vocā-b-ō**, *I shall call*	**monē-b-ō**, *I shall advise*
2. **vocā-bi-s**, *you will call*	**monē-bi-s**, *you will advise*
3. **vocā-bi-t**, *he will call*	**monē-bi-t**, *he will advise*

[1] See **96**.

PLURAL

1. **vocā-bi-mus**, *we shall call*	**monē-bi-mus**, *we shall advise*
2. **vocā-bi-tis**, *you will call*	**monē-bi-tis**, *you will advise*
3. **vocā-bu-nt**, *they will call*	**monē-bu-nt**, *they will advise*

Observe that **i** of the tense sign is lost before **-ō** in the first person singular, and changes to **u** before **-nt** in the third person plural.

119. Examine the following: —

1. **Nostrī in castra veniēbant**, *our men were coming into the camp.*
2. **Māgna cum parvīs compōnit**, *he compares great things with small.*

RULE. — Plural adjectives are quite freely used as nouns, the masculine to denote persons, the neuter to denote things.

NOTE. — This usage occurs sometimes in the singular.

120. VOCABULARY

Caesar, aris, m., *Caesar.*
iniūria, ae, f., *injury, harm, injustice.*
maleficium, ī, n., *wrong-doing, mischief.*
Rhodanus, ī, m., *the Rhone.*
inimīcus, a, um, *unfriendly, hostile,* as subst. *enemy* (personal), *foe.*
parvus, a, um, *little, small.*
perveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, *come through, arrive.*
recūsō, āre, āvī, ātus, *refuse.*
circum, prep. w. Acc., *around, about.*
sine, prep. w. Abl., *without.*
ubi, adv. and conj., *where, when.*

121. EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar nostrōs in castra convocābit. 2. Per prōvinciam multōs sine iniūriā maleficiōque dūcēbat. 3. Circum castra castella dispōnit. 4. Bona amīcīs nōn recūsābit. 5. Pācem amīcitiamque cum hostibus nōn cōnfīrmābimus. 6. In īnsulā cum multīs amīcīs manēbimus. 7. Mūrum ā castrīs ad oppidum perdūcit et praesidia dispōnit. 8. Caesar cum nostrīs ad flūmen Rhodanum pervenit. 9. Circum oppida praesidia dispōnit ubi inimīcās cōpiās videt. 10. Bellum cum hostibus saepe renovābunt.

II. 1. Will Caesar refuse to send ambassadors to the Helvetians? 2. The forces of the Roman people will seize the hostile camp. 3. Our[1] men were contending in daily battles. 4. You will hasten through the broad fields of the enemy and attack their towns. 5. Around the towns of the enemy were many[2] high towers. 6. When we arrive at the city we shall call our men together. 7. We are prolonging walls, and placing garrisons in the towns. 8. They are leading their forces across the river Rhone. 9. We shall always praise the good.

LESSON XX

I-STEMS (*Continued*) — WORD LIST III — READING LESSON

122. Certain nouns of the Third Declension are inflected in the singular like consonant stems,[3] and in the plural like i-stems.[4] These were originally vowel stems, but have taken on certain consonantal forms. Among these are monosyllables with two consonants preceding the vowel of the stem ending, together with **imber, bris**, m., *shower*, and some other dissyllables. These are best classed as i-stems.

123.

	Urbs, urbis, f., *city*; Stem **urbi-**, base **urb-**		**Nox, noctis**, f., *night*; Stem **nocti-**, base **noct-**		**Imber, bris**, m., *shower*; Stem **imbri-**, base **imbr-**	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.V.	**urb-s**	**urb-ēs**	**nox**	**noct-ēs**	**imber**	**imbr-ēs**
G.	**urb-is**	**urb-ium**	**noct-is**	**noct-ium**	**imbr-is**	**imbr-ium**
D.	**urb-ī**	**urb-ibus**	**noct-ī**	**noct-ibus**	**imbr-ī**	**imbr-ibus**
Ac.	**urb-em**	**urb-īs(ēs)**	**noct-em**	**noct-īs(ēs)**	**imbr-em**	**imbr-īs(ēs)**
Ab.	**urb-e**	**urb-ibus**	**noct-e**	**noct-ibus**	**imbr-e**	**imbr-ibus**

Observe that in the Nominative singular of **imber**, **e** is inserted before **-r** of the stem.

---

[1] See **119**, 1.
[2] *many and high*.
[3] See **79**.
[4] See **113**.

124. VOCABULARY

iter, itineris, n., *road, march, journey.*
Iūra, ae, m., *Jura*, a mountain range in Gaul.
mōns, montis,[1] m., *mountain.*
pars, partis,[1] f., *part, direction.*
pōns, pontis,[1] m., *bridge.*
Sēquanī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Sequani.*
angustus, a, um, *narrow.*
conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, *come together, assemble.*
pertineō, ēre, nī, tentus, *extend, pertain.*
inter, prep. w. Acc., *between, among.*
neque . . . neque, correl. conj., *neither . . . nor.*
tum, adv., *at that time, then.*

125. EXERCISES

I. 1. Erat iter inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum. 2. Iter per fīnēs Sēquanōrum angustum erat. 3. Pōns erat in[2] flūmine Arare. 4. Cum māgnā parte cīvium in castra veniēbat. 5. Hostēs ad flūmen Ararim perveniēbant. 6. Mīlitēs multās in partēs urbium conveniunt et in Galliam contendunt. 7. Helvētiī cōnstituunt incolās montium per prōvinciam dūcere. 8. Tum erant neque castella neque praesidia in oppidīs. 9. Mūrus ā monte ad flūmen pertinēbit. 10. Hostēs māgnam partem montium occupābant.

II. 1. A wall and a ditch extend from the mountain to the camp. 2. A narrow road extends from a part of the mountain to the river. 3. They come together and prepare to lead their forces to Mt. Jura. 4. They arrive at the bridge, and place redoubts on the river bank. 5. The enemy lead a part of their forces across the river Rhone and assault the towns. 6. There were then neither good roads nor high buildings in Gaul. 7. They wage war continually because they excel the rest of the Gauls in valor. 8. Caesar will refuse the right of way[3] to the Helvetians. 9. The Helvetii assemble near the river and decide to lead their forces across.

---

[1] To what class of stems does this word belong?
[2] *over.* [3] **iter.**

126. WORD LIST III

**aedificium
**amīcitia
**amīcus
angustus
animal
Arar
audiō
autem
Caesar
**capiō
*castellum
Casticus
*circum
*cīvis
*clārus
*cohors
**commūniō
**compōnō
**cōnficiō
cōnfīrmō
*coniūrātiō
*cōnsul
*conveniō
corpus
dēfendō
**dispōnō
**faciō
**fīnis
**fīnitimus
*flūmen
*genus
*homō
*hostis
imber
incendō
**inimīcus
*iniūria
inter
**inveniō
**ita
*iter
Iūra
labor
**lēgātiō
**legiō
**maleficium
maneō
mare
mōns
mōs
**mūniō
**-ne
**neque . . . neque
**nōbilitās
**nōmen
**nōnne
*nox
num
**occupō
pars
parvus
pāx
*pertineō
**perveniō
*pōns
*praesidium
*praestō
*prīvātus
**-que
*recūsō
*rēgnum
*renovō
Rhēnus
Rhodanus
semper
*sentiō
Sēquanī
sine
**trādūcō
*tum
turris
*ubi
urbs
**veniō
vinciō
*virtūs

127. READING LESSON III: *Duo*[1] *Itinera*

Erat iter angustum per fīnēs Sēquanōrum inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum. Erat per prōvinciam quoque iter. Helvētiī ē fīnibus exīre[2] cōnstituunt et per prōvinciam cōpiās ēdūcere. Ubi Caesar hōc[3] audit, properat ab urbe, et in Galliam venit. Helvētiīs iter per prōvinciam recūsat et mūrum ad monten Iūram perdūcit. Tum praesidium dispōnit et castella commūnit.

---

[1] **duo**, *two*.

[2] **exīre**, *go forth*, Pres. Inf. of irreg. verb **exeō**.

[3] **hōc**, *this*, Acc. sing. neut. of **hīc, haec, hōc**.

LESSON XXI

THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS, FUTURE TENSE — THE THIRD CONJUGATION, VERBS IN -io, FUTURE — THE DOUBLE DATIVE

128.

	SINGULAR	
1. **rega-m**	**audia-m**	**capia-m**
2. **regē-s**	**audiē-s**	**capiē-s**
3. **rege-t**	**audie-t**	**capie-t**
	PLURAL	
1. **regē-mus**	**audiē-mus**	**capiē-mus**
2. **regē-tis**	**audiē-tis**	**capiē-tis**
3. **rege-nt**	**audie-nt**	**capie-nt**

Observe the similarity in the inflection of these three verbs. The Future first sing. of **regō** is formed by changing **e** of the stem to **a**, and adding the personal ending **m**. The **e** of the stem is retained in the other forms.

The Future of **capiō**, stem **capie-**, is formed in the same way.

The Future of **audiō** is formed in the first sing. by changing the stem vowel to **ia** and adding the personal ending **m**, and in the other forms by changing it to **iē** and adding the personal endings.

The **ē** is long in the second sing. and in the first and second plural.

129. Examine the following: —

Caesarī erat cūrae, *it was a care to Caesar* (it was to Caesar for a care).

The Latin often uses a Dative of the object for which, together with a Dative of the person for whom, where the English uses a predicate noun and an indirect object. This is called the double Dative, and is found principally with the verb **sum**.

130. VOCABULARY

impedīmentum, ī, n., *hindrance,* pl. *baggage.*
locus, ī, m., *place,* n. in pl. **loca.**
mors, mortis, f., *death.*
perīculum, ī, n., *danger.*
cōnscrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *enroll.*
dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, *select, choose.*
impediō, īre, īvī, ītus, *hinder.*
enim, postpositive [1] conj., *for.*
intereā, adv., *in the meantime.*

131. EXERCISES

I. 1. Flūmen erat hostibus impedimentō. 2. Helvētiī lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem dē itinere mittent quod amīcus est Sēquanōrum. 3. Sēquanī Helvētiōs itinere nōn prohibēbunt. 4. Caesar novam legiōnem in Galliā cōnscrībet. 5. Legiō impedīmentīs praesidiō erat. 6. Caesar bellum in Galliā cōnficiet. 7. Multa oppida capiētis quod multōs mīlitēs habētis. 8. Dux in Galliam māgnīs [2] itineribus contendit, cōpia enim frūmentī nōn māgna est. 9. Intereā ad Sēquanōs lēgātum dē pāce mittet.

II. 1. He was enrolling a new legion in the province. 2. The Sequani did not hinder the march of the Helvetians. 3. The Helvetians will not lead their forces through the territory of the Sequani, for the way is narrow. 4. The bridge was a protection [3] to the town. 5. The scarcity of grain was a care to Caesar. 6. Caesar hastens toward the enemy, for they are assaulting the town. 7. In the meantime they will select a place on [4] the bridge. 8. We shall hasten to the camp, for the danger of death is great. 9. The baggage was a hindrance to Caesar.

LESSON XXII

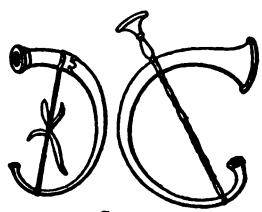
THE FOURTH DECLENSION—THE PRONOUN **Is**

132. Nouns of the Fourth Declension have stems in **ū**, generally weakened to **i** before **-bus**. Those having the Nominative in **us** are masculine with a few exceptions, those in **u** are neuter.

[1] See **115**, 4. [2] *by forced marches.* [3] See **129**. [4] *in.*

133.

	Cāsus, ūs, m., *chance, misfortune;* Stem ? base ?		**Cornū, ūs**, n., *horn, wing, flank;* Stem ? base ?		TABLE OF TERMINATIONS			
					Masc.	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Neut.*
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.		PLUR.	
N.V.	**cās-us**	**cās-ūs**	**corn-ū**	**corn-ua**	**us**	**ū**	**ūs**	**ua**
G.	**cās-ūs**	**cās-uum**	**corn-ūs**	**corn-uum**	**ūs**	**ūs**	**uum**	**uum**
D.	**cās-uī**	**cās-ibus**	**corn-ū**	**corn-ibus**	**uī**	**ū**	**ibus**	**ibus**
Ac.	**cās-um**	**cās-ūs**	**corn-ū**	**corn-ua**	**um**	**ū**	**ūs**	**ua**
Ab.	**cās-ū**	**cās-ibus**	**corn-ū**	**corn-ibus**	**ū**	**ū**	**ibus**	**ibus**



CORNUA

134. **Domus**, f., *house, home*, is partly of the Second and partly of the Fourth Declension, and is inflected as follows: —

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N.V.	**dom-us**	**dom-ūs**
G.	**dom-ūs (dom-ī)**	**dom-uum (dom-ōrum)**
D.	**dom-uī (dom-ō)**	**dom-ibus**
Ac.	**dom-um**	**dom-ōs (dom-ūs)**
Ab.	**dom-ō (dom-ū)**	**dom-ibus**

135. The demonstrative pronoun **is**, *this* or *that*, is used more frequently than any other of its class; it often supplies the place of the lacking personal pronoun of the third person, and its inflection should be thoroughly learned.

136.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	**is**	**ea**	**id**	**eī, iī**	**eae**	**ea**
G.	**ēius**	**ēius**	**ēius**	**eōrum**	**eārum**	**eōrum**
D.	**eī**	**eī**	**eī**	**eīs, iīs**	**eīs, iīs**	**eīs, iīs**
Ac.	**eum**	**eam**	**id**	**eōs**	**eās**	**ea**
Ab.	**eō**	**eā**	**eō**	**eīs, iīs**	**eīs, iīs**	**eīs, iīs**

137. VOCABULARY

collis, is, m., *hill.*
cupiditās, ātis, f., *desire.*
exercitus, ūs, m., *army.*
Ītalia, ae, f., *Italy.*
addūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead to, induce.*
dēiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, *cast down.*
interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *kill.*
sub, prep. w. Acc.[1] and Abl., *under, at the foot of.*
sub vesperum, adv. phr., *at* or *towards evening.*
ibi, adv., *there.*

138. EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar exercitum per fīnēs Sēquanōrum dūcet. 2. In Ītaliam contendet et ibi legiōnem cōnscrībet. 3. Lēgātus castra sub eō colle pōnet. 4. Nostrī in fīnēs hostium sub vesperum pervenient. 5. Orgetorīx ad id flūmen castra sub vesperum pōnit. 6. Helvētiī dē rīpīs ēius flūminis tēla in hostīs dēiciēbant. 7. Dux hostium ad eum pontem exercitum dūcit, ibique castra pōnit. 8. Is cornū exercitūs flūmen trādūcit. 9. Māgna cupiditās rēgnī in eā terrā erat. 10. Auctōritās eōrum prīncipum māgna erat in cīvitāte.

II. 1. That army was hastening into the territory of the Sequani. 2. Caesar was pitching his camp at the foot of this mountain. 3. The leader will move his camp towards evening. 4. The doors of these houses were wide and high. 5. The enemy were casting down missiles from the hill upon our army. 6. Caesar will hasten into that part of the province and enroll a new legion there. 7. The chances of war are great. 8. The enemy in the meantime were keeping the soldiers of our armies from the march. 9. The Helvetii did not kill a large part of our army.

---

[1] With Acc. with verbs of motion; with Abl. with verbs of rest.

LESSON XXIII

THE CARDINAL NUMERALS — THE ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE — READING LESSON

139. The Cardinal numerals are the numbers used in counting. The following furnish a basis for forming the others.

1, ūnus	15, quīndecim	80, octōgintā
2, duo	16, sēdecim	90, nōnāgintā
3, trēs	17, septendecim	100, centum
4, quattuor	18, duodēvīgintī	101, centum et ūnus
5, quīnque	19, ūndēvīgintī	200, ducentī, ae, a
6, sex	20, vīgintī	300, trecentī, ae, a
7, septem	21, vīgintī ūnus	400, quadringentī, ae, a
8, octō	22, vīgintī duo	500, quīngentī, ae, a
9, novem	30, trīgintā	600, sēscentī, ae, a
10, decem	40, quadrāgintā	700, septingentī, ae, a
11, ūndecim	50, quīnquāgintā	800, octingentī, ae, a
12, duodecim	60, sexāgintā	900, nōngentī, ae, a
13, tredecim	70, septuāgintā	1000, mīlle
14, quattuordecim	75, septuāgintā quīnque	2000, duo mīlia

Of these, only **ūnus, duo, trēs,** *the hundreds,* and **mīlia,** the plural of **mīlle,** are declined.

140.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	**duo**	**duae**	**duo**	**trēs**	**tria**
G.	**duōrum**	**duārum**	**duōrum**	**trium**	**trium**
D.	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**	**tribus**	**tribus**
Ac.	**duōs**	**duās**	**duo**	**trēs (trīs)**	**tria**
Ab.	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**	**tribus**	**tribus**

The hundreds are declined like the plural of **fīdus,**[1] and **mīlia** like the plural of **animal.**

[1] They make the Gen. plur. in **-um** instead of **-ōrum.**

141. Examine the following:

1. **Multōs annōs in oppidō manet,** *he remains many years in the town.*
2. **Ducentōs pedēs līberōs portat,** *he carries the children two hundred feet.*

Observe that **multōs annōs** is in the Accusative case, and expresses duration of time, and that **ducentōs pedēs** is in the same case, and expresses extent of space.

RULE. — Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the Accusative.

142. VOCABULARY

Alpēs, ium, f. pl., *the Alps.*
annus, ī, m., *year.*
cōnātus, ūs, m., *attempt, undertaking.*
grātia, ae, f., *favor, influence.*
hīberna, ōrum, n. pl., *winter quarters.*
hōra, ae, f., *hour.*
pēs, pedis, m., *foot.*
bellicōsus, a, um, *warlike.*
dēsistō, ere, stitī, stitus, *desist, cease.*
dīvidō, ere, vīsī, vīsus, *divide, separate.*
hiemō, āre, āvī, ātus, *winter, spend the winter.*
vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus, *devastate, lay waste.*

143. EXERCISES

I. 1. Helvētiī sunt hominēs bellicōsī, populī Rōmānī inimīcī. 2. Sex hōrās oppidum continenter oppūgnābat, sub vesperum autem dē cōnātū dēsistit. 3. In Sēquanōrum fīnēs perveniunt et eōrum agrōs vāstant. 4. Flūmen Rhēnus agrōs Helvētiōrum ā Germānīs dīvidit. 5. Trēs annōs in Galliā manēbunt. 6. Exercitum ab hībernīs in Galliam dūcit. 7. Per Alpēs in Galliam contendit et ibi duōs annōs manet. 8. Orgetorīgis grātia in cīvitāte māgna erat. 9. Trēs legiōnēs in Ītaliā hiemābant, et Caesar ad eās contendit. 10. Duās legiōnēs in Ītaliā Caesar cōnscrībit et cum īīs quīnque legiōnibus in Galliam iter facere contendit. 11. Mūrum sēscentōs pedēs perdūcit.

II. 1. Caesar leads six legions into winter quarters in Gaul. 2. He marches from Italy into Gaul, and remains there seven years. 3. These legions were wintering in the territory of the Sequani. 4. The Germans are warlike men, and carry on war daily. 5. During[1] three years the influence of this man was great. 6. You will devastate their fields because they are enemies of the Roman people. 7. Does not the river Rhine separate the territory of the Helvetians from the Germans? Yes. 8. They will not desist from their attempt for[1] three years. 9. They prolonged the ditch two hundred feet from the camp to the town.

144. READING LESSON: *Profectiō*[2] *Helvētiōrum*

Helvētiī per Sēquanōrum fīnēs iter facere cōnstituunt. Caesar autem in Ītaliam contendit et ibi duās novās legiōnēs cōnscrībit, et trēs ab hībernīs dūcit. Cum iīs quīnque legiōnibus per Alpēs in Galliam iter facit. Helvētiī intereā per fīnēs Sēquanōrum cōpiās trādūcunt et agrōs eōrum vāstant.

LESSON XXIV

THE IRREGULAR VERB **Sum**, PRESENT, IMPERFECT, FUTURE —DATIVE OF THE POSSESSOR— THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

145.

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
SING. 1.	**s-u-m**, *I am*	**er-a-m**, *I was*	**er-ō**, *I shall be*
SING. 2.	**es**, *you are*	**er-ā-s**, *you were*	**er-i-s**, *you will be*
SING. 3.	**es-t**, *he is*	**er-a-t**, *he was*	**er-i-t**, *he will be*
PLUR. 1.	**s-u-mus**, *we are*	**er-ā-mus**, *we were*	**er-i-mus**, *we shall be*
PLUR. 2.	**es-tis**, *you are*	**er-ā-tis**, *you were*	**er-i-tis**, *you will be*
PLUR. 3.	**s-u-nt**, *they are*	**er-a-nt**, *they were*	**er-u-nt**, *they will be*

Learn the inflection of this verb thoroughly. It occurs very frequently as a principal verb, and is used in the conjugation of certain passive forms.

[1] See **141**, 1.

[2] *The Departure.*

146. Examine the following: —

Domus erat agricolae, *the farmer had a house* (*there was to the farmer a house*).

Agricolae is in the Dative case, and denotes the possessor of the house.

RULE. — The Dative is used with **sum** and similar verbs to denote the possessor.

147. The Relative Pronoun.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	**quī**	**quae**	**quod**	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
G.	**cūius**	**cūius**	**cūius**	**quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
D.	**cuī**	**cuī**	**cuī**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**
Ac.	**quem**	**quam**	**quod**	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Ab.	**quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**

148. Examine the following: —

1. **Mīlitēs quōs videō,** *the soldiers whom I see.*
2. **Mulier quam videō,** *the woman whom I see.*
3. **Pīlum quod habeō,** *the javelin which I have.*
4. **Ego quī videō,** *I who see.*
5. **Vir cūius fīlī sunt inimicī,** *the man whose sons are hostile.*

Observe the gender, person, number, and case of the above relatives with their antecedents.

RULE. — The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, person, and number; but its case depends upon its relation to other words in the sentence.

149. VOCABULARY

adventus, ūs, m., *arrival, approach.*
cōnspectus, ūs, m., *sight.*
explōrātor, ōris, m., *scout.*
imperātor, ōris, m., *commander.*
impetus, ūs, m., *attack.*
lacus, ūs, m., *lake.*
ōrātiō, ōnis, f., *speech, oration.*
spatium, ī, n., *space.*

laetus, a, um, *glad.*
discēdō, ere, cessī, cessus, *withdraw.*
postulō, āre, āvī, ātus, *demand.*
trādō, ere, didī, ditus, *give up, surrender.*

150. SPECIAL EXERCISES ON THE RELATIVE

I. 1. Montēs altī, quōs vidēmus, praesidiō oppidō erant. 2. Castra quae pōnis māgna erunt. 3. Dux cuī erat māgnus exercitus multa oppida capiēbat. 4. Multa aedificia incendunt in quibus erat cōpia frūmentī māgna. 5. Quī fīdī sunt, eīs amīcī sunt fīdī.

II. 1. The attack of the Belgae, who had many armed men, was long. 2. The frequent showers were a hindrance[1] to the enemy who were pitching their camp. 3. The island to which we are hastening is large. 4. The river whose banks we see is wide. 5. Caesar was a Roman commander to whom the Gauls often surrendered their arms. 6. There were many inhabitants in the city which the Germans attacked. 7. Those who[2] are faithful will not be wretched. 8. The farmers whose fields you are devastating are fleeing to the city.

151. EXERCISES

I. 1. Explōrātōrēs in cōnspectū exercitūs interficit. 2. Ā castrīs hostium māgnum spatium discēdit et duās noctēs in agrīs manet. 3. Eī explōrātōrī erant arma. 4. In hīberna ad lacum imperātor exercitum dūcēbat. 5. Arma in cōnspectū hostium trādunt, et laetī sunt quod Caesar obsidēs nōn postulat. 6. Multās et longās ōrātiōnēs audiēmus in domibus amīcōrum nostrōrum. 7. In agrīs castra pōnit et ibi adventum inimīcārum cōpiārum impedit. 8. Explōrātōrēs laetī erunt quod hostibus nōn multī mīlitēs sunt. 9. Nōn māgnum spatium ab oppidō erat lacus māgnus et pulcher. 10. Eī lēgātō erit grātia in cīvitāte, quod eī sunt multī fīnitimī amīcīque.

---

[1] See **129.**

[2] *Those who* = **quī.**

II. 1. The arrival of the hostile army hindered Caesar's undertakings. 2. There were many towns in sight of Caesar's forces. 3. Is not the consul withdrawing from the lake? He is.[1] 4. I shall have[2] a supply of grain because I live no[3] long distance from the fields. 5. The commander of the enemy's forces has arms and standards in the camp. 6. They will lead their soldiers out of the town and surrender their arms. 7. Three legions of soldiers will attack the town and the camp. 8. You are demanding hostages, but the enemy will not give them.

LESSON XXV

THE FIRST CONJUGATION, PERFECT SYSTEM — THE ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

152. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect tenses — called tenses of completed action — correspond in the main to the tenses of the same name in English, except that the Perfect has two uses, one to express an act done in simple past time — the Perfect Historical — and one to express an action begun in the past and continued to the present — the Perfect Definite.

Examples: **vocā-v-ī**, perfect, *I called* or *have called.*
vocā-v-era-m, pluperfect, *I had called.*
vocā-v-er-ō, future perfect, *I shall have called.*

153. To form the Perfect stem **v(u)** is regularly added to the Present stem: **vocā-v-**, but it is sometimes added to the root:[4] **son-u-**.

154. Latin verbs have special personal endings in certain forms of the Perfect tense. Hence, attention should be given to the following table, as well as to the paradigms.

---

[1] See **97.** [2] **mihi erit.** See **146.** [3] See **151, I., 9.**

[4] The root is the ultimate part of a word underlying the stem, and contains the idea of the word without modifications.

155. PRESENT TENSE. — TABLE OF ENDINGS

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. **-ī**	**-mus**
2. **-stī**	**-stis**
3. **-t**	**-ērunt** or **-ēre**

156.

PERFECT

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. **vocā-v-ī**, *I called* or *have called*	**vocā-v-i-mus**, *we called*, etc.
2. **vocā-v-i-stī**, *you called*, etc.	**vocā-v-i-stis**, *you called*, etc.
3. **vocā-v-i-t**, *he called*, etc.	**vocā-v-ērunt**, *they called*, etc.

PLUPERFECT

1. **vocā-v-era-m**, *I had called*	**vocā-v-erā-mus**, *we had called*
2. **vocā-v-erā-s**, *you had called*	**vocā-v-erā-tis**, *you had called*
3. **vocā-v-era-t**, *he had called*	**vocā-v-era-nt**, *they had called*

FUTURE PERFECT

1. **vocā-v-er-ō**, *I shall have called*	**vocā-v-eri-mus**, *we shall have called*
2. **vocā-v-eri-s**, *you will have called*	**vocā-v-eri-tis**, *you will have called*
3. **vocā-v-eri-t**, *he will have called*	**vocā-v-eri-nt**, *they will have called*

Observe that **ī**, **erā**, **eri** are the tense signs of the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect respectively.

Apply 47, note, to **convocō**, **postulō**, and **privō** in the Perfect system.

157. Examine the following: —

1. **Orgetorix erat vir māgnā auctōritāte in cīvitāte**, *Orgetorix was a man of great authority in the state.*
2. **Fīliae agricolae erant bonō animō**, *the farmer's daughters were of good disposition.*

Observe that in 1 **auctōritāte** is in the Ablative, and that **māgnā** agrees with it. Observe that in 2 **bonō animō** is used in the same way as **māgnā auctōritāte** except that it is in the predicate.

RULE — The Ablative with an adjective in agreement with it is used to express quality (Ablative of Description).

NOTE. — This ablative may have either an adjective or predicate use.

158. VOCABULARY

Aeduī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Aedui.*
clāmor, ōris, m., *noise, outcry, clamor.*
Dīvicō, ōnis, m., *Divico.*
eques, itis, m., *horseman;* pl. *cavalry.*
reliquus, a, um, *remaining, rest of;* pl., as subst., *the rest.*
concīdō, ere, ī, cīsus, *kill.*
fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitus, *flee.*
ē, ex, prep. w. Abl., *out of, from* (**ē** before consonants only).
nunquam, adv., *never.*
sed, conj., *but.*

159. EXERCISES

I. 1. Equitēs erant māgnā virtūte et bonō animō in populum Rōmānum. 2. Ex oppidō ad lacūs silvāsque Caesar reliquōs equitēs convocāverit. 3. Multī mīlitēs castra hostium oppūgnāvērunt, reliquī autem māgnō cum clāmōre fugiēbant. 4. Māgnā grātiā Orgetorīx erat in cīvitāte. 5. Pācem amīcitiamque cum hostibus cōnfīrmāverāmus. 6. Ad urbem properāverās quod mīlitēs inimīcī ad castra veniēbant. 7. Reliquī Aeduī in Ītaliam nunquam venient. 8. Dīvicō, Helvētiōrum dux, vir māgnā virtūte erat. 9. Agricolae fugiēbant, quod Aeduī fīnitimōs concīdēbant.

II. 1. They will have hastened into the town. 2. The horsemen had assaulted the camp of the enemy. 3. The soldiers hastened with a great outcry into the territory of the Aedui. 4. The Aedui will have wintered in the country of the enemy. 5. You will have deprived (your) friends of (their) beasts-of-burden and carts. 6. We shall lead the children of the nobility out of the city into the fields. 7. The horsemen will flee across the Arar into the deep forests. 8. They are warlike men of great courage, and will never surrender their children as hostages. 9. They were men of good disposition,[1] but of small influence.

[1] See 157, 2.

LESSON XXVI

ORDINAL NUMERALS — WORD LIST IV — READING LESSON

160. Ordinal numerals are adjectives derived from the cardinals to express order or place. They are declined like **fīdus, a, um.**

1st, prīmus	9th, nōnus	17th, septimus decimus
2d, secundus	10th, decimus	18th, duodēvīcēsimus
3d, tertius	11th, ūndecimus	19th, ūndēvīcēsimus
4th, quārtus	12th, duodecimus	20th, vīcēsimus
5th, quīntus	13th, tertius decimus	21st, vīcēsimus prīmus
6th, sextus	14th, quārtus decimus	30th, trīcēsimus
7th, septimus	15th, quīntus decimus	40th, quadrāgēsimus
8th, octāvus	16th, sextus decimus	50th, quīnquāgēsimus

161. VOCABULARY

Allobrogēs, um, m. pl., *the Allobroges.*
centuriō, ōnis, m., *centurion.*
pāgus, ī, m., *district, canton.*
sarcina, ae, f., *bundle;* pl., *personal baggage.*
Tigurīnus, ī, m., *Tigurinus.*
vīcus, ī, m., *village.*
dīvīsus, a, um, *divided.*
varius, a, um, *varied, different.*
abdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead away.*
dēcurrō, ere, cucurrī or **currī**, *run down.*
exspectō, āre, āvī, ātus, *expect, await.*
īnfluō, ere, fluxī, fluxus, *flow into.*
intercēdō, ere, cessī, cessus, *come* or *be between.*
paene, adv., *almost.*

162. EXERCISES

I. 1. Per fīnēs hostium tertiam partem cōpiārum trādūcunt et in fīnibus Aeduōrum reliquōs mīlitēs exspectant. 2. Aeduī, quod Helvētiī paene in cōnspectū nostrī exercitūs agrōs eōrum vāstant, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt. 3. Decimae legiōnis mīlitēs dē colle in castra dēcurrunt. 4. Cīvitās Helvētiōrum in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est, quōrum ūnus est Tigurīnus. 5. Nōnne mīlitēs nōnae legiōnis sarcinās in itinere portant? 6. Allobrogēs quoque, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs habēbant, ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittunt. 7. Caesar mīlitēs quārtae legiōnis et variōs centuriōnēs

exspectāre cōnstituit. 8. Flūmen Arar per fīnēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit. 9. Prīma cohors septimae legiōnis in vīcum Allobrogum venit. 10. Oppida expūgnābant et incolārum līberōs obsidēs abdūcēbant.

II. 1. Divico was the chief of the embassy. 2. Caesar kills a third part of the Helvetians. 3. The Helvetii are laying waste the fields of the Aedui, and storming their towns almost in sight of our army. 4. The soldiers of the tenth legion will run down to the river. 5. They will lead a fourth part of their forces across the river Arar. 6. The sixth cohort of the third legion will await the arrival of the rest of the cohorts. 7. The third district of the Helvetii is awaiting a supply of grain. 8. The soldiers are fleeing from the woods in[1] different directions. 9. The rest of the states will never send ambassadors to Caesar concerning peace.

163. WORD LIST IV

**abdūcō	*dēligō	**impediō	*prīmus
**addūcō	*dēsistō	*imperātor	**quārtus
*adventus	**discēdō	*impetus	**quattuor
Aeduī	Dīvicō	*īnfluō	*quī
Allobrogēs	dīvidō	**intercēdō	quīnque
Alpēs	*domus	**intereā	*reliquus
annus	**ducentī	*interficiō	sarcina
*bellicōsus	**duo	**is	*sed
*cāsus	ē, ex	Ītalia	septimus
*centuriō	enim	lacus	*sex
*clāmor	*eques	laetus	spatium
collis	*exercitus	*locus	sub
*cōnātus	*explōrātor	*mors	**tertius
*concīdō	*exspectō	nōnus	Tigurīnus
cōnscrībō	*fugiō	*nunquam	*trādō
*cōnspectus	grātia	ōrātiō	trāns
cornū	**hīberna	paene	**trēs
cupiditās	**hiemō	pāgus	varius
*decimus	hōra	perīculum	*vāstō
*dēcurrō	**ibi	**pēs	vīcus
*dēiciō	**impedīmentum	*postulō	*vīgintī

[1] *in* with Acc.

164. READING LESSON

Helvētiī per angustās viās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum cōpiās trādūcunt et in Aeduōrum fīnēs perveniunt, eōrumque agrōs vāstant. Aeduī, quod Helvētiī paene in cōnspectū nostrī exercitūs agrōs eōrum vāstābant, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē auxiliō mittunt. Allobrogēs quoque lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt. Tum Caesar ad Helvētiōs legiōnēs dūcere cōnstituit. Ad ūnam partem Helvētiōrum pervenit, quae flūmen Ararim trānsībat,[1] et māgnam partem eōrum interficit. Tum pontem in Arare facit et ita cōpiās trādūcit.

LESSON XXVII

THE SECOND CONJUGATION, PERFECT SYSTEM — THE ABLATIVE OF TIME

165. The Perfect stem of a few words of the Second Conjugation is formed by adding **v**(**u**) to the Present stem: **dēleō**, stem **dēlē-**; Perfect stem **dēlēv-**; Perfect tense **dēlēvī**; but most verbs add **v**(**u**) to the stem clipped of its characteristic vowel: **mone-ō**, stem **monē-**; Perfect stem **monu-**, Perfect tense **monuī**.

166.

	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
	I have advised, etc.	*I had advised*, etc.	*I shall have advised*, etc.
SING. 1.	**mon-u-ī**	**mon-u-era-m**	**mon-u-er-ō**
SING. 2.	**mon-u-i-stī**	**mon-u-erā-s**	**mon-u-eri-s**
SING. 3.	**mon-u-i-t**	**mon-u-era-t**	**mon-u-eri-t**
PLUR. 1.	**mon-u-i-mus**	**mon-u-erā-mus**	**mon-u-eri-mus**
PLUR. 2.	**mon-u-i-stis**	**mon-u-erā-tis**	**mon-u-eri-tis**
PLUR. 3.	**mon-u-ērunt**	**mon-u-era-nt**	**mon-u-eri-nt**

State in regard to this verb and those in the following vocabulary its: Present stem, Perfect stem, tense-signs and personal endings in the perfect system.

Apply 47, note, to the verbs in the following vocabulary.

[1] *was crossing.*

167. Examine the following: —

1. **Tertiā hōrā in castra venit,** *he comes into camp at the third hour.*
2. **Tribus annīs multa oppida dēlēbit,** *within three years he will destroy many towns.*

Observe that in 1 **hōrā** expresses the time when he comes, and in 2 **tribus annīs** expresses the time within which he will destroy.

RULE. — Time when and within which is expressed by the Ablative case.

168. VOCABULARY

dēleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus, *destroy, blot out.*
iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus, *order.*
praebeō, ēre, uī, itus, *furnish.*
retineō, ēre, uī, tentus, *hold back, restrain, retain.*
teneō, ēre, uī, tus, *hold.*
terreō, ēre, uī, itus, *frighten.*
timeō, ēre, uī, —, *fear.*
ācriter, adv., *sharply, fiercely.*
facile, adv., *easily.*
cis, prep. w. Acc., *on this side of.*
propter, prep. w. Acc., *on account of.*

169. EXERCISES

I. 1. Hostēs lēgātōs Rōmānōrum multās hōrās in oppidō retinuērunt. 2. Ūna pars Helvētiōrum cis flūmen Ararim erat. 3. Prīmā hōrā mīlitēs oppidum oppūgnāre iussit. 4. Aeduī multōs equitēs Rōmānīs praebuērunt. 5. Hostēs nōmen populī Rōmānī semper timuerant. 6. Propter altam fossam Rōmānī oppidum nōn expūgnāverant. 7. Quīnque hōrīs vīcum hostium facile dēlēbis. 8. Quārtā hōrā hostēs cōpiās ē castrīs ēdūcunt et ad flūmen Ararim contendunt. 9. Caesar exercitum in castrīs retinuit, quod equitēs exspectābat. 10. Caesar centuriōnēs iussit mīlitēs convocāre, et tum trāns flūmen exercitum dūcit.

II. 1. Within four years Caesar will have destroyed many towns of the enemy. 2. The Romans will not easily seize the town on account of the bravery of the enemy. 3. The lieutenant will have held back the tenth legion, but he will send the seventh

as an aid[1] to Caesar. 4. Caesar had ordered the lieutenants to call together the soldiers at the third hour. 5. Within two years Caesar will have laid waste a great part of Gaul. 6. The district Tigurinus was on this side of the river Arar, but the rest of the Helvetii were across the river. 7. The Aedui will furnish grain and cavalry to the Romans. 8. In the third year they will hasten to lead the army across the river, and attack the towns of the enemy.

LESSON XXVIII

THE THIRD DECLENSION, GENERAL RULES FOR GENDER — IRREGULAR NOUNS

170. 1. Nouns in **-ō, -ōr, -ōs, -er, -ĕs** (Gen. **-ĭdis, -ĭtis**) are masculine.

2. Nouns in **-ās** (Gen. **-ātis**), **-ēs** (Gen. **-is**) **-is, -ys, -x, -s** (preceded by a consonant), **-dō, -gō** (Gen. **-ĭnis**), **-iō** (abstract and collective), **-ūs** (Gen. **-ūdis, -ūtis**), are feminine.

3. Nouns in **-a, -e, -i, -y, -c, -l, -t, -men** (**-ĭnis**), **-ar, -ur, -us.** (Gen. **-ŏris, -ŏris**), are neuter.

These are the general rules for gender of nouns of the Third Declension; but there are many exceptions which should be noted as they occur.

171. In some nouns the stem in some of the cases is irregularly modified.

	Senex, senis, m., *old man*		**Iter, itineris**, n., *journey, road, march*	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.V.	**senex**	**sen-ēs**	**iter**	**itiner-a**
G.	**sen-is**	**sen-um**	**itiner-is**	**itiner-um**
D.	**sen-ī**	**sen-ibus**	**itiner-ī**	**itiner-ibus**
Ac.	**sen-em**	**sen-ēs**	**iter**	**itiner-a**
Ab.	**sen-e**	**sen-ibus**	**itiner-e**	**itiner-ibus**

[1] See **129.**

Bōs, bovis, m. and f., *ox, bull, cow*		**Vīs**, f., *force*	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.V. **bōs**	**bov-ēs**	**vīs**	**vīr-ēs**
G. **bov-is**	**bo-um**	(**vīs**)	**vīr-ium**
D. **bov-ī**	**bō-bus**	(**vī**)	**vīr-ibus**
Ac. **bov-em**	**bov-ēs**	**vim**	**vīr-ēs**
Ab. **bov-e**	**bō-bus**	**vī**	**vīr-ibus**

172. VOCABULARY

cōpiae domesticae, f. pl., *home supplies.*
dēditiō, ōnis, f., *surrender.*
Divitiacus, ī, m., *Divitiacus.*
lātitūdō, inis, f., *width.*
Liscus, ī, m., *Liscus.*
domesticus, a, um, *domestic, private.*
integer, gra, grum, *whole, fresh.*
mātūrus, a, um, *ripe.*
accipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *receive, accept.*
agō, ere, ēgī, āctus, *set in motion, drive, do, act.*
flāgitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *demand.*
interscindō, ere, scidī, scissus, *cut down, destroy.*
suppetō, ere, īvī (iī), ītūrus, *be at hand.*
ex itinere, adv. phr., *on the march.*
nōndum, adv., *not yet.*

173. EXERCISES

I. 1. Belgae oppidum ex itinere oppūgnāvērunt. 2. Hostēs pontem interscindēbant. 3. Aeduī continenter frūmentum flāgitābant. 4. Caesar prīncipēs Aeduōrum in castra convocāverit. 5. Domesticae cōpiae Aeduīs nōn suppetēbant. 6. Divitiacus et Liscus, populī Rōmānī amīcī, ad Caesarem veniēbant. 7. Nostrī proelium integrīs vīribus[1] renovāvērunt. 8. Frūmenta[2] in agrīs nōndum mātūra sunt. 9. Multa iūmenta ad flūmen māgnā lātitūdine[3] agēbat. 10. Ex itinere hostium oppidum oppūgnāvit.

II. 1. Caesar kept[4] demanding ripe grain. 2. He had hastened to drive the beasts of burden across the bridge. 3. They will destroy the bridge, and hasten by forced[5] marches towards the territory of the Belgae. 4. Caesar will have called Divitiacus

---

[1] *with fresh strength.*
[2] *the crops of grain.*
[3] See **157**.
[4] Use the Imperfect of **flāgitō**.
[5] **māgnīs itineribus.**

and Liscus into the camp. 5. Caesar will demand home-supplies because the grain in the fields is not yet ripe. 6. They assaulted the towns on the march with fresh[1] strength. 7. A supply of grain was not at hand. 8. When will you send ambassadors concerning a surrender?

LESSON XXIX

THE THIRD DECLENSION, EXCEPTIONS TO GENERAL RULES FOR GENDER — READING LESSON

174. In the following list will be found the principal exceptions to the general rules for gender, which will be needed in your work in this book. These words should be thoroughly learned.

collis, is, m., *hill*
dēns, dentis, m., *tooth*
fīnis, is, m., *end, limit*
fōns, fontis, m., *fountain*
ignis, is, m., *fire*
iter, itineris, n., *journey*
lapis, idis, m., *stone*
mēnsis, is, m., *month*
mōns, montis, m., *mountain*
ōrdō, inis, m., *order, rank*
pēs, pedis, m., *foot*
pōns, pontis, m., *bridge*
sanguis, inis, m., *blood*
sōl, sōlis, m., *sun*
vertex, icis, m., *summit*

State the rule to which each of the above is an exception.

175. Account for the gender of the following (see **25**): —

cōnsul, ulis, m., *consul*
dux, ducis, m., *leader*
iūdex, icis, m., *judge*
rēmex, igis, m., *rower*
senex, senīs, m., *old man*
soror, ōris, f., *sister*

176. The Ablative Absolute. — Examine the following: —

Urbe captā, arma trādidērunt, *after the city had been captured, they gave up their arms* (lit. the city having been captured).

Observe that **urbe** is in the Ablative, that **captā** agrees with it, and that **urbe captā** shows the time of giving up their arms.

[1] See **173**, I., 7.

RULE. — A noun or pronoun limited by a participle is often used in the construction called the Ablative Absolute to denote the time or other circumstances of the action.

NOTE. — The Ablative Absolute is often translated into English by a subordinate clause of time, cause, condition, etc.

177. Observe carefully the translation of the following sentences: —

1. **Datō sīgnō, ad mare properāvērunt,** *at a given signal, they hastened to the sea* (lit. the signal having been given).
2. **Nostrīs timentibus, proelium hostēs renovāvērunt,** *since our men were afraid, the enemy renewed the battle* (our men being afraid).
3. **Multīs occīsīs, ācriter pūgnāvērunt,** *although many were killed, they fought fiercely* (many having been killed).

178. Examine the following: —

Caesare duce, oppidum oppūgnāvērunt, *under Caesar's leadership, they attacked the town* (Caesar [being] leader).

RULE. — Two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, may be used together in the Ablative Absolute.

179. VOCABULARY

āgmen, inis, n., *line of march.*
Crassus, ī, m., *Crassus.*
culpa, ae, f., *fault.*
frīgus, oris, n. (sing. or pl.), *cold.*
meus, a, um, *my, mine.*
suus, a, um, *his, her, their, its.*
dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus, *say, tell.*
incūsō, āre, āvī, ātus, *accuse.*
occīdō, ere, ī, cīsus, *kill.*
prōmittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *send forward, promise.*
pūgnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *fight.*
fortiter, adv., *bravely.*
graviter, adv., *gravely, severely.*
itaque, conj., *and so, therefore.*

180. EXERCISES[1]

I. 1. Frūmentum quod Aeduī prōmittēbant[2] nōndum suppetēbat. 2. Graviter Aeduōs incūsat quod frūmentum nōn praebent.

[1] Refer constantly to **176, 177, 178.**

[2] *kept promising.*

3. Dēditiōne factā obsidēs et arma Caesarī trādēbant. 4. Caesar āgmine ēductō ad verticem montis altī properāvit. 5. Liscus dīcit: "Culpa mea nōn est." 6. Ponte interscissō āgmen flūmen nōn trādūcēbat. 7. Frūmentum propter frīgora in agrīs nōndum mātūrum erat; itaque Aeduī nōn praebent. 8. Longum iter, multīs prohibentibus, per collēs et montēs faciēbat. 9. Ducentōs pedēs ā vertice ēius montis erat pōns.

II. 1. Since[1] the cold was great, the grain was not yet ripe. 2. The fault is mine; therefore I shall not severely accuse you. 3. Although many were killed,[1] the rest-of-the soldiers fought fiercely. 4. The mountains were high, and so the soldiers were remaining in the fields. 5. When[1] the signal had been given, the line of march hastened to the neighboring hill. 6. In the consulship[2] of Crassus they took many towns by storm. 7. The soldiers say: "We will wage war bravely, if[1] Caesar is (our) leader." 8. Caesar accused the Aeduans gravely, because grain was not at hand.

181. Reading Lesson

Frūmentum quod Aeduī Rōmānīs prōmittēbant nōn suppetēbat, itaque Caesar id cottīdiē flāgitābat; Aeduī autem dīxērunt[3]: "Frūmentum in agrīs propter frīgora nōndum mātūrum est." Caesar prīncipēs Aeduōrum convocāvit, in quibus Divitiacus, amīcus populī Rōmānī, et Liscus erant. Graviter eōs incūsāvit quod frūmentum nōn praebērent.[4] Liscus autem dīcit: "Nōn est mea culpa, sed Dumnorīgis. Is contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrātiōnem facit.

---

[1] Observe all indications of the Abl. Abs.

[2] Lit. *Crassus being consul*, see **178**.

[3] **dīxērunt**, third pers. plur. of the Perf. of **dīcō**.

[4] *they did not furnish.*

LESSON XXX

THE THIRD CONJUGATION, THE PERFECT SYSTEM — THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

182. The Perfect stem of verbs of the Third Conjugation is formed in various ways. A large number is formed by adding **-sī** to the root: **regō, rēxī** (for **reg-sī**).

183.

PERFECT *I ruled* or *have ruled*, etc.	PLUPERFECT *I had ruled*, etc.	FUTURE PERFECT *I shall have ruled*, etc.
	SINGULAR	
1. **rēx-ī**	**rēx-era-m**	**rēx-er-ō**
2. **rēx-i-stī**	**rēx-erā-s**	**rēx-eri-s**
3. **rēx-i-t**	**rēx-era-t**	**rēx-eri-t**
	PLURAL	
1. **rēx-i-mus**	**rēx-erā-mus**	**rēx-eri-mus**
2. **rēx-i-stis**	**rēx-erā-tis**	**rēx-eri-tis**
3. **rēx-ērunt**	**rēx-era-nt**	**rēx-eri-nt**

Compare the formation of the Perfect system of this verb with those of the two preceding conjugations. See **156** and **166**.

What are the stem, tense signs, and personal endings in the above paradigm?

184. Examine the following: —

1. **Mīlitēs Caesarem līberālitāte laudant,** *the soldiers praise Caesar for his generosity.*
2. **Multīs dē causīs Caesar mīlitēs laudāvit,** *for many reasons Caesar praised the soldiers.*

Observe that **līberālitāte** and **causīs** are in the Ablative, and denote cause.

RULE. — The Ablative is used with or without a preposition to denote cause.

NOTE. — The prepositions **dē** and **ex** with the Ablative and **ob** and **propter** with Accusative are used to express cause.

185. VOCABULARY

causa, ae, f., *cause, reason.*
frāter, tris, m., *brother.*
fuga, ae, f., *flight.*
furor, ōris, m., *fury.*
initium, ī, n., *beginning.*
initium faciō, *begin.*
līberālitās, ātis, f., *liberality, generosity.*
amplus, a, um, *large, spacious.*
reprehendō, ere, ī, hēnsus, *blame.*
apud, prep. w. Acc., *at, near, among, in the presence of.*

186. EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar Dumnorīgem, frātrem Divitiacī, cupiditāte reprehenderat. 2. Dumnorīx māgnā apud suam cīvitātem propter līberālitātem grātiā[1] erat. 3. Equitēs hostium initium fugae faciunt. 4. Multīs dē causīs Caesar pontem in Arare facit et ad hostēs contendit. 5. Intereā in ūnum locum contendērunt et castra mūnīre cōnstituērunt. 6. Cōpiās ad flūmen dūximus et hostēs ab itinere prohibuimus. 7. Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, in fīnēs Helvētiōrum propter cupiditātem agrōrum suās cōpiās trādūcēbant. 8. Castra Rōmānōrum ampla erant, quā dē causā hostēs discēdere cōnstituērunt. 9. Armīs trāditīs in dēditiōnem hostēs Caesar accipit. 10. Prīmā hōrā ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendimus.

II. 1. For many reasons Caesar decided to attack the enemy near the river. 2. The brother of Divitiacus begins (makes a beginning of) a conspiracy. 3. Caesar praised Divitiacus for his generosity, but blamed Dumnorix for his desire of royal-power. 4. They had sent messengers to Caesar concerning surrender, because they feared the name of the Roman people. 5. He will receive them into surrender on account of the influence of Divitiacus. 6. Caesar ordered them to hasten toward the hill, and keep the enemy from the march. 7. Caesar hastened with all his troops towards the Helvetians, who sent ambassadors to him concerning a surrender. 8. The enemy easily defended the town on account of the width of the ditch.

---

[1] Abl. of quality. See **157**.

LESSON XXXI

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION—THE ABLATIVE OF MANNER

187. Adjectives of the Third Declension have in the Nominative singular either one, two, or three terminations.

1. Those of two or three terminations have the same number of syllables in the Nominative and Genitive singular, and are vowel stems.

2. Adjectives of three terminations end in the masculine singular in **-er**, feminine **-is**, neuter **-e**. They have regularly **-ī** in the Ablative singular, **-ium** in the Genitive plural, **-ēs** or **-īs** in the Accusative plural of masculines and feminines, and **-ia** in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative plural of neuters.

188. **Ācer, ācris, ācre,** *keen, sharp, fierce*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.V.	**ācer**	**ācr-is**	**ācr-e**	**ācr-ēs**	**ācr-ēs**	**ācr-ia**
G.	**ācr-is**	**ācr-is**	**ācr-is**	**ācr-ium**	**ācr-ium**	**ācr-ium**
D.	**ācr-ī**	**ācr-ī**	**ācr-ī**	**ācr-ibus**	**ācr-ibus**	**ācr-ibus**
Ac.	**ācr-em**	**ācr-em**	**ācr-e**	**ācr-ēs(īs)**	**ācr-ēs(īs)**	**ācr-ia**
Ab.	**ācr-ī**	**ācr-ī**	**ācr-ī**	**ācr-ibus**	**ācr-ibus**	**ācr-ibus**

189. Adjectives of two terminations have but one form for the masculine and feminine.

Facilis, facile, *easy*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.V.	**facil-is**	**facil-e**	**facil-ēs**	**facil-ia**
G.	**facil-is**	**facil-is**	**facil-ium**	**facil-ium**
D.	**facil-ī**	**facil-ī**	**facil-ibus**	**facil-ibus**
Ac.	**facil-em**	**facil-e**	**facil-ēs(īs)**	**facil-ia**
Ab.	**facil-ī**	**facil-ī**	**facil-ibus**	**facil-ibus**

190. All other adjectives of the Third Declension are consonant stems, and with the exception of comparatives have but one form for the Nominative singular. A few have **-um** in the Genitive plural.

191. **Ferāx,** *fertile*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.V.	**ferāx**	**ferāx**	**ferāc-ēs**	**ferāc-ia**
G.	**ferāc-is**	**ferāc-is**	**ferāc-ium**	**ferāc-ium**
D.	**ferāc-ī**	**ferāc-ī**	**ferāc-ibus**	**ferāc-ibus**
Ac.	**ferāc-em**	**ferāx**	**ferāc-ēs**	**ferāc-ia**
Ab.	**ferāc-ī(e)**	**ferāc-ī(e)**	**ferāc-ibus**	**ferāc-ibus**

Compare the declension of these adjectives with that of nouns of the Third Declension. See **123.**

192. Examine the following: —

1. **Cum clāmōre vēnērunt,** *they came with a shout.*
2. **Māgnā celeritāte contendērunt,** *they hastened with great speed.*
3. **Māgnā cum celeritāte contendērunt,** *they hastened with great speed.*

Observe that in 1 and 3 the Ablative with **cum** and in 2 the Ablative alone expresses the manner of the action.

RULE. — The manner in which an act is performed is expressed by a noun in the Ablative with **cum** when it has no qualifying adjective, by the Ablative with or without **cum** when it has a qualifying adjective.

193. VOCABULARY

audācia, ae, f., *boldness, daring.*
celeritās, ātis, f., *speed, swiftness.*
cūstōs, ōdis, m. and f., *guard.*
subsidium, ī, n., *help, reinforcement.*
brevis, e, *brief, short.*
difficilis, e, *difficult, hard.*
dissimilis, e, *unlike, dissimilar.*
equester, tris, tre, *equestrian.*
equestrēs cōpiae, *cavalry forces.*
fēlīx, fēlīcis, *happy.*
fortis, e, *brave.*
omnis, e, *all, every.*
pedester, tris, tre, *pedestrian.*
pedestrēs cōpiae, *infantry forces.*
similis, e, *like, similar.*

Decline **equester, fortis,** and **fēlīx.**

194. EXERCISES

I. 1. In fīnēs Aeduōrum contendērunt et eōrum agrōs vāstāvērunt. 2. Cum clāmōre per longam et difficilem viam ad fīnēs Allobrogum veniēbant. 3. Per brevem facilemque viam suās cōpiās ad collem altum addūxerat. 4. Pedestrēs cōpiae erant Caesarī subsidiō, equestrēs cōpiae impedīmentō. 5. Sorōrēs similēs erant, frātrēs dissimilēs. 6. Māgnā audāciā in hostēs pedestrēs cōpiās dūxistī. 7. Eā dē causā māgnum numerum obsidum postulāvimus. 8. Cūstōdēs fēlīcēs erant, quod oppidum dēfenderant. 9. Caesar omnēs equitēs audāciā laudāvit, quod hostēs ab itinere prohibēbant. 10. Tribus hōrīs mūrum audāciā mīlitum dēlēverit. 11. Oppidō māgnā celeritāte expūgnātō, cūstōdēs in mūrō Caesar posuit.

II. 1. The boy is not happy, because the master blames him. 2. All the army hastens from the camp towards the mountain. 3. Caesar is a man of great influence among his soldiers. 4. The way through our province was easy, through the mountains difficult. 5. The soldiers were brave, because they were fighting in sight of Caesar. 6. The Helvetians will lead their forces with speed across the Rhine to the fertile fields of the Germans. 7. For many reasons Caesar decided to send aid to the Aedui.

LESSON XXXII

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION AND VERBS IN -iō OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION, PERFECT SYSTEM — WORD LIST — READING LESSON

195. **Audiō, īre, īvī, ītus**

	PERFECT *I heard, have heard,* etc.		PLUPERFECT *I had heard,* etc.	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
1.	**audīv-ī**	**audīv-i-mus**	**audīv-era-m**	**audīv-erā-mus**
2.	**audīv-i-stī**	**audīv-i-stis**	**audīv-erā-s**	**audīv-erā-tis**
3.	**audīv-i-t**	**audīv-ērunt**	**audīv-era-t**	**audīv-era-nt**

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have heard, etc.

	SING.	PLUR.
1.	**audīv-er-ō**	**audīv-eri-mus**
2.	**audīv-eri-s**	**audīv-eri-tis**
3.	**audīv-eri-t**	**audīv-eri-nt**

196. **Capiō, ere, cēpī, captus**

	PERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
	I took, have taken, etc.		*I had taken*, etc.	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
1.	**cēp-ī**	**cēp-i-mus**	**cēp-era-m**	**cēp-erā-mus**
2.	**cēp-i-stī**	**cēp-i-stis**	**cēp-erā-s**	**cēp-erā-tis**
3.	**cēp-i-t**	**cēp-ērunt**	**cēp-era-t**	**cēp-era-nt**

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have taken, etc.

	SING.	PLUR.
1.	**cēp-er-ō**	**cēp-eri-mus**
2.	**cēp-eri-s**	**cēp-eri-tis**
3.	**cēp-eri-t**	**cēp-eri-nt**

Inflect through the Perfect system **faciō, facere, fēcī, factus,** and **mūniō, īre, īvī, ītus.**

197. VOCABULARY

lūx, lūcis, f., *light.*
prīmā lūce, *at daybreak.*
profectiō, ōnis, f., *departure, setting out.*
speculātor, ōris, m., *spy.*
timor, ōris, m., *fear.*
certus, a, um, *fixed, certain.*
āvertō, ere, ī, versus, *turn aside.*
interdiū, adv., *by day.*
noctū, adv., *by night.*
quā dē causā, adv. phr., *for this reason, therefore, why.*
quārē, adv., *wherefore, why.*

198. EXERCISES

I. 1. In fīnēs Aeduōrum Caesar prīmā lūce pervēnit. 2. Speculātōrēs in fīnēs hostium noctū pervēnērunt et agrōs eōrum vāstāvērunt. 3. Quā dē causā profectiōnem ex urbe cum omnibus cōpiīs properāvit? 4. Helvētiī oppida propter timōrem incolārum castellīs mūnīverant. 5. Saepe interdiū, saepe noctū āgmen

per fīnēs Aeduōrum dūximus. 6. Certā dē causā eī[1] timor erat; quārē iter ā flūmine āvertit. 7. Prīmā lūce certō ōrdine ē castrīs exercitum dūxerit et in Helvētiōs impetum fēcerit. 8. Ad portam interdiū pervēnērunt, noctū autem in urbem mīlitēs dūxērunt.

II. 1. He will have turned his march aside from the mountains, because the way is narrow and difficult. 2. The scouts came by night into the towns of the Aedui. 3. The line of march had not yet a fixed order. 4. He will have arrived at daybreak in the towns of the Aedui, who are friends of the Roman people. 5. For a certain reason I have not yet sent the scouts into the camp of the Romans. 6. On account of fear of the enemy he has moved his camp to the river-bank. 7. Why did the scouts come by day into the Roman province?

199. WORD LIST V

*accipiō
**ācer
**ācriter
**āgmen
**agō
amplus
apud
*audācia
**āvertō
brevis
causa
certus
cis
*cōpiae domesticae
Crassus
*culpa
*cūstōs
*dēditiō
dēleō
dēns
*dīcō
**difficilis
**dissimilis
Divitiacus
*domesticus
*equester
*equestrēs cōpiae
*ex itinere
**facile
**facilis
fēlīx
ferāx
flāgitō
fōns
**fortis
**fortiter
frāter
frīgus
*fuga
furor
graviter
īgnis
*incūsō
*initium
*initium faciō
integer
*interdiū
*interscindō
itaque
**iubeō
**iūdex
lapis
*lātitūdō
*līberālitās
Liscus
lūx
*mātūrus
mēnsis
meus
*noctū
*nōndum
*occīdō
*omnis
*ōrdō
*pedester
*pedestrēs cōpiae
*praebeō
*prīmā lūce
*profectiō
*prōmittō
propter
*pūgnō
*quā dē causā
*quārē
*rēmex
*reprehendō
**retineō
*sanguis
*senex
**similis
sōl
soror
*speculātor
*subsidium
*suppetō
*suus
**teneō
*terreō
**timeō
**timor
**vertex
vīs

[1] See 146.

200. READING LESSON

Dumnorīx, frāter Divitiacī, vir māgnā audāciā māgnāque grātiā apud plēbem[1] propter līberālitātem, initium fugae fēcit, Helvētiōsque per fīnēs Sēquanōrum trādūxit. Eum Caesar ad sē[2] vocāvit. Ostendit quae[3] in eō reprehenderet[4] et eī cūstōdēs posuit. Lābiēnum[5] lēgātum cum duābus legiōnibus ad montem mīsit. Prīmā lūce nūntius ad Caesarem vēnit, quī dīxit: "Hostēs montem tenent, vīdī enim arma Gallōrum." Caesar cōpiās in proximum[6] collem dūxit et mīlitēs ā proeliō prohibuit.

LESSON XXXIII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES — ABLATIVE WITH COMPARATIVES

201. As in English, adjectives have three degrees of comparison, — the positive, comparative, and superlative. Those regularly compared drop the stem vowel of the positive, if there is one, and add **-ior, -ius** to form the comparative, and **-issimus, a, um,** to form the superlative; but

1. Adjectives in **-er** form the superlative by adding **-rimus** to the Nominative.

2. Six adjectives in **-lis** (**facilis**, *easy;* **difficilis**, *difficult;* **similis**, *like;* **dissimilis**, *unlike;* **gracilis**, *graceful;* **humilis**, *humble*) form the superlative by adding **-limus** to the stem after its final vowel has been dropped.

---

[1] **plēbem**, Acc. sing. of **plēbs**, *the common people.*

[2] **sē**, *himself.*

[3] **quae**, inter. pron. neut., plur., *what.*

[4] **reprehenderet**, third pers. sing. Imperf. Subj., *he blamed.*

[5] *Labienus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

[6] **proximum**, *the next* or *nearest.*

202.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
dēnsus (dēnso)	**dēnsior**	**dēnsissimus**
fortis (forti-)	**fortior**	**fortissimus**
ācer (ācri)	**ācrior**	**ācerrimus**
similis (simili)	**similior**	**simillimus**

Compare: **altus, brevis, difficilis, līber, potēns, vāstus, laetus, parātus.**

203. Declension of Comparatives.

	Singular		Plural	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.V.	**fortior**	**fortius**	**fortiōr-ēs**	**fortiōr-a**
G.	**fortiōr-is**	**fortiōr-is**	**fortiōr-um**	**fortiōr-um**
D.	**fortiōr-ī**	**fortiōr-ī**	**fortiōr-ibus**	**fortiōr-ibus**
Ac.	**fortiōr-em**	**fortius**	**fortiōr-ēs(īs)**	**fortiōr-a**
Ab.	**fortiōr-e(ī)**	**fortiōr-e(ī)**	**fortiōr-ibus**	**fortiōr-ibus**

All superlatives are declined like **fīdus, a, um.**

204. Examine the following:

1. **Honor hominibus cārior vītā est,** *honor is dearer to men than life.*
2. **Honor hominibus cārior est quam vīta,** *honor is dearer to men than life.*

In 1 **vītā** is in the Ablative case after the comparative **cārior**: in 2 **vīta** is in the Nominative case after **cārior** with **quam,** *than.*

Rule. — The Ablative is used after the comparative when **quam** is omitted; but when it is expressed the same case fol. lows as precedes.

Note. — **Quam** *may* be used with any case preceding; it *need not* be used after the Nominative or Accusative; it *must* be used after the other cases.

205. Examine the following:

1. **Puer erat audācior,** *the boy was rather bold* (or too bold).
2. **Vir fortissimus erat Caesar,** *Caesar was a very brave man.*

RULES. — 1. The comparative is sometimes used to express a rather high or too high a degree of the quality.

2. The superlative is often used to express, not the highest, but a very high degree of the quality.

206. VOCABULARY

honor, ōris, m., *honor.*
mora, ae, f., *delay.*
tempus, oris, n., *time.*
audāx, ācis, *bold.*
cārus, a, um, *dear, precious.*
parātus, a, um, *prepared, ready.*
potēns, entis, *powerful.*
vāstus, a, um, *vast.*
dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead down.*
intrōdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead into, introduce.*
postquam, conj., *after.*
quam, conj., *than.*

207. EXERCISES

I. 1. Lēgātī ex cīvitātibus multīs brevī tempore convēnērunt. 2. Divitiacus Dumnorīge potentior erat. 3. Germānī fīnitimīs fortiōrēs erant. 4. Oppidō expūgnātō, incolae lēgātōs sine morā ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mīsērunt. 5. Puerī sunt miserrimī quod magister semper amīcōs incūsat. 6. Puer audācior est quam senex. 7. Dux erat fēlīcissimus postquam suās cōpiās māgnā celeritate ad flūmen dēdūxit.[1] 8. Parātī erant breviōre tempore convenīre. 9. In Galliam Caesar multōs et[2] fortissimōs mīlitēs intrōdūxit. 10. Puer ācerrimus erat, nōn autem gracillimus.

II. 1. Life is very precious[3] to all men. 2. In a very short time the enemy hastened to the river. 3. The Aedui were more powerful than their neighbors. 4. The march through the territory of the Aedui was very easy. 5. The legions were a great protection to the city. 6. Caesar was in great honor among the Romans. 7. After they had come together[4] into the vast fields they led their forces down to a very wide river. 8. War is dearer to a soldier than peace.

---

[1] Trans. *had led down.*
[2] Omit in translating.
[3] See **205**, 2.
[4] Use the Perf.

LESSON XXXIV

THE VERB **Sum**, PERFECT SYSTEM — **Possum** — THE FIFTH DECLENSION — READING LESSON

208. **Sum, esse, fuī**

PERFECT	PLUPERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
I was, have been, etc.	*I had been*, etc.	*I shall have been*, etc.
	SINGULAR	
1. **fu-ī**	**fu-era-m**	**fu-er-ō**
2. **fu-i-stī**	**fu-erā-s**	**fu-eri-s**
3. **fu-i-t**	**fu-era-t**	**fu-eri-t**
	PLURAL	
1. **fu-i-mus**	**fu-erā-mus**	**fu-eri-mus**
2. **fu-i-stis**	**fu-erā-tis**	**fu-eri-tis**
3. **fu-ērunt**	**fu-era-nt**	**fu-eri-nt**

Observe points of resemblance to verbs of the regular conjugations.

209. **Possum**, *I am able, I can*, is compounded of **pot-** (**potis** or **pote**) and **sum**.

Possum, posse, potuī

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
I am able, etc.	*I was able*, etc.	*I shall be able*, etc.
	SINGULAR	
1. **pos-sum**	**pot-eram**	**pot-erō**
2. **pot-es**	**pot-erās**	**pot-eris**
3. **pot-est**	**pot-erat**	**pot-erit**
	PLURAL	
1. **pos-sumus**	**pot-erāmus**	**pot-erimus**
2. **pot-estis**	**pot-erātis**	**pot-eritis**
3. **pos-sunt**	**pot-erant**	**pot-erunt**

PERFECT	PLUPERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
I have been able, etc.	*I had been able*, etc.	*I shall have been able*, etc.
	SINGULAR	
1. **pot-uī**	**pot-ueram**	**pot-uerō**
2. **pot-uistī**	**pot-uerās**	**pot-ueris**
3. **pot-uit**	**pot-uerat**	**pot-uerit**
	PLURAL	
1. **pot-uimus**	**pot-uerāmus**	**pot-uerimus**
2. **pot-uistis**	**pot-uerātis**	**pot-ueritis**
3. **pot-uērunt**	**pot-uerant**	**pot-uerint**

210. The Perfect **potuī** is used for **pot-fuī**. Compare this paradigm with that of **sum**. Note the change of **t** to **s** before **s**, and the dropping of **f** after **t**.

211. The use of the Infinitive with verbs denoting to be able, dare, undertake, hesitate, and the like, which imply a second act of the same subject is called the Complementary Infinitive. Some examples of this usage have already been given. It is exactly in accord with the English usage.

212. The Fifth Declension. — The stem ends in **ē**.

	Diēs, diēī, m., *day*		**Rēs, reī**, f., *thing*		TABLE OF TERMINATIONS	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.V.	**diēs**	**diēs**	**rēs**	**rēs**	**ēs**	**ēs**
G.	**diēī**	**diērum**	**reī**	**rērum**	**ēī**	**ērum**
D.	**diēī**	**diēbus**	**reī**	**rēbus**	**ēī**	**ēbus**
Ac.	**diem**	**diēs**	**rem**	**rēs**	**em**	**ēs**
Ab.	**diē**	**diēbus**	**rē**	**rēbus**	**ē**	**ēbus**

213. **Diēs** and **rēs** are the only nouns of the Fifth Declension that are declined throughout. The others are declined in the singular, and a few are found also in the Nominative and Accusative plural.

Observe that **ē** is long in the Genitive and Dative singular of **diēs**, and short in **rēs**. The **ē** of the stem is shortened in the Genitive and Dative singular when it is preceded by a consonant.

214. Gender.— Nouns of the Fifth Declension are feminine with the exception of **diēs**, which is always masculine in the plural, and generally in the singular, except where it refers to some specified time.

215. VOCABULARY

aciēs, ēī, f., *line of battle.*
Bibracte, is, n., *Bibracte.*
bīduum, ī, n., *space of two days.*
equus, ī, m., *horse.*
manus, ūs, f., *hand, band.*
rēs, reī, f., *thing, fact, affair.*
scūtum, ī, n., *shield.*
cōnfertus, a, um, *closely crowded.*
cōnfertissimō āgmine, *in close array.*
triplex, icis, *triple.*
compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus, *fill completely.*
ēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *send out, let loose.*
īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus, *draw up.*
nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus, *announce, proclaim.*
obtineō, ēre, uī, tentus, *obtain, hold.*

SCUTUM

216. EXERCISES

I. 1. Bibracte erat oppidum māgnum Aeduōrum. 2. Caesar iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit quod cōpiam frūmentī obtinēre nōn potest. 3. Equitēs Gallōrum eam rem hostibus eō diē nūntiāvērunt. 4. Itaque Helvētiī dīxērunt: "Rōmānī bellicōsī sunt, eōs ab itinere prohibēre nōn possumus." 5. Caesar in colle triplicem aciem quattuor legiōnum īnstrūxit. 6. In[1] summō colle duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā cōnscrīpserat, dispōnere potuit. 7. Helvētiī cōnfertissimā aciē prīmam nostram aciem oppūgnāvērunt. 8. Caesar lēgātōs ex cōnspectū omnium equōs abdūcere iussit. 9. Scūta Gallīs māgnō impedīmentō ad pūgnam fuērunt. 10. Multī ācriter sine scūtīs pūgnāre poterant. 11. Itaque scūta ē manū ēmīsērunt et sine eīs pūgnāvērunt. 12. Multōs diēs in castrīs hostium fuerint speculātōrēs.

II. 1. Caesar on that day drew up a triple line of battle, and sent one legion as[2] a guard to the baggage. 2. Scouts will an-

[1] *On the top of the hill.*

[2] Double Dative; see **129.**

nounce this fact to Caesar at daybreak. 3. The Gauls with a closely crowded line of battle hastened toward our camp. 4. We are able to remain a space of two days in the city. 5. Caesar could station two legions as a guard to the camp. 6. They can make a march of two days toward the enemy who are storming the town. 7. The horses of the Gauls were large and beautiful. 8. Will you not announce this fact to the soldiers who are letting loose the horses in the camp? 9. They cannot fight without shields.

217. READING LESSON

Caesar, quod exercituī cōpia frūmentī nōn erat, iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit et Bibracte,[1] ad oppidum māgnum Aeduōrum, contendit. Eā rē hostibus per equitēs nūntiātā,[2] Helvētiī quoque iter suum āvertere cōnstituunt. Caesar in mediō colle[3] triplicem aciem quattuor legiōnum īnstrūxit; duās enim, quās in Galliā proximē[4] cōnscrīpserat, praesidiō impedīmentīs disposuerat. Gallī fortiter ācriterque pūgnāvērunt, Rōmānī autem māgnā virtūte audāciāque contendērunt et multōs hostium[5] interfēcērunt.

LESSON XXXV

THE FIRST CONJUGATION, PASSIVE VOICE — THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS

218. The passive voice in the Latin corresponds in general to the passive in English.

219. The principal parts of a verb in the passive voice are the first person singular of the Pres. Ind., the Pres. Inf., and the first person singular of the Perf. Ind.: **vocor, vocārī, vocātus sum.**

---

[1] **ad** is omitted after verbs of motion with names of towns; *hastens to Bibracte.* [2] Abl. Abs. [3] *on the middle of the hill.* [4] *last, most recently.* [5] *many of the enemy.*

220.

		PRESENT *I am called*, etc.	IMPERFECT *I was called*, etc.	FUTURE *I shall be called*, etc.	TERMINATIONS OF THE PASSIVE
SING.	1.	voc-o-r	vocā-ba-r	vocā-bo-r	-r
	2.	vocā-ris(re)	vocā-bā-ris(re)	vocā-be-ris(re)	-ris, -re
	3.	vocā-tur	vocā-bā-tur	vocā-bi-tur	-tur
PLUR.	1.	vocā-mur	vocā-bā-mur	vocā-bi-mur	-mur
	2.	vocā-minī	vocā-bā-minī	vocā-bi-minī	-minī
	3.	voca-ntur	vocā-ba-ntur	vocā-bu-ntur	-ntur

		PERFECT *I have been called*, etc.	PLUPERFECT *I had been called*, etc.	FUTURE PERFECT *I shall have been called*, etc.
SING.	1.	vocā-t-us sum	vocā-t-us eram	vocā-t-us erō
	2.	vocā-t-us es	vocā-t-us erās	vocā-t-us eris
	3.	vocā-t-us est	vocā-t-us erat	vocā-t-us erit
PLUR.	1.	vocā-t-ī sumus	vocā-t-ī erāmus	vocā-t-ī erimus
	2.	vocā-t-ī estis	vocā-t-ī erātis	vocā-t-ī eritis
	3.	vocā-t-ī sunt	vocā-t-ī erant	vocā-t-ī erunt

221. Observe that the tense signs in the Present, Imperfect, and Future are the same as in the active voice, and that the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect are formed by combining the Perfect passive participle with the Present, Imperfect, and Future of **sum**.

222. In the preceding paradigm the participle has, for convenience, been given in the masculine only; but it is declined like **fīdus**, and must agree with the subject in gender, number, and case.

223. Notice the change of the tense sign **bi** in the Future to **b** in the first person singular, **be** in the second person singular, and **bu** in the third person plural.

Inflect **armō** and **exspectō** in the passive voice.

224. Examine the following: —

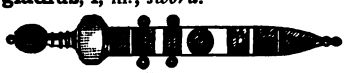
1. **Tēlīs agricolās armant**, *they arm the farmers with weapons.*
2. **Pīlō mīles pūgnāverat**, *the soldier had fought with a javelin.*

Tēlīs and **pīlō** are in the Ablative case, and denote the means or instrument of an action.

RULE. — The means or instrument of an action is expressed by the Ablative case without a preposition.

225. VOCABULARY

frūgēs, um, f. pl., *produce, fruits* (of field).
gladius, ī, m., *sword.*



GLADIUS

nēmō, —, Dat., **nēminī**, m., *no one.*
trīduum, ī, n., *space of three days.*
vāllum, ī, n., *rampart, wall.*
appellō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call, name.*
fleō, ēre, flēvī, flētus, *weep, cry.*
iuvō, āre, iūvī, iūtus, *assist.*
pōscō, ere, popōscī, —, *demand.*
restituō, ere, ī, ūtus, *restore.*
supersum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be over, survive.*

226. EXERCISES

I. 1. In eō locō imperātōrī mora trīduī erat quod mīlitēs gladiīs scūtīsque armābantur. 2. Ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum est.[1] 3. Lēgātī flēbant et pācem ab Caesare petēbant. 4. Nauta pīlīs scūtōque nōn armātur. 5. Suō adventū Caesar obsidēs armaque popōscit. 6. Impedīmenta mīlitum iūmentīs carrīsque portāta sunt. 7. Reliquīs omnibus in dēditiōnem acceptīs, Caesar Helvētiōs oppida vīcōsque restituere iussit. 8. Mīlitēs quī superfuērunt tēlīs ācriter pūgnāvērunt et proeliō factō māgnīs itineribus quārtō diē in fīnēs amīcōrum pervēnērunt. 9. Nēmō eō diē frūmentō iūtus est. 10. Pūgnātum erit ab hōrā tertiā ad vesperum.

II. 1. The girl was weeping on account of the death of her brother. 2. No one could assist the Helvetians with grain. 3. The fruits of the field were being laid waste. 4. Caesar will demand many hostages. 4. Our soldiers were armed with swords and shields, and fought bravely for many hours. 5. The fields of the Aedui had been laid waste. 6. From this battle not many survived, because of the bravery of our soldiers. 7. The bridge will have been seized within two hours. 8. The baggage will be carried into the camp by beasts of burden.

---

[1] *they fought*, lit. it was fought.

227. READING LESSON

Ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum est; nēmō autem āversum[1] hostem vidēre potuit. In eō proeliō Orgetorīgis fīliam et ūnum[2] ē fīliīs nostrī mīlitēs cēpērunt, et multōs interfēcērunt. Hominum[3] mīlia CXXX quī superfuērunt māgnīs itineribus in fīnēs Lingonum[4] contendērunt ibique quārtō diē pervēnērunt. Lingonēs autem eōs nōn iuvāre frūmentō, propter nūntiōs quōs Caesar mīserat, potuērunt. Helvētiī, omnium rērum inopiā adductī, lēgātōs ad eum dē dēditiōne mīsērunt. Armīs obsidibusque trāditīs, Caesar eōs in dēditiōnem accēpit et oppida vīcōsque quōs[5] dēlēverant eōs restituere iussit.

LESSON XXXVI

PREPOSITIONS — THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT

228. Prepositions in Latin are properly used with but two cases, the Accusative and the Ablative.

Some govern the Accusative only, some the Ablative only, and some the Accusative or Ablative with a difference of meaning.

229. Examine the following: —

1. **Ab urbe properāvit,** *he hastened* from *the city.*
2. **Ex urbe properāvit,** *he hastened* out of *the city.*
3. **In urbem vēnit,** *he came* into *the city.*
4. **In urbe manēbat,** *he remained* in *the city.*
5. **Sub pontem vēnit,** *he came under the bridge.*
6. **Sub ponte manēbat,** *he remained under the bridge.*

---

[1] *the back of an enemy,* lit. an enemy turned away. [2] *one of his sons.* [3] *one hundred and thirty thousand men.* [4] *the Lingones.* [5] *which:* **quōs** agrees with **vīcōs,** its nearest antecedent, but belongs in thought to **oppida** also.

RULES. — 1. **Ab** is used where motion away from a place is indicated.

2. **Ex** is used where motion out of a place is indicated.

3. **In** and **sub** govern the Accusative with verbs of motion, the Ablative with verbs of rest.

NOTE. — You have already learned many of the prepositions, together with the cases governed by them. Note those given above as governing either the Accusative or Ablative. Recall those governing the Ablative only, and add to them **prō**, *for, before, in behalf of*, and **cōram**, *in the presence of;* you will then have learned the most important ones governing the Ablative. All others given in this book govern the Accusative.

230. Examine the following: —

Mīlitēs ā Caesare convocātī sunt, *the soldiers were called together by Caesar.*

Observe the use of **ā** with **Caesare** to express the agent of the action.

RULE. — The voluntary agent of an action is expressed by **ā** or **ab** with the Ablative case.

Notice the one point of difference between this usage and the Ablative of means or instrument. See **224**.

231. VOCABULARY

campus, ī, m., *field, plain.*
capra, ae, f., *goat.*
lupus, ī, m., *wolf.*
pābulum, ī, n., *fodder, forage.*
rūpēs, is, f., *rock, cliff.*
dulcis, e, *sweet, pleasant.*
herbidus, a, um, *grassy.*
nūdus, a, um, *naked, bare.*
sterilis, e, *sterile, barren.*
tūtus, a, um, *safe.*
dēscendō, ere, ī, scēnsus, *descend.*
inquit, *he says,* 3d pers. sing. of defective verb.
relinquō, ere, līquī, lictus, *leave.*
respondeō, ēre, spondī, spōnsus, *reply, answer.*
cūr, adv., *why.*
hūc, adv., *hither, to this place.*

232. EXERCISES

I. 1. Capra in campum herbidum vēnit. 2. Lupus capram in altā rūpe vīdit. 3. "Cūr nōn," inquit[1] lupus, "relinquis illa[2]

[1] Placed regularly in the midst of a direct quotation. [2] *those.*

sterilia loca et hūc in amplōs pulchrōsque campōs dēscendis?" 4. "Nōn relinquam hunc locum tūtum," respondit capra, "neque in herbidōs campōs dēscendam." 5. Rūpēs, in quā capra erat, appellāta est ā lūpō locus nūdus et sterilis. 6. Castra relīquērunt quod montēs ab hostibus tenēbantur. 7. Sub rūpe in campō herbidō erat dulce pābulum. 8. Num capram reprehendimus quod ab rūpe nōn dēscendit? 9. Rūpēs tūta ā caprā laudāta est. 10. Pābulum in amplō herbidōque campō ā lupō dulce appellātum est.

II. 1. Goats often leave the naked and barren cliffs and descend into the grassy plains. 2. "There is good forage," says the wolf, "in the broad fields." 3. Why were the soldiers praised by their commander? 4. We saw two goats on a high and barren rock. 5. I will descend into the grassy plain because there is sweet forage there. 6. On the third day the grain will be brought from the fields into the cities. 7. We have come hither to the camp because the towns have been attacked by the enemy. 8. The town which was assaulted by the soldiers was called Bibracte. 9. The soldiers will be called together from the towns into the camp by their commander.

233. READING LESSON: *Capra et Lupus*

Lupus capram in altā rūpe stantem[1] cōnspicātus,[2] "Cūr nōn," inquit, "relinquis nūda illa et sterilia loca et hūc dēscendis in herbidōs campōs, quī tibi[3] laetum[4] pābulum offerunt[5]?" Cuī[6] respondit capra: "Mihi[7] nōn est in animō dulcia tūtīs praepōnere.[8]"

---

[1] **stantem**, *standing*, Pres. part. of **stō**, *stand*, agreeing with **capram**.
[2] **cōnspicātus**, Perf. part. of **cōnspicor**, *having seen*.
[3] **tibi**, *to you*.
[4] **laetum**, *pleasant*.
[5] *offer*.
[6] **cuī**, *to whom*. Translate *to him*.
[7] **mihi**, *to me*.
[8] **praepōnere**, *to prefer*.

LESSON XXXVII

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

234. Some adjectives are irregularly compared. The following is a list of the most important: —

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, *good*	**melior**, *better*	**optimus**,[1] *best*
māgnus, *large, great*	**māior**,[2] *larger, greater*	**māximus**, *largest, greatest*
malus, *bad*	**pēior**, *worse*	**pessimus**,[3] *worst*
multus, *much*	**plūs**, *more*	**plūrimus**, *most*
parvus, *small*	**minor**, *smaller, less*	**minimus**, *smallest, least*

235.[4] Some comparatives and superlatives are formed from prepositions or adverbs and have no real positive.

cis, citrā, prep., *on this side*	**citerior**, *hither*	**citimus**, *hithermost*
in, intrā, prep., *within*	**interior**, *inner*	**intimus**, *inmost*
prae, prō, prep., *before*	**prior**, *former*	**prīmus**, *first*
prope, adv., *near*	**propior**, *nearer*	**proximus**, *nearest, next*
ultrā, adv., *beyond*	**ulterior**, *farther*	**ultimus**, *farthest*

236.[4] The positive forms of the following seldom occur.

(**exterus**)	**exterior**, *outer*	**extrēmus**, *outmost*
(**inferus**)	**inferior**, *lower*	**infimus**, *lowest*
(**posterus**)	**posterior**, *latter*	**postrēmus**, *last*
(**superus**)	**superior**, *higher*	**suprēmus** or **summus**, *highest*

237. Examine the following: —

Interior Gallia, *the interior of Gaul.* **Summus mōns**, *the top of the mountain.*

---

[1] Associate with this *optimist.*

[2] **māiōrēs** = *ancestors.*

[3] Associate with this *pessimist.*

[4] The teacher should use his judgment as to how many of these should be required.

RULE. — Adjectives of order and succession, including superlatives and some comparatives, denote *what part* of an object is meant.

238. From **senex**, *old man*, and **iuvenis**, *young man*, come the comparatives **senior**, *elder*, and **iūnior**, *younger*.

239. VOCABULARY

calamitās, ātis, f., *calamity, disaster*.
equitātus, ūs, m., *cavalry*.
fābula, ae, f., *story, fable*.
imperium, ī, n., *command, order, government*.
senātus, ūs, m., *senate*.
barbarus, a, um, *barbarous*.
ferus, a, um, *wild*.
īrācundus, a, um, *irritable, passionate*.
āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *send away, lose*.
sustineō, ēre, uī, tentus, *sustain, endure*.
diū, adv., *long, for a long time*.
diūtius, adv., *longer*.

240. EXERCISES

I. 1. Fābula dē caprā et lupō optima pulcherrimaque[1] est. 2. In silvīs Germānōrum erant multa et fera animālia. 3. Calamitāte māximā acceptā, omnem equitātum et omnēs cōpiās pedestrēs in castra redūxit.[2] 4. "Imperia Caesaris," inquit, "diūtius sustinēre nōn possumus." 5. Dux Germānōrum est homō barbarus īrācundusque cūius imperia diū sustinēmus. 6. Omnem senātum omnemque equitātum āmīsērunt. 7. Imperia ducis mīlitibus ā lēgātīs nūntiāta sunt. 8. Summus collis ā cōpiīs pedestribus occupātus est. 9. In citeriōrem Galliam māximā cum celeritāte contendit. 10. Soror meliōre animō est quam frāter. 11. In proximō colle ācriter pūgnātum est. 12. Iūnior est puer amīcō suō, senior sorōre.

II. 1. The best men were violently accused by their irritable and barbarous leaders. 2. Our ancestors were of greater courage than authority.[3] 3. The chiefs of Gaul feared the Germans, with whom they had contended in very many battles. 4. The Gauls had lost all their senate and all their cavalry. 5. We cannot

[1] See **205**, 2. [2] Infer meaning. [3] See **157**.

longer endure the orders of that barbarous and passionate man. 6. You have received a very great disaster on the middle of the hill, and lost all your cavalry. 7. The top of the mountain was being seized by the forces of the enemy. 8. "The story of the goat and the wolf," says he, "is very beautiful." 9. "The forces of Caesar are in farther Gaul," says he, "and will hasten into winter quarters." 10. Our ancestors were very brave and good men.

241. READING LESSON

Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō, lēgātī Galliae, prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem convēnērunt. Auxilium ab eō petiērunt[1] quod Germānōs timēbant. Prō hīs[2] Divitiacus locūtus est:[3] "Multī Germānī in Galliā sunt, quibuscum[4] saepe contendimus. Māximam calamitātem accēpimus. Omnem senātum omnemque equitātum āmīsimus. Ariovistus eōrum rēx est, homō barbarus et īrācundus. Ēius imperia diūtius sustinēre nōn possumus. Ad tē[5] vēnimus auxilium rogātum.[6]

LESSON XXXVIII

THE SECOND CONJUGATION, PASSIVE VOICE — WORD LIST

242. Princ. Parts, **moneor, monērī, monitus sum**

		PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
		I am advised, etc.	*I was advised*, etc.	*I shall be advised*, etc.
SING.	1.	mone-o-r	monē-ba-r	monē-bo-r
	2.	monē-ris(re)	monē-bā-ris(re)	monē-be-ris(re)
	3.	monē-tur	monē-bā-tur	monē-bi-tur
PLUR.	1.	monē-mur	monē-bā-mur	monē-bi-mur
	2.	monē-minī	monē-bā-minī	monē-bi-minī
	3.	mone-ntur	monē-ba-ntur	monē-bu-ntur

[1] *sought.* [2] **hīs**, *these;* Abl. pl. of **hīc**, *this one.* [3] *spoke.* [4] *with whom;* **cum** is often attached to pronouns. [5] *you.* [6] **rogātum**, *to ask;* the supine (a form to be explained later) of the verb **rogō**. It expresses purpose.

		PERFECT	PLUPERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
		I was or *have been advised*, etc.	*I had been advised*, etc.	*I shall have been advised*, etc.
SING.	1.	**moni-t-us sum**	**moni-t-us eram**	**moni-t-us erō**
	2.	**moni-t-us es**	**moni-t-us erās**	**moni-t-us eris**
	3.	**moni-t-us est**	**moni-t-us erat**	**moni-t-us erit**
PLUR.	1.	**moni-t-ī sumus**	**moni-t-ī erāmus**	**moni-t-ī erimus**
	2.	**moni-t-ī estis**	**moni-t-ī erātis**	**moni-t-ī eritis**
	3.	**moni-t-ī sunt**	**moni-t-ī erant**	**moni-t-ī erunt**

243. VOCABULARY

concordia, ae, f., *concord, harmony.*
discidium, ī, n., *quarrel, dispute.*
fera, ae, f., *wild beast.*
flētus, ūs, m., *weeping.*
incursiō, ōnis, f., *attack, incursion.*
prātum, ī, n., *meadow.*
puella, ae, f., *girl.*
singulī, ae, a, *one by one.*
adsum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be near, assist* (with Dat.).
doceō, ēre, uī, tus, *teach.*
laniō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tear in pieces, mangle.*
nārrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *narrate, tell.*
petō, ere, īvī, ītus, *seek, beg, attack* (Fourth Conj. in Perf. system).

244. EXERCISES

I. 1. Trēs bovēs in ūnō prātō erant. 2. Concordia apud eōs māxima erat. 3. Quā dē causā ab omnī ferārum incursiōne tūtī erant. 4. Propter autem discidium singulī ā ferīs laniātī sunt. 5. Omnēs quī aderant māgnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petēbant. 6. Dumnorīx ā Caesare monitus est, coniūrātiōnem autem contrā populum Rōmānum faciēbat. 7. Ā magistrō fābula pulcherrima nārrābitur. 8. Concordia dulcis est, discidium autem apud amīcōs nōn est bonum. 9. Puerī ā magistrīs docentur. 10. Multa oppida hostium ā Caesare dēlēbuntur.

II. 1. The farmer was driving his oxen to the river. 2. One had been torn in pieces by the wild beasts. 3. A beautiful fable about three oxen was told that day by the master. 4. The soldiers had not been warned about the danger in the woods. 5. The girl was praised, but her brother says: "The girls are always praised,

the boys never (are)." 6. The enemy had been frightened by the name of the Roman people. 7. Many towns had been destroyed by Caesar. 8. You were hindered by the weeping of your friends.

245. WORD LIST VI

*aciēs	*cōnfertus	**frūgēs	mora	*rēs
**adsum	*cūr	gladius	nārrō	*respondeō
**āmittō	**dēdūcō	gracilis	*nēmō	*restituō
*appellō	*dēscendō	herbidus	nūdus	rūpēs
*audāx	*discidium	honor	*nūntiō	scūtum
barbarus	**diū	*hūc	*obtineō	*senātus
Bibracte	**diūtius	humilis	*pābulum	*singulī
**bīduum	doceō	*imperium	*petō	sterilis
bōs	dulcis	*incursiō	*pōscō	*stō
calamitās	**ēmittō	inquit	**possum	**supersum
campus	**equitātus	īnstruō	**postquam	*sustineō
capra	**equus	**intrōdūcō	**potēns	tempus
*cārus	fābula	*īrācundus	*praepōnō	**trīduum
*celeritās	**fera	iuvō	prātum	**triplex
*cēlō	**ferus	laniō	*puella	tūtus
*compleō	**fleō	lupus	**quam	*vāllum
*concordia	**flētus	*manus	*relinquō	*vāstus

246. READING LESSON: *Trēs Bovēs*

In eōdem[1] prātō erant bovēs trēs quī in māximā concordiā pāscēbantur,[2] et sīc[3] ab omnī ferārum incursiōne tūtī erant. Sed discidiō inter illōs ortō,[4] singulī ā ferīs petītī et laniātī sunt.

Fābula docet quantum bonī sit[5] in concordiā.

---

[1] *the same.* [2] *used to feed:* the form will be explained later. [3] *thus.* [4] *having risen among them.* [5] *how much good there is.*

LESSON XXXIX

PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES — REVIEW OF COMPARISON

247. **Ūllus**, *any* **Uter**, *which (of two)*

	Ūllus, *any* SINGULAR			Uter, *which (of two)* SINGULAR		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	**ūllus**	**ūlla**	**ūllum**	**uter**	**utra**	**utrum**
G.	**ūllīus**	**ūllīus**	**ūllīus**	**utrīus**	**utrīus**	**utrīus**
D.	**ūllī**	**ūllī**	**ūllī**	**utrī**	**utrī**	**utrī**
Ac.	**ūllum**	**ūllam**	**ūllum**	**utrum**	**utram**	**utrum**
Ab.	**ūllō**	**ūllā**	**ūllō**	**utrō**	**utrā**	**utrō**

248. In the plural these adjectives are declined like **fīdus** and **pulcher**, respectively. Observe that the Genitive singular of all genders ends in **-īus**, that the Dative singular ends in **-ī**, and that in all other points these adjectives correspond to other **o-** and **a-**stems. Note the exception in quantity in **-īus**. Review the comparison of adjectives, Lessons XXXIII and XXXVII. Learn the following list of adjectives declined as above: —

alius, a, ud, *another*	**tōtus, a, um,** *whole*	**alter, era, erum,** *the other*
nūllus, a, um, *no, no one*	**ūllus, a, um,** *any*	**neuter, tra, trum,** *neither*
sōlus, a, um, *alone, only*	**ūnus, a, um,** *one*	**uter, tra, trum,** *which (of two)*

Observe the peculiar form of the neuter in **alius**.

249. VOCABULARY

Ariovistus, ī, m., *Ariovistus.*
adrogantia, ae, f., *insolence.*
commeātus, ūs, m., *supplies, provisions.*
conloquium, ī, n., *conference, dialogue.*
cōnsanguineus, ī, m., *relative, kinsman.*
fortūna, ae, f., *fortune.*
negōtium, ī, n., *business, trouble.*
nihil, n., indec., *nothing.*
salūs, ūtis, f., *safety.*
spēs, speī, f., *hope.*
spīritus, ūs, m., *pride, spirit.*
alius . . . alius, *one . . . another.*
alter . . . alter, *the one . . . the other.*
trīstis, e, *sad.*
omnīnō, adv., *at all, all together.*
cōnsuēscō, ere, suēvī, suētus, *be accustomed.*

250. Notice the difference between **alius . . . alius** and **alter . . . alter.**

251. Examine the following: —

Alius aliam in partem properāvit, *one hastened in one direction, another in another.*

RULE. — **Alius** and **alter** repeated in another case express briefly a double statement.

252. EXERCISES

I. 1. Aliī bellum ācriter gessērunt, aliī salūtem fugā petiērunt. 2. Alterī gladium dedit, alterī scūtum. 3. Neutrīus fortūna erat bona. 4. Sēquanī sōlī nihil respondērunt, sed trīstēs in conloquiō manēbant. 5. Fortūna Sēquanōrum erat gravior quam reliquōrum.[1] 6. Spīritus Ariovistī erat māgnus, adrogantia autem māior. 7. Germānī suās cōpiās trāns Rhēnum dūcere cōnsuēscunt, et in Galliam venīre. 8. Aliās in partēs Galliae venīre cōnstituō, aliās autem in partēs venīre nōn possum. 9. Alius aliud[2] respondit. 10. Māgnō commeātū māgnōque negōtiō mīlitēs ūnum in locum dūxit.

II. 1. The soldier was not at all brave, but fled into the woods. 2. One[3] hastened to the hill, another ran down to the sea. 3. The one was accustomed to lead his army without provisions, the other carried supplies on carts with great trouble. 4. They had chosen for a conference, a place on the hill. 5. The man's arrogance was very great, for he had been called a friend of the Roman people. 6. The pride of the one was great, of the other greater. 7. The kinsmen of Orgetorix were accustomed to fight bravely. 8. They will place all hope of safety in flight. 9. They gave hostages to no one.

---

[1] *than* (that) *of the rest*, pred. Gen. with **erat** understood.

[2] See **251.**

[3] See **alius** in the Vocabulary and **250.**

253. READING LESSON

Sēquanī in conloquiō nihil respondērunt, sed trīstēs manēbant. Divitiacus autem prō iīs respondit: "Fortūna Sēquanōrum est gravior reliquōrum, quod Ariovistus in eōrum fīnēs suās cōpiās intrōdūxit et omnia eōrum oppida occupāvit. Quā dē causā ēius adrogantia spīritusque māgnus[1] erat." Multīs dē causīs Caesar lēgātōs ad eum dē conloquiō mittere cōnstituit, quibus lēgātīs Ariovistus respondit: "Ad Caesarem nōn veniam, nam[2] neque sine māgnō exercitū in eās partēs Galliae, quās Caesar occupāvit, venīre audeō,[3] neque exercitum sine māgnō commeātū et negōtiō in ūnum locum contrahere[4] possum.

LESSON XL

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

254. Formation of Adverbs. — Examine the following: —

	ADJECTIVE	ADVERB
1.	**cārus** (**cāro-**), *dear*	**cārē**, *dearly*
	pulcher (**pulchro-**), *beautiful*	**pulchrē**, *beautifully*

Observe that adverbs are formed from adjectives of the first and second declension by changing **-o** of the stem to **-ē**.

2.	**ācer** (**ācri-**), *sharp*	**ācriter**, *sharply*
	lēnis (**lēni-**), *smooth*	**lēniter**, *smoothly*
	prūdēns (**prūdent-**), *prudent*	**prūdenter**, *prudently*

Observe that adverbs are formed from adjectives of the third declension by adding **-ter** to the stem. Stems in **-nt** drop **-t** before **-ter**.

3.	**multus**, *much*	**multum**, *much*
	subitus, *sudden*	**subitō**, *suddenly*
	facilis, *easy*	**facile**, *easily*

[1] **māgnus erat** is used in agreement with **spīritus** and connected in thought with **adrogantia** also. [2] *for.* [3] *I dare.* [4] *bring together.*

Sometimes the neuter Accusative singular is used as an adverb: **multum, facile**; sometimes the neuter Ablative singular: **subitō**.

255. The comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter comparative of the adjective. The superlative is formed by changing the final **-o** of the stem of the adjective in the superlative to **-ō**.

256. Learn the following: —

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
ācriter	**ācrius**	**ācerrimē**
cārē	**cārius**	**cārissimē**
facile	**facilius**	**facillimē**
prūdenter	**prūdentius**	**prūdentissimē**
pulchrē	**pulchrius**	**pulcherrimē**

257. If the adjective is compared irregularly, the same irregularities will occur in the comparison of the adverb.

258. Learn the following, and review the comparison of adjectives, Lesson XXXVII.

bene, *well*	**melius**, *better*	**optimē**, *best*
male, *ill*	**pēius**, *worse*	**pessimē**, *worst*
——	**magis**, *more*	**māximē**, *most, especially*
multum, *much*	**plūs**, *more*	**plūrimum**, *most*
parum, *not enough*	**minus**, *less*	**minimē**, *least*

Note resemblances to the adjectives compared in **234**.

259. VOCABULARY

haedus, ī, m., *kid.*
mandātum, ī, n., *command, instructions.*
respōnsum, ī, n., *reply, response.*
tēctum, ī, n., *roof.*
vectīgal, ālis, n., *tax, revenue.*
dēterior, ius, adj. in comp., *worse, of less value.*
timidus, a, um, *timid.*
maledīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus, *revile, rail at* (with Dat.).
reddō, ere, didī, ditus, *render, return, give back.*
iterum, adv., *again, a second time.*

260. EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar Ariovistō vectīgālia dēteriōra fēcit. 2. Haedus, quī in tēctō domūs erat, lupō māximē maledīxit. 3. Locus et tempus hominēs timidōs audācēs reddit.[1] 4. Eīs respōnsīs audītīs iterum oppida hostium audācius oppūgnāvērunt. 5. Ariovistus obsidēs, quōs ab Aeduīs habuit, nōn reddidit. 6. Equīs ēmissīs ācerrimē cum hostibus equitēs contendēbant. 7. Germānī multō ācrius quam fīnitimī cum hostibus contendunt quod eīs vīrēs corporis māiōrēs sunt. 8. Oppidum facillimē dēlētum est quod incolae nōn fortiter dēfendērunt.

II. 1. He will very easily make the revenues of Ariovistus of less value. 2. When these commands had again been given (Abl. Abs.), he suddenly fled with the greatest swiftness to the river. 3. To praise is better[2] than to revile. 4. He acts more prudently than his friend, because he fears no one. 5. Kids are very timid, but time and place very often render them bold. 6. The supplies from home were not large, therefore they demanded ripe grain. 7. On account of the cold they came together and hastened into winter quarters beyond the river. 8. We arrived easily on that day in the territory of the Germans.

261. READING LESSON[3]: *Haedus et Lupus*

Haedus stāns[4] in tēctō domūs, lupō praetereuntī[5] maledīxit. Cuī[6] lupus, "Nōn tū," inquit, "sed tēctum mihi[7] maledīcit."

Saepe locus et tempus hominēs timidōs audācēs reddit.

---

[1] The singular is used because the two subjects are so closely associated in thought as to form one idea.

[2] Use neut. sing. comp. of **bonus**.

[3] From this time on, in both reading lessons and exercises, occasional words not found in the special vocabularies will be used. These should be sought in the general vocabularies at the end of the book.

[4] Pres. part. of **stō**, *standing*.

[5] From **praetereō**, *pass by*, Dat. sing. of Pres. Part., agreeing with **lupō**.

[6] *To him*, lit. to whom.

[7] **mihi**, Dat. sing. of pers. pron., *to me*. Translate by *me* simply.

LESSON XLI

THE THIRD CONJUGATION, PASSIVE VOICE — SIMPLE FORMS OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE

262. **Regor,** *I am ruled*

Princ. Parts, **regor, regī, rēctus sum**

		PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
		I am ruled, etc.	*I was ruled*, etc.	*I shall be ruled*, etc.
SING.	1.	**rego-r**	**regē-ba-r**	**rega-r**
	2.	**rege-ris (re)**	**regē-bā-ris (re)**	**regē-ris (re)**
	3.	**regi-tur**	**regē-bā-tur**	**regē-tur**
PLUR.	1.	**regi-mur**	**regē-bā-mur**	**regē-mur**
	2.	**regi-minī**	**regē-bā-minī**	**regē-minī**
	3.	**regu-ntur**	**regē-ba-ntur**	**rege-ntur**

		PERFECT	PLUPERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
		I was or *have been ruled*, etc.	*I had been ruled*, etc.	*I shall have been ruled*, etc.
SING.	1.	**rēc-t-us sum**	**rēc-t-us eram**	**rēc-t-us erō**
	2.	**rēc-t-us es**	**rēc-t-us erās**	**rēc-t-us eris**
	3.	**rēc-t-us est**	**rēc-t-us erat**	**rēc-t-us erit**
PLUR.	1.	**rēc-t-ī sumus**	**rēc-t-ī erāmus**	**rēc-t-ī erimus**
	2.	**rēc-t-ī estis**	**rēc-t-ī erātis**	**rēc-t-ī eritis**
	3.	**rēc-t-ī sunt**	**rēc-t-ī erant**	**rēc-t-ī erunt**

For changes in the stem vowel, see **128**. Notice the formation of the Present Infinitive passive in this conjugation.

263. Examine the following: —

1. **Mīlitēs pūgnant fortiter,** *the soldiers fight bravely.*
2. **Dicit mīlitēs pūgnāre fortiter,** *he says that the soldiers fight bravely.*
3. **Dux castra movet,** *the leader moves the camp.*
4. **Videt ducem castra movēre,** *he sees that the leader is moving the camp.*
5. **Vīdit ducem castra movēre,** *he saw that the leader was moving the camp.*

RULE. — Statements after verbs and other expressions of saying, thinking, perceiving and the like are expressed by the Infinitive with a subject in the Accusative.

Observe in 5 the change in tense in the English translation of **movēre** after a verb of past time in the Latin.

NOTE. — The subject of the indirect discourse will be more fully discussed later.

264. VOCABULARY

gallīna, ae, f., *hen.*
mulier, eris, f., *woman.*
socius, ī, m., *comrade, ally.*
necesse, indecl. adj., *necessary.*
necesse est, *it is necessary* (often used with an Infinitive as subj.).
coepī,[1] **isse,** def. verb, *begin.*
lacessō,[2] **ere, īvī, ītus,** *provoke, annoy.*
reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus, *find, discover.*
superō, āre, āvī, ātus, *conquer, surpass.*

265. EXERCISES

I. 1. Necesse est inimīcōs superāre. 2. Dīcunt necesse esse inimīcōs superāre. 3. Caesar suō adventū vectīgālia Germānōrum dēteriōra fēcerat. 4. Mulier gallīnam habuit. 5. Dīxit mulierem gallīnam habēre. 6. Nihil in eīs nūdīs et sterilibus locīs repertum est. 7. Vīdit ēius sociōs venīre. 8. Dīcit Caesarem māximam iniūriam Ariovistō facere. 9. Hominēs barbarī et īrācundī fīnitimōs iniūriā[3] continuō lacessīvērunt. 10. Socii Aeduōrum ā Germānīs saepe lacessēbantur. 11. Ad vāllum cum plūrimīs mīlitibus mittētur, quod homō fortis et bellicōsus est. 12. Coepit sociōs iniūriā lacessere. 13. Dīxit Ariovistum apud Germānōs regere. 14. Pōns ab hostibus interscinditur.

II. 1. He was (being) sent to Caesar with these commands. 2. It is necessary to send hostages to Caesar. 3. Ariovistus replies that the Romans are his enemies. 4. Do you not see that

[1] The forms built on the Perfect stem correspond in time to those built on the Present stem in other verbs.

[2] Of the Third Conj. Note forms like verbs of the Fourth Conj.

[3] *with injustice, unjustly.*

Caesar is doing a great injury to Ariovistus? 5. War will be waged by these states because hostages have not been given by their enemies. 6. The allies of the Roman people were provoked by the injustice of Ariovistus. 7. He says that the Aedui are beginning to assault the towns of the enemy on the march. 8. Nothing will be found in these barren places. 9. The Aedui will be annoyed by war because they will not give hostages. 10. He said that Caesar was doing a great injury.

266. READING LESSON

Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs,[1] iterum ad Ariovistum lēgātōs cum iīs mandātīs mīsit. "Necesse est tibi[2] obsidēs quos ab Aeduīs habēs reddere, neque Aeduōs neque eōrum sociōs iniūriā[3] lacessere." Ad haec[4] Ariovistus respondit Aeduōs, bellō superātōs, sibi[5] stīpendiāriōs[6] esse. Caesarem māgnam iniūriam facere, quī adventū suō vectīgālia sibi dēteriōra faceret.[7] Sē obsidēs Aeduīs redditūrum[8] nōn esse, sed cum Germānīs parātum esse bellum fortiter gerere.

LESSON XLII

REVIEW OF CARDINALS AND ORDINALS — ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

267. Make a careful review of Lessons XXIII and XXVI. Examine the following: —

1. **Puer multō māior est quam soror,** *the boy is much larger than his sister* (larger by much).
2. **Mare multīs pedibus altius est quam flūmen,** *the sea is many feet deeper than the river* (deeper by many feet).

---

[1] Abl. Abs., *When this answer was brought back.* [2] *for you.* [3] See **265**, n. 3. [4] *these things.* [5] *to him.* [6] *tributary*, adj. agreeing with **Aeduōs**. [7] Impf. Subj. of **faciō**. Translate, *was making.* [8] Fut. Inf. in indirect discourse with subject Acc. **sē** . . ., *that he would not return.*

Multō and **multīs pedibus** are each in the Ablative, and express the degree of difference between two persons or things.

RULE. — The Ablative is used without a preposition to express the degree of difference between two persons or things.

268. VOCABULARY

contentiō, ōnis, f., *contention, quarrel, exertion.*
ūva, ae, f., *grape, bunch of grapes.*
vītis, is, f., *vine.*
vulpēs, is, f., *fox.*
acerbus, a, um, *bitter, sour.*
inānis, e, *empty.*
attingō, ere, tigī, tāctus, *touch upon, reach.*
dēfatīgō, āre, āvī, ātus, *weary, exhaust.*
subsiliō, īre, uī, —, *leap up.*
ante, adv., *before.*
forte, adv., *by chance.*
nunc, adv., *now.*
tandem, adv., *at length, at last.*

269. EXERCISES

I. 1. Vulpēs quondam ūvam in vīte vīdit. 2. Ad eam subsiluit omnium vīrium contentiōne. 3. Vulpēs autem ūvam attingere nōn potuit. 4. Tandem inānī labōre dēfatīgāta discessit. 5. "Acerbae," inquit, "sunt ūvae nec bonō sunt vulpī."[1] 6. Eās autem ūvās in viā repperī, itaque acerbae nōn sunt. 7. Vir multō senior quam mulier est. 8. Tribus diēbus ante in castra vēnit. 9. Itaque, commeātibus comparātīs, māgnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit. 10. Eō tempore lēgātī ab Aeduīs ad Caesarem veniēbant. 11. Postquam iter trīduī fēcit, ea res eī nūntiāta est.

II. 1. There was a large bunch of grapes on the vine. 2. The fox could not reach the grapes, for the vine was too high. 3. He leaped up with the exertion of all his strength, but at last went away without them. 4. "The grapes are sour," says the fox. 5. The town had been seized by Ariovistus five days before. 6. The enemy will have been overcome by Caesar within three hours. 7. The mountains were much higher than the hills. 8. The house is many feet higher than the wall.

[1] *are not good for a fox.* See **129**.

270. READING LESSON: *Acerbae Ūvae*

Vulpēs ūvam in vīte cōnspicāta[1] ad illam[2] subsiluit omnium vīrium contentiōne, sī[3] eam forte attingere posset. Tandem dēfatīgāta inānī labōre discēdēns dīxit: "At[4] nunc etiam acerbae sunt, nec[5] eās in viā repertās tollerem."[5]

Haec fābula docet multōs ea contemnere[6] quae sē adsequī posse dēspērent.[7]

LESSON XLIII

PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

271. Pronouns are divided into the following classes: personal, reflexive, possessive, demonstrative, intensive, relative, interrogative, and indefinite.

Personal pronouns correspond to the English personals, and are declined as follows: —

272.

	FIRST PERSON		SECOND PERSON	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.	**ego**	**nōs**	**tū**	**vōs**
G.	**meī**	**nostrum, nostrī**	**tuī**	**vestrum, vestrī**
D.	**mihi**	**nōbīs**	**tibi**	**vōbīs**
Ac.	**mē**	**nōs**	**tē**	**vōs**
Ab.	**mē**	**nōbīs**	**tē**	**vōbīs**

273. The personal pronoun of the third person is lacking. Its place is supplied by the demonstratives, more usually by **is**.

274. The Reflexive.

SINGULAR AND PLURAL

G. **suī**, *of himself, herself, itself, themselves.*
D. **sibi**, *to* or *for himself, herself, itself, themselves.*
Ac. **sē, sēsē**, *himself, herself, itself, themselves.*
Ab. **sē, sēsē**, *from, by, with himself, herself, itself, themselves.*

---

[1] *having seen.* [2] *it.* [3] **sī . . . posset**, *to see if it could.* [4] *but.* [5] *and I would not pick up.* [6] *that many despise,* ind. disc. [7] *which they despair of being able to obtain.*

275. Observe carefully the following points in the use of these pronouns.

1. The Nominative of the personals is not expressed except for emphasis: **ego sum miser, tū es laetus,** *I am wretched, but you are happy.*

2. The personals of the first and second persons are often used in a reflexive sense: **ego mē culpō,** *I blame myself;* **tū tē laudās,** *you praise yourself.*

3. When reference is made in the oblique cases to the subject of a sentence, the reflexive **suī,** etc., is used for the third person: **mīles sē occīdit,** *the soldier killed himself;* **mīles eum occīdit,** *the soldier killed him.*

4. When the preposition **cum** is used with the personal and reflexive pronouns, it is always an enclitic. With the relative or interrogative it may or may not be an enclitic: **mēcum,** *with me;* **sēcum,** *with him* (himself); **quibuscum** or **cum quibus,** *with whom.*

276. VOCABULARY

facultās, ātis, f., *opportunity, supply.*
Harūdēs, um, m. pl., *the Harudes.*
ūsus, ūs, m., *use, need, experience.*
Vesontiō, ōnis, m., *Vesontio.*
imperō, āre, āvī, ātus, *order, command.*
praesum, esse, fuī, *be over, be in command of* (with Dat.).
prōcēdō, ere, cessī, cessus, *proceed, advance.*
redimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus, *purchase.*
trānsportō, āre, āvī, ātus, *bring over, transport.*
vincō, ere, vīcī, victus, *conquer.*
celeriter, adv., *quickly.*
nūper, adv., *recently.*

277. SPECIAL EXERCISES ON THE PRONOUNS

I. 1. Ego sum nauta, tū es agricola. 2. Tēcum miser erō nunquam. 3. Vir sē laudat, ego autem eum nōn laudō. 4. Nōs omnēs in silvā erāmus. 5. Vestrī amīcī vōs nōn reprehendunt. 6. Mihi gladium dedit. 7. Tibi erat amīcus fīdus.

II. 1. The soldier was with you. 2. The girl will never praise him. 3. The man has always defended himself. 4. You will always have faithful friends. 5. You will be unhappy, your daughter happy. 6. You will give us many weapons.

278. EXERCISES

I. 1. Aeduī ad Caesarem celeriter vēnērunt quod Harūdēs eōrum fīnēs vāstābant. 2. Pācem Ariovistī redimere nōn potestis quod homō barbarus et īrācundus est. 3. Dīxit centum pāgōs Germānōrum ad rīpās Rhēnī esse. 4. Postquam viam trīduī prōcessit, id Caesarī nūntiātum est. 5. Omnium eārum rērum māgna facultās Vesontiōne[1] erat. 6. Hae rēs ūsuī ad bellum erant. 7. Hūc Caesar māgnīs itineribus contendit, occupātōque oppidō, ibi praesidium dispōnit. 8. Celeriter omnibus hostibus victīs, in hīberna exercitum redūxit.

II. 1. Two brothers were in command of[2] a hundred districts of the Germans. 2. Caesar and Ariovistus also were hastening by forced marches towards Vesontio, which is the largest town of the Sequani. 3. The Germans had recently brought over a large number of their forces into the territory of the Aedui. 4. Ariovistus had proceeded a march[3] of three days from his own[4] territory. 5. Therefore Caesar decided to hasten to the town. 6. In this town were many things which were of use for war. 7. A great supply of all these things was in Vesontio. 8. We can purchase all these things, and transport them on carts to the camp.

279. READING LESSON

Aeduī ad Caesarem veniēbant quod Harūdēs eōrum fīnēs vāstābant. Lēgātī dīxērunt: "Obsidibus datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere nōn possumus." Trēverī[5] quoque veniēbant, quod Germānōrum centum pāgī ad rīpās Rhēnī erant, quibus duo frātrēs praeerant. Eā dē causā Caesar contendere ad Ariovistum māgnīs itineribus cōnstituit. Ariovistus autem Vesontiōnem, quod[6] est māximum oppidum Sēquanōrum, occupāre mātūrābat. Itaque Caesar iter āvertit ad id oppidum; nam Vesontiōne[1] omnium rērum, quae ūsuī ad bellum erant, māgna facultās erat. Caesar id oppidum occupāvit et ibi praesidium disposuit.

---

[1] **Vesontiōne**, *in Vesontio*. [2] See vocabulary. [3] Acc. of extent of space. [4] *his own*, **suus**. [5] The Treveri, a tribe of Gaul. [6] **quod**, relative pronoun in the neuter to agree with the predicate noun **oppidum**.

LESSON XLIV

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION, PASSIVE VOICE — WORD LIST

280. Princ. Parts, **audior, audīrī, auditus sum**

		PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
		I am heard, etc.	*I was heard*, etc.	*I shall be heard*, etc.
SING.	1.	**audi-o-r**	**audiē-ba-r**	**audia-r**
	2.	**audī-ris (re)**	**audiē-bā-ris (re)**	**audiē-ris (re)**
	3.	**audī-tur**	**audiē-bā-tur**	**audiē-tur**
PLUR.	1.	**audī-mur**	**audiē-bā-mur**	**audiē-mur**
	2.	**audī-minī**	**audiē-bā-minī**	**audiē-minī**
	3.	**audi-u-ntur**	**audiē-ba-ntur**	**audie-ntur**

		PERFECT	PLUPERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
		I was or *have been heard*, etc.	*I had been heard*, etc.	*I shall have been heard*, etc.
SING.	1.	**audī-t-us sum**	**audī-t-us eram**	**audī-t-us erō**
	2.	**audī-t-us es**	**audī-t-us erās**	**audī-t-us eris**
	3.	**audī-t-us est**	**audī-t-us erat**	**audī-t-us erit**
PLUR.	1.	**audī-t-ī sumus**	**audī-t-ī erāmus**	**audī-t-ī erimus**
	2.	**audī-t-ī estis**	**audī-t-ī erātis**	**audī-t-ī eritis**
	3.	**audī-t-ī sunt**	**audī-t-ī erant**	**audī-t-ī erunt**

Review the passive voice of the three preceding conjugations.

281. VOCABULARY

aurum, ī, n., *gold.*
māgnitūdō, inis, f., *size.*
massa, ae, f., *mass.*
mercātor, ōris, m., *merchant.*
ōvum, ī, n., *egg.*
percontātiō, ōnis, f., *questioning.*
vōx, vōcis, f., *voice, word.*
aureus, a, um, *golden.*
ingēns, entis, *large, huge, vast.*
inhiō, āre, āvī, ātus, *gape for, desire.*
pariō, ere, peperī, partus, *bear, bring forth;* **ōvum parere**, *lay an egg.*
perdō, ere, didī, ditus, *lose, destroy.*
intus, adv., *within.*
nisi, conj., *unless, if not, except.*

282. EXERCISES

I. 1. Dīcit gallīnam cottīdiē ōvum aureum parere. 2. Gallīna intus massam aurī nōn cēlat. 3. Vōcēs Germānōrum, quī dīcunt hostēs[1] māgnā virtūte nōn esse, audītae sunt. 4. Ex percontātiōne nostrōrum timor subitō omnem exercitum occupāvit. 5. Hīs rēbus audītīs castra ā mīlitibus celeriter mūniēbantur. 6. Nihil in eā gallīnā reperiētur nisi quod in aliīs reperitur. 7. Pīlīs scūtīsque āmissīs, spēs omnis salūtis perdita est. 8. Vōcēs mercātōrum in castrīs Caesaris nōn saepe audientur. 9. Impediēris ab itinere quod nōn multī mīlitēs tibi[2] sunt.

II. 1. The woman said that her hen was concealing within a large mass of gold. 2. The woman's hen laid daily a golden egg. 3. Nothing was found in the hen except what is found in other hens. 4. Goats will often be torn in pieces by wolves. 5. Men are often torn in pieces by wild beasts. 6. The voices of the enemy were heard before the rampart. 7. The redoubts will be fortified within ten days. 8. The standards of the Roman people will be carried a very great distance.

283. READING LESSON: *Ōvum Aureum*

Mulier quaedam[3] habēbat gallīnam, quae eī cottīdiē ōvum pariēbat aureum. Hinc[4] suspicārī[5] coepit illam[6] aurī massam intus cēlāre, et gallīnam occīdit, sed nihil in eā repperit, nisi quod in aliīs gallīnīs reperīrī solet.[7] Itaque dum māiōribus dīvitiīs[8] inhiābat, etiam minōrēs perdidit.

---

[1] Subj. Acc. in ind. disc. See **263**. [2] Dat. of the Possessor. See **146**. [3] **quaedam**, *a certain*. [4] **Hinc**, *hence*. [5] **suspicārī**, *to suspect*. [6] **illam**, *her*, demonstrative pronoun, subj. Acc. of **cēlāre**. Render, *that she . . .* [7] **solet**, *is accustomed*. [8] *wealth*, Dat. with **inhiābat**.

284. WORD LIST VII

*acerbus	*dēterior	**maledīcō	parum	tandem
adrogantia	ego	*mandātum	percontātiō	*tēctum
**alius	*facultās	massa	**perdō	*timidus
**alter	**forte	mercātor	*praesum	tōtus
Ariovistus	**fortūna	mulier	*prōcēdō	*trānsportō
*attingō	gallīna	*multum	prūdenter	trīstis
**aureus	haedus	*necesse	**reddō	*tū
**aurum	Harūdēs	*negōtium	*redimō	**ūllus
*bene	*imperō	**neuter	**reperiō	*ūnus
*cārē	inānis	nihil	*respōnsum	*ūsus
*celeriter	ingēns	*nisi	socius	**uter
coepī	inhiō	**nūllus	sōlus	ūva
commeātus	*intus	**nunc	spēs	*vectīgal
*conloquium	*iterum	**nūper	spīritus	Vesontiō
**cōnsanguineus	lacessō	*omnīnō	*subsiliō	*vincō
*cōnsuēscō	*māgnitūdō	ōvum	*suī	vītis
*contentiō	**male	**pariō	*superō	vulpēs
dēfatīgō				*vōx

LESSON XLV

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS—THE DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

285. The demonstratives are **hīc**, *this;* **is**, *this* or *that;* **ille**, *that;* **iste**, *that;* **īdem**, *the same;* and **ipse**, *self*, which is intensive. **Is** has already been declined (see **136**); **īdem** is the demonstrative **is** with the emphatic suffix **-dem**. Its first part only is inflected. **Ipse** alone has a Vocative.

286.

		Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
SING.	N.	**hīc**	**haec**	**hōc**	**ille**	**illa**	**illud**
	G.	**hūius**	**hūius**	**hūius**	**illīus**	**illīus**	**illīus**
	D.	**huīc**	**huīc**	**huīc**	**illī**	**illī**	**illī**
	Ac.	**hunc**	**hanc**	**hōc**	**illum**	**illam**	**illud**
	Ab.	**hōc**	**hāc**	**hōc**	**illō**	**illā**	**illō**

		Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
PLUR.	N.	hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
	G.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
	D.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs
	Ac.	hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
	Ab.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs

		Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
SING.	N.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
	G.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus
	D.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
	Ac.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
	V.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
	Ab.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō
PLUR.	N.	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
	G.	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
	D.	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
	Ac.	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
	V.	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
	Ab.	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

SING.	N.	īdem	eadem	idem
	G.	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem
	D.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
	Ac.	eundem	eandem	idem
	V.	——	——	——
	Ab.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem
PLUR.	N.	īdem (eīdem)	eaedem	eadem
	G.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
	D.	iīsdem, eīsdem	iīsdem, eīsdem	iīsdem, eīsdem
	Ac.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
	V.	——	——	——
	Ab.	iīsdem, eīsdem	iīsdem, eīsdem	iīsdem, eīsdem

287. **Iste** is declined like **ipse**, except that it lacks the Vocative. Note the resemblance in the Genitive and Dative singular to the pronominal adjectives, **ūnus**, etc. See **247**.

Observe the change of **m** to **n** before **d** in forms of **īdem**.

288. **Hīc** is used of that which is near the speaker; the demonstrative of the first person.

Iste is used of that near the person spoken to; the demonstrative of the second person.

Ille is used of that remote from the speaker; the demonstrative of the third person. It often means that well-known or famous person or thing.

Hīc often means the latter (nearer the speaker); **ille**, the former (more remote from the speaker).

The demonstratives have both an adjective and a substantive use. **Ipse** is used with the personals, alone, or with a noun.

289. Examine the following: —

1. **Locus castrīs idōneus erat,** *the place was suitable for a camp.*
2. **Puer frātrī similis erat,** *the boy was like his brother.*
3. **Nihil Caesarī difficile erat,** *nothing was difficult for Caesar.*

RULE. — The Dative is used with adjectives denoting resemblance, fitness, nearness, and the like, with their opposites.

NOTE. — Adjectives of fitness may take an Accusative with **ad.**

290. VOCABULARY

alacritās, ātis, f., *alacrity.*
exercitātiō, ōnis, f., *exercise, practice.*
mēns, mentis, f., *mind.*
modus, ī, m., *manner, way.*
falsus, a, um, *false, groundless.*
idōneus, a, um, *suitable, fit.*
incrēdibilis, e, *incredible, remarkable.*
mīrus, a, um, *wonderful, strange.*
cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus, *learn, know thoroughly.*
convertō, ere, ī, versus, *turn, change.*
perturbō, āre, āvī, ātus, *disturb greatly, confuse.*
praedicō, āre, āvī, ātus, *proclaim, announce.*
vehementer, adv., *violently.*

291. EXERCISES

I. 1. Dēlēgit locum vāllō idōneum et ibi castra mūnīvit. 2. Exercitus eandem alacritātem et exercitātiōnem in armīs, quās dux,

praebuit. 3. Quod hīs idōneum est nōn est idōneum illīs. 4. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, in locum castrīs idōneum omnēs cōpiās dūxit. 5. Hunc hominem, meō amīcō inimīcum, laudāre nōn possum. 6. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā, subitō summa cupiditās bellī mentēs omnium hōrum occupāvit. 7. Proximī sunt Germānīs, quī incolae eōrum locōrum sunt. 8. Celeritāte incrēdibilī iter conversum est, postquam haec mandāta ducis audīta sunt. 9. Vōcibus illōrum mentēs omnium vehementer perturbātae sunt. 10. Timor equitātūs falsus erat, quod omnia Caesarī facilia erant.

II. 1. All these things will be a care to those men. 2. It is not difficult for[1] a friend to praise a friend. 3. They announced that these Germans were of great size of body. 4. They will disturb in a wonderful manner the minds of all these. 5. They proclaim that this place is not suitable for a ditch. 6. I say that that fear is groundless. 7. The fear of those men is groundless, for Caesar is present. 8. He saw the same men that the Germans conquered. 9. The man himself sought a place suitable for a house. 10. He praises the latter, but blames the former.

292. Reading Lesson

Intereā ex percontātiōne nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum et mercātōrum, quī ingentī māgnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incrēdibilī virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant, timor subitō omnem exercitum occupāvit, et omnium mentēs perturbātae sunt. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, Caesar longā ōrātiōne centuriōnēs omnium ōrdinum vehementer incūsāvit. Dīxit eōrum timōrem falsum esse, omnia enim sibi futūra esse[2] cūrae. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā mentēs omnium mīrum in modum[3] conversae sunt summaque alacritās et cupiditās bellī innāta est.[4]

---

[1] **nōn est difficile amīcum laudāre**, etc.
[2] *would be.*
[3] *in a wonderful manner.*
[4] *sprang up*, lit. was born.

LESSON XLVI

THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN IŌ, PASSIVE VOICE — DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVES

293. Princ. Parts, **capior, capī, captus sum**

		PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
		I am taken, etc.	*I was taken*, etc.	*I shall be taken*, etc.
SING.	1.	**capi-o-r**	**capiē-ba-r**	**capia-r**
	2.	**cape-ris (re)**	**capiē-bā-ris (re)**	**capiē-ris (re)**
	3.	**capi-tur**	**capiē-bā-tur**	**capiē-tur**
PLUR.	1.	**capi-mur**	**capiē-bā-mur**	**capiē-mur**
	2.	**capi-minī**	**capiē-bā-minī**	**capiē-minī**
	3.	**capi-u-ntur**	**capiē-ba-ntur**	**capie-ntur**

		PERFECT	PLUPERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
		I was or *have been taken*, etc.	*I had been taken*, etc.	*I shall have been taken*, etc.
SING.	1.	**cap-t-us sum**	**cap-t-us eram**	**cap-t-us erō**
	2.	**cap-t-us es**	**cap-t-us erās**	**cap-t-us eris**
	3.	**cap-t-us est**	**cap-t-us erat**	**cap-t-us erit**
PLUR.	1.	**cap-t-ī sumus**	**cap-t-ī erāmus**	**cap-t-ī erimus**
	2.	**cap-t-ī estis**	**cap-t-ī erātis**	**cap-t-ī eritis**
	3.	**cap-t-ī sunt**	**cap-t-ī erant**	**cap-t-ī erunt**

1. For resemblance to verbs of the Fourth Conjugation, see **280**. Inflect, as above, **interficior**.

294. Examine the following: —

1. **Orgetorix Helvētiis persuāsit**, *Orgetorix persuaded the Helvetians.*
2. **Caesar hostibus parcit**, *Caesar spares the enemy.*

Observe the meaning of these verbs, and notice that they are used with the Dative.

RULE. — Some verbs, intransitive in Latin, though apparently transitive, are followed by a Dative of the indirect object. Such are verbs denoting to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare.

295. VOCABULARY

beneficium, ī, n., *kindness, favor.*
leō, ōnis, m., *lion.*
malum, ī, n., *evil, misfortune.*
plānitiēs, ēī, f., *plain.*
rēte, is, n., *net.*
circumveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, *surround.*
ignōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtus, *pardon.*
incidō, ere, ī, cāsus, *happen, fall upon.*
lūdificō, āre, āvī, ātus, *deride, mock.*
parcō, ere, peperci or **parsī, parcitus** or **parsus**, *spare.*
persuādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsus, *persuade.*
studeō, ēre, uī, —, *pay attention to, desire.*
tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus, *lift up, remove, break off.*
īnsolenter, adv., *insolently, unusually.*

RETIA

296. EXERCISES

I. 1. Leō rētibus captus est. 2. Cognitō Caesaris adventū, Ariovistus ad eum lēgātōs mīsit. 3. Id sine ūllō perīculō facere potuit. 4. Vulpēs leōnem vīdit et eum lūdificāvit. 5. Diēs conloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quīntus. 6. Māgnum malum in leōnem inciderat. 7. Intereā saepe lēgātī inter eōs mittēbantur. 8. Caesar ad plānitiem māgnam castra posuit. 9. Caesar dīcit certā dē causā sē hostibus parcere. 10. Conloquium eō diē sublātum est propter timōrem hostium. 11. Hostēs equitātuī māximē student, itaque fīnitimōs facile prohibent. 12. Oppidum prīmā lūce circumveniētur.

II. 1. It[1] is a great kindness to pardon your enemies. 2. A fox saw a lion caught with nets. 3. I shall not always spare you.

[1] *To pardon . . . is*, etc.

4. "You do not mock me," said the lion, "but the misfortune which has happened to me." 5. The soldier spoke insolently, but he was in a safe place. 6. Suddenly, with incredible speed, they hastened toward the large plain. 7. It is better to break off a conference than to fight. 8. He persuaded the Helvetians, and made a march through their territory. 9. He had been called a friend and king by the senate. 10. The army will be led into the camp.

297. READING LESSON: *Vulpēs et Leō*

Vulpēs vīdet leōnem rētibus captum, et, stāns[1] prope, lūdificāvit eum īnsolenter. Leō autem, "Nōn tū," inquit, "mē lūdificās, sed malum[2] quod in mē incidit."

LESSON XLVII

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS — PARTITIVE GENITIVE — INDIRECT DISCOURSE (*Continued*)

298. The possessive pronouns are strictly adjectives formed from the personal and reflexive stems. They are declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions. They are: —

meus, a, um, *mine*	**tuus, a, um,** *your, yours*
suus, a, um, *his, her, its, their*	**noster, tra, trum,** *our, ours*
vester, tra, trum, *your, yours*	

1. The Vocative of **meus** in the masculine singular is usually **mī**.

2. The gender, number, and case of these pronouns are determined by the thing possessed.

299. Examine the following: —

1. **Ūna pars montis,** *one part of the mountain.*
2. **Alter mīlitum,** *one of the* (two) *soldiers.*

[1] *standing.* [2] Subject of **lūdificat** understood.

3. **Tantum spatī**, *so much* (of) *space*.
4. **Satis pābulī**, *enough* (of) *fodder*.

Observe in the above that **pars, alter, tantum, satis** denote a part taken from the whole expressed by **montis, mīlitum, spatī, pābulī**. Observe the kind of words used to express the part.

RULE. — Words denoting a part are used with a Genitive of the whole to which the part belongs.

1. Partitive words are nouns, pronouns, and adjectives and adverbs used substantively.

300. Examine the following: —

1. **Ūnus ex mīlitibus**, *one of the soldiers*.
2. **Quīdam dē nostrīs**, *certain of our men*.
3. **Prīmus omnium**, *the first of all*.

Observe the use of **ex** and **dē** with **ūnus** and **quīdam**, and of the Genitive with **prīmus**.

RULE. — Cardinal numerals and **quīdam** generally take the Ablative with **ex** or **dē** to express the whole of which a part is taken; the ordinals generally take the Partitive Genitive.

301. There are in each voice three tenses of the Infinitive, the Present, the Perfect, and the Future.

302. **Active**

PRESENT	PERFECT	FUTURE
1. **vocā-re**, *to call*	**vocāv-isse**, *to have called*	**vocā-tūr-us esse**, *to be about to call*
2. **monē-re**	**monu-isse**	**moni-tūr-us esse**
3. **rege-re**	**rēx-isse**	**rēc-tūr-us esse**
3. **cape-re**	**cēp-isse**	**cap-tūr-us esse**
4. **audī-re**	**audīv-isse**	**audī-tūr-us esse**
es-se	**fu-isse**	**fu-tūr-us esse**

303. **Passive**

	PRESENT	PERFECT	FUTURE
1.	**vocā-rī,** *to be called*	**vocā-t-us**[1] **esse,** *to have been called*	**vocā-t-um īrī,**[2] *to be about to be called*
2.	**monē-rī**	**moni-t-us esse**	**moni-t-um īrī**
3.	**reg-ī**	**rēc-t-us esse**	**rēc-t-um īrī**
3.	**cap-ī**	**cap-t-us esse**	**cap-t-um īrī**
4.	**audī-rī**	**audī-t-us esse**	**audī-t-um īrī**

304. Examine the following: —

1. **Dīcit tē venīre,** *he says that you are coming.*
2. **Dīxit tē venīre,** *he said that you were coming.*
3. **Dīcit tē vēnisse,** *he says that you came* (have come).
4. **Dīxit tē vēnisse,** *he said that you came* (had come).
5. **Dīcit tē ventūrum esse,** *he says that you will come.*
6. **Dīxit tē ventūrum esse,** *he said that you would come.*

Observe that **venīre** denotes time present with reference to the verb on which it depends, **vēnisse** time past, and **ventūrum esse** time future in the same way.

RULE. — The Infinitive expresses time relative to that of the verb upon which it depends.

305. **VOCABULARY**

columba, ae, f., *dove.*
formīca, ae, f., *ant.*
intervāllum, ī, n., *interval.*
mūnus, eris, n., *present.*
necessitūdō, inis, f., *alliance, friendship.*
prīncipātus, ūs, m., *chief place, leadership.*
tumulus, ī, m., *mound.*
aequus, a, um, *equal.*
iūstus, a, um, *just.*
accēdō, ere, cessī, cessus, *draw near, approach.*
commemorō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call to mind, relate.*
doleō, ēre, uī, itūrus, *suffer, grieve.*
mordeō, ēre, momordī, morsus, *bite, eat, sting.*
vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus, *carry, bear;* in the passive, *ride* (be carried).

[1] Inflected to agree with the subject.

[2] Little used.

306. EXERCISES

I. 1. Formīca quondam ad flūmen dēscendit. 2. Columba eam in flūmine vīdit et perturbāta est. 3. Legiōnem Caesar, quam equīs vēxerat, aequō spatiō ab eō tumulō cōnstituit. 4. Ubi Ariovistus vēnit, Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque beneficia in eum commemorāvit. 5. Dīxērunt amplissima mūnera ā senātū missa esse. 6. Caesar dīcit omnī tempore Aeduōs prīncipātum tōtīus Galliae tenuisse. 7. Dīxit iūstās causās necessitūdinis sibi cum Aeduīs esse. 8. Explōrātōrēs nūntiāvērunt hostēs ad oppidum accessisse. 9. Puer morsus est, quārē māxime doluit.

II. 1. The Aedui had always held the leadership of all Gaul. 2. Caesar said that the Aedui had always held the leadership of all Gaul. 3. The ant had bitten the dove. 4. He said that the ant had bitten the dove. 5. The enemy are drawing near the camp. 6. The scout announces that the enemy are drawing near the camp. 7. The tenth legion was riding on horses. 8. The soldiers said that the tenth legion was riding on horses.

307. READING LESSON

Cognitō Caesaris adventū, Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit, quī dīcunt Ariovistum sine ūllō perīculō ad conloquium venīre posse. Caesar diem conloquiō ex eō diē quīntum dīxit.[1] Intereā saepe inter eōs lēgātī mittēbantur. Ariovistus ad conloquium sēsē nōn ventūrum esse nisi cum equitātū dīxit. Itaque Caesar decimam legiōnem, cuī[2] māximē cōnfīdēbat, equīs vehī iussit. Ubi ad conloquium vēnērunt, Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit. Ariovistus rēx appellātus est ā senātū, amplissima mūnera ad eum missa erant; quod Caesar paucīs incidisse[3] dīxit. Tandem postulāvit eadem quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat.

---

[1] *appointed.*

[2] *in which he had the greatest confidence.*

[3] *had happened to few.*

LESSON XLVIII

COMPOUNDS OF **Sum** — DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

308. **Sum** is compounded without any change with the prepositions **ab, ad, dē, in, inter, ob, prae, prō (prōd), sub,** and **super**. In the compound **prōsum,** *I help*, the original **d** of **prōd** is retained before **e**.

309. **Prōsum,** *I help*

Princ. Parts, **prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
PRESENT	1. **prō-sum,** *I help*	1. **prō-sumus,** *we help*
	2. **prōd-es,** *you help*	2. **prōd-estis,** *you help*
	3. **prōd-est,** *he helps*	3. **prō-sunt,** *they help*
IMPERFECT	**prōd-eram,** etc., *I helped,* etc.	
FUTURE	**prōd-erō,** etc., *I shall help,* etc.	
PERFECT	**prō-fuī,** etc., *I helped* or *have helped,* etc.	
PLUPERFECT	**prō-fueram,** etc., *I had helped,* etc.	
FUTURE PERFECT	**prō-fuerō,** etc., *I shall have helped,* etc.	

310. Examine the following: —

1. **Lābiēnus eī oppidō praefuit,** *Labienus was in command of that town.*
2. **Caesar Aeduīs saepe adfuerat,** *Caesar had often assisted the Aedui.*
3. **Amīcus amīcō nōn deerit,** *a friend will not fail his friend.*
4. **Caesar omnibus eōrum cōnsiliīs obstitit,** *Caesar opposed all their plans.*

Observe that the verbs in the above are compounded with **prae, ad, dē,** and **ob,** and that they are used with the Dative.

RULE. — Most verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub,** and **super,** and some with **circum,** are used with the Dative case.

311. VOCABULARY

aqua, ae, f., *water.*
auceps, ipis, m., *bird-catcher.*
harundō, inis, f., *reed, arrow.*
punctus, ūs, m., *prick, sting.*
virgula, ae, f., *twig.*
abiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, *cast aside.*
ascendō, ere, ī, scēnsus, *climb.*
conligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, *gather together.*
corripiō, ere, uī, reptus, *seize, carry off.*
dēcerpō, ere, sī, tus, *pluck.*
dēsum, esse, fuī, *be lacking, fail* (Dat.).
obsistō, ere, stitī, stitus, *oppose, resist* (Dat.).
servō, āre, āvī, ātus, *save, preserve.*
submergō, ere, mersī, mersus, *drown.*
super, prep. w. Acc. and Abl., *above, upon.*

312. EXERCISES

I. 1. Formīca sē servāre nōn potuit quod sibi vīrēs deerant. 2. Columba autem eī adfuit et virgulam in aquam iniēcit. 3. Auceps columbam, harundine correptā, capere cōnstituit, sed formīca eam servāvit. 4. Dīcit Ariovistum ad eum nūntiōs mittere. 5. Gallī Germānīs saepe obsistunt. 6. Tū, Caesar, mihi nōn es amīcus, obsistis enim mihi cottīdiē. 7. Formīca submersa nōn est, quod columba eam servāvit. 8. Auceps harundinem abiēcit, quod formīca ēius pedem momordit. 9. Formīca ascendit super virgulam quam columba dēcerpserat et in aquam iniēcerat. 10. Dīxit Gallōs saepe Germānīs obsistere.

II. 1. The bird-catcher was bitten by an ant, because he had decided to catch a dove. 2. The dove had cast a twig into the water where the ant had been nearly drowned. 3. The ant climbed upon the twig and was not drowned. 4. After the ant had bitten the foot of the bird-catcher, he suffered from the sting and freed the dove. 5. "Gaul is my province," said Ariovistus. 6. Ariovistus said that Gaul was his province. 7. "I shall never be lacking to my friends," says he, "but shall always assist (them)." 8. Within three days he will have helped all his friends. 9. He said that the ant cast a twig into the water.

313. READING LESSON: *Formīca et Columba*

Formīca quaedam[1] sitiēns[2] dēscendit ad fontem; sed flūmine correpta[3] paene est submersa. Columba autem, hōc vidēns,[4] virgulam dēcerpsit et in aquam iniēcit; super quam formīca ascendēns, sēsē servāvit. Tum forte auceps, harundinibus conlēctīs, proficīscitur[5] ad[6] columbam capiendam. Quod vidēns,[4] formīca pedem aucipis momordit; et ille, punctū dolēns,[7] harundinibus abiectīs, columbam līberāvit.

LESSON XLIX

DEPONENT VERBS—THE ABLATIVE WITH CERTAIN DEPONENTS

314. Deponent verbs have for the most part passive forms with active meanings. They have the participles of both voices. The Perfect participle has sometimes a passive sense.

315. PRINCIPAL PARTS

PRESENT (1st Singular)	PRESENT INFINITIVE	PERFECT TENSE
1. **cōn-o-r**, *I attempt*	**cōnā-rī**	**cōnā-t-us sum**
2. **pollice-o-r**, *I promise*	**pollicē-rī**	**pollici-t-us sum**
3. **ūt-o-r**, *I use, enjoy*	**ūt-ī**	**ū-s-us sum**
3. **pati-o-r**, *I suffer, allow*	**pat-ī**	**pas-s-us sum**
4. **potī-o-r**, *I become master of*	**potī-rī**	**potī-t-us sum**

Observe that the forms of these verbs are built in the same way as the passive voice of other verbs of the corresponding conjugations.

---

[1] *a certain.* [2] *being thirsty*, Pres. part. of **sitiō**. [3] **correpta** agrees with the subject of **submersa est**, a pronoun implied in the ending and referring to **formīca**. [4] *seeing.* [5] *sets out.* [6] *to catch the dove*, a construction which will be explained later. [7] *suffering.*

316. Examine the following: —

1. **Armīs ūtitur,** *he uses arms.*
2. **Prōvinciā potītur,** *he becomes master of the province.*

Observe that the verbs in the above take the Ablative when in the corresponding English sentences a direct object is used.

RULE. — Certain deponents, with their compounds, take the Ablative. These verbs are: —

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *use, enjoy*
fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, *enjoy*
fungor, fungī, fūnctus sum, *perform*
potior, potīrī, potītus sum, *become master of*
vescor, vescī, —, *eat*

Learn this list.

317. VOCABULARY

postulātum, ī, n., *demand.*
sēdēs, is, f., *seat, abode.*
sponte, Abl. (Gen. **spontis**), *of one's own accord.*
voluntās, ātis, f., *wish, consent.*
paucī, ae, a, *few* (seldom used in singular).
arcessō, ere, īvī, ītus, *summon.*
concēdō, ere, cessī, cessus, *withdraw, concede.*
dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus, *owe, ought.*
īnsequor, ī, secūtus sum, *pursue.*
iūdicō, āre, āvī, ātus, *judge.*
minitor, ārī, ātus sum, *threaten.*
potius, adv., *rather.*
priusquam, conj., *before* (the parts are often separated by intervening words).

318. EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar pauca postulāta ab Ariovistō fēcit. 2. Omnia mortem nōbīs minitantur, sed virī māximā virtūte sumus et nihil timēmus. 3. Pāce fruī dēbēmus, multa enim proelia commīsimus. 4. Ariovistus prius in Galliam vēnit quam populus Rōmānus. 5. "Nōn meā sponte," inquit, "sed arcessītus ā Gallīs in Galliam vēnī." 6. Sēdēs in Galliā nōbīs ā tē concessae sunt, quibus māximē fruimur. 7. Tuā voluntāte in Galliam prius vēnērunt quam ā Gallīs arcessītī sunt. 8. Caesar hostīs īnsequētur et eōrum

oppidīs potiētur. 9. Iūdicāvit imperium Rōmānōrum iūstius esse quam Gallōrum.

II. 1. Caesar of his own accord gave them abodes in Gaul. 2. With your consent we shall accept the answer of Ariovistus. 3. We see that you are pursuing your enemies, and threatening them with death.[1] 4. Caesar's demands are few, but just, and we ought to accept them. 5. He came of his own accord into Italy before he was summoned. 6. He will have become master of all Gaul within three years. 7. We shall withdraw with your consent to this fertile plain. 8. The just will enjoy peace, and will be greatly disturbed by no one.

319. READING LESSON

Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca[2] respondit et dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit. Dīxit sē[3] Rhēnum trānsisse[3] nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum[4] et arcessītum ā Gallīs; nōn sēsē Gallīs sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum; Caesarem nōn amīcum sibi sed hostem esse; prōvinciam suam hanc[5] esse Galliam, nōn Rōmānōrum. Caesar autem respondit sē nōn iūdicāre Galliam potius[6] esse Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī; aut[7] imperium Rōmānōrum iūstissimum esse in Galliā, aut līberam dēbēre esse Galliam.

LESSON L

SEMI-DEPONENTS—REVIEW OF PASSIVE—WORD LIST

320. Some verbs have the forms from the Present stem active, the rest passive. These are called Semi-Deponents.

---

[1] Lit. death to them. [2] *replied briefly* (a few things). [3] *that he had crossed.* [4] *asked,* Perf. pass. part. agreeing with **sē**. [5] **hanc** agrees with **Galliam**. Translate, *this part of Gaul.* [6] *belonged to Ariovistus rather than to* . . . (lit. was of . . .). [7] **aut . . . aut,** *either . . . or.*

Learn thoroughly the following list: —

Present Indicative	Present Infinitive	Perfect Indicative
2. **audeō**, *dare*	**audēre**	**ausus sum**
2. **gaudeō**, *rejoice*	**gaudēre**	**gāvīsus sum**
2. **soleō**, *be wont*	**solēre**	**solitus sum**
3. **fīdō**, *trust*	**fīdere**	**fīsus sum**

Note the irregularity in form of the Perfect participle of **gaudeō**. Inflect **audeō** and **fīdō** in the Indicative, and review the passive of all the conjugations.

321. VOCABULARY

āgnus, ī, m., *lamb.*
deus, ī, m., *god.*
pontifex, icis, m., *chief priest, high priest.*
Procillus, ī, m., *Procillus.*
studium, ī, n., *desire, zeal.*
templum, ī, n., *temple.*
sacer, cra, crum, *sacred.*
cōnfugiō, ere, fūgī, —, *flee for refuge.*
iniciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, *throw into, inspire.*
perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *accomplish.*
sacrificō, āre, āvī, ātus, *sacrifice.*
trucīdō, āre, āvī, ātus, *slay, kill.*
at, conj., *but, yet.*
quō, adv., *where, whither.*

322. EXERCISES

I. 1. Pontifex erat in templō, quō multī celeriter cōnfūgerant. 2. Hīs populus Rōmānus ignōverat. 3. Caesar dīcit populī Rōmānī imperium in Galliā esse iūstissimum. 4. Lupus in templum venīre nōn ausus est propter timōrem pontificis.[1] 5. Lupus dīxit pontificem āgnum sacrificātūrum esse. 6. Multō māior alacritās studiumque bellī māius exercituī iniectum est. 7. Māgnā adrogantiā in conloquiō Arioviſtus utī solēbat. 8. Āgnī ā lupīs trucīdārī solent. 9. Dum haec in conloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est Arioviſtī equitēs ad tumulum accēdere. 10. Ariovistus Caesarem peditēs nōn dūxisse ad tumulum gāvīsus est.

II. 1. The chief priest was wont to sacrifice lambs in the temple. 2. Is the lamb sacred to the god? No, he is not, and for this reason the high priest will sacrifice him. 3. I rejoice that

[1] *fear of the high priest*, objective Genitive.

my friends have been faithful to me. 4. But the enemy did not dare to fight, and for this reason they fled with great speed to the woods. 5. Caesar threatens that he will kill all the inhabitants of the village. 6. C. Valerius Procillus was sent to Ariovistus in regard to a conference. 7. Much greater alacrity was inspired in the army. 8. The soldiers did not dare to leave the town, but decided to await the arrival of Caesar.

323. READING LESSON: *Lupus et Āgnus*

Lupus īnsecūtus est āgnum. At hīc in templum cōnfūgit. Lupō autem āgnum invocante[1] et minitante[2] pontificem eum sacrificātūrum, respondit āgnus: "Mallem[3] quidem[4] deō sacer esse quam ā tē trucīdārī."

324. WORD LIST VIII

**abiciō	*convertō	**iniciō	patior	*sēdēs
**accēdō	*corripiō	*īnsequor	paucī	*servō
*aequus	*dēbeō	**īnsolenter	**perficiō	**soleō
āgnus	*dēcerpō	*intervāllum	persuādeō	sponte
alacritās	**dēsum	**ipse	perturbō	*studeō
aqua	deus	**iste	plānitiēs	*subitō
arcessō	doleō	**iūdicō	polliceor	submergō
*ascendō	*exercitātiō	**iūstus	**pontifex	super
at	*falsus	leō	*postulātum	tantus
**auceps	*fīdō	**lūdificō	**potior	templum
*audeō	formīca	*malum	**potius	tollō
**beneficium	gaudeō	*mēns	**praedicō	*trucīdō
*circumveniō	harundō	minitor	**prīncipātus	*tumulus
**cognōscō	*hīc	*mīrus	**priusquam	*tuus
columba	**īdem	modus	Procillus	*ūtor
*commemorō	idōneus	mordeō	**prōsum	*vehementer
**concēdō	**ignōscō	*mūnus	punctus	*vehō
*cōnfugiō	**ille	*necessitūdō	rēte	*vester
*conligō	*incidō	*obsistō	**sacer	virgula
*cōnor	*incrēdibilis	parcō	**sacrificō	*voluntas

[1] Ablative Absolute with **lupō**, *calling upon.*
[2] See **314.** [3] *I should prefer.* [4] *at least.*

LESSON LI

THE PARTICIPLE

325. There are four participles in Latin, — two in the active voice, the Present and the Future, and two in the passive, the Perfect and the Gerundive.

326. The Present participle ends in **-ns**, and has regularly the same meaning as the English participle in *-ing:* **vocā-ns**, *calling.* It is inflected like an adjective of the Third Declension with one termination.

327. The Future active participle ends in **-ūrus**, and is regularly used to express something about to happen: **vocā-tūr-us**, *about to call.* It is often joined to the verb **sum** to form the First Periphrastic Conjugation, which will be explained later. It is inflected like **fīdus, a, um.**

328. The Gerundive (sometimes called the Future passive participle) ends in **-ndus**, and is very often used to express necessity or obligation: **voca-ndus**, *to be called.* It is often joined to the verb **sum** to form the Second Periphrastic Conjugation, which will be explained later. It is inflected like **fīdus, a, um.**

329. The Perfect participle ends in **-tus, -sus**, and has two distinct uses.

1. It is often equivalent to the English Perfect passive participle in *-ed:* **mūnī-t-us**, *fortified.*

2. It is joined to the verb **sum** to form certain tenses of the passive: **vocā-t-us sum**, *I have been called.*

330. The participles may all be used as adjectives, and the Present and Perfect as substantives.

1. Note that there is no Present passive or Perfect active participle in Latin.

331. TABLE OF PARTICIPLES

	Active		Passive	
	PRESENT	FUTURE	PERFECT	GERUNDIVE (Fut.)
1.	**vocā-ns**	**vocā-tūr-us**	**vocā-t-us**	**voca-ndus**
2.	**monē-ns**	**moni-tūr-us**	**moni-t-us**	**mone-ndus**
3.	**regē-ns**	**rēc-tūr-us**	**rēc-t-us**	**rege-ndus**
3.	**capiē-ns**	**cap-tūr-us**	**cap-t-us**	**capie-ndus**
4.	**audiē-ns**	**audī-tūr-us** **fu-tūr-us**	**audī-t-us**	**audie-ndus**

1. Observe carefully the similarity of formation in the Present and the Gerundive on the one hand, and the Future and the Perfect on the other.

Make a table of the participles of **laudō**, **terreō**, **dūcō**, **faciō**, and **mūniō**.

332. Examine the following:

1. **Caesar virum vidēns laetus erat**, *Caesar was glad upon seeing the man.*
2. **Permōtus frūmentī inopiā Caesar in Ītaliam vēnit**, *alarmed by the lack of grain, Caesar came into Italy.*

Observe that the Latin usage is the same as the English.

333. VOCABULARY

catēna, ae, f., *chain.*
hospitium, ī, n., *friendship.*
lingua, ae, f., *tongue, language.*
vulgus,[1] **ī**, n., *common people, crowd.*
adequitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *ride toward.*
conclāmō, āre, āvī, ātus, *cry out.*
cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus, *settle down, encamp.*
exerceō, ēre, uī, itus, *exercise, train.*
interclūdō, ere, clūsī, clūsus, *cut off, shut off, hinder.*
permoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *alarm, move greatly.*
prōdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead forward.*
versor, ārī, ātus sum, *be busy, be engaged, live.*

[1] An exception in gender among nouns in **-us** of the Second Declension.

334. EXERCISES

I. 1. Ariovistus līberam dēbēre esse Galliam dīxit. 2. Caesarī nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī ad nostrōs adequitāre. 3. In[1] vulgus mīlitum nūntiātum est Ariovistum māgnā adrogantiā in conloquiō ūsum esse. 4. Conclāmāns "Virum videō!" ad eum contendit. 5. C. Valerius Procillus, ad Ariovistum missus, pauca postulāta fēcit. 6. Hospitiō Ariovistī ūsus māgnam iniūriam faciēbat. 7. Vidēns lēgātōs, suō exercitū praesente,[2] conclāmāvit: "Quārē ad mē vēnistī?" 8. Cōnantēs dīcere prohibuit et in catēnās coniēcit. 9. Cōpiīs interclūsīs, exercitum flūmen trādūxit. 10. Proeliō factō, in castra mīlitēs redūxit et ibi multīs in rēbus versātus est.

II. 1. The troops were led forward to the nearest hill. 2. The scouts saw that the enemy were busy in our camp. 3. The enemy had cut off our men from supplies. 4. Upon[3] seeing the ambassadors, Ariovistus threw them into chains. 5. Caesar, seeing the enemy, encamped at the foot of the mountain. 6. Our men had been trained in daily battles. 7. Ariovistus having used great arrogance in the conference made many demands. 8. He rode towards the crowd of soldiers and cried out: "I see the man."

335. READING LESSON

Dum haec in conloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī propius[4] tumulum accēdere, et ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere. Certīs dē causīs Caesar proelium nōn committere cōnstituit; itaque suōs in castra redūxit. Postquam in vulgus mīlitum nūntiātum est Ariovistum māgnā adrogantiā[5] ūsum esse, multō[6] māior alacritās studiumque pūgnae exercituī iniectum est. Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē conloquiō mīsit. Itaque Caesar C. Valerium Procillum, summā virtūte[7] virum, propter linguae Gallicae[8] scientiam mittere cōn-

[1] *among.* [2] *in the presence of his army;* **praesente**, Pres. part. of **praesum**, *be present.* [3] See **332**, 1. [4] *nearer to the mound.* [5] See **316**. [6] See **267**. [7] See **157**. [8] *on account of his knowledge of the Gallic language.*

stituit. Alter, quī hospitiō Ariovistī ūsus erat, missus est. Sed Ariovistus, lēgātōs vidēns in castrīs, conclāmāvit: Quārē ad mē vēnistis? et eōs in catēnās coniēcit.

LESSON LII

WORD FORMATION

NOTE. — It has been thought best to insert at this point two lessons upon Word Formation and Word Grouping. These lessons are not to be learned verbatim, but should be carefully read and frequently referred to in the preparation of the succeeding lessons.

The aim has not been to make an exhaustive treatment of the subject, but to present a few essential facts in a very simple manner, in the hope that the pupil, recognizing the fact that the Latin and the English are sister languages, and that both have been built up gradually and systematically, may form habits of observation in word study which will not only enliven his work in Latin, but help him to appreciate his own language better.

336. A Root is the essential part of a word unmodified by the addition of formative elements.

337. A Stem is that part of a word to which the inflectional endings are added: **son-**, root; **sono-**, stem; **sonus**,[1] *a noise*.

338. Examine carefully the following groups of words: —

ag-ō, *do*	**āc-tor**, *one who does*	**āc-tiō**, *a doing*
dēfend-ō, *defend*	**dēfēn-sor**, *one who defends*	**dēfēn-siō**, *a defending*

1. Observe that the ending **-tor** (**-sor**) denotes the agent, and that **-tiō** (**-siō**) is used in forming abstracts. Note also the change in the final letter of the root **ag** before **t**, and the dropping of **d** before **s**.

scrībō, *write*	**scrīp-tor**, ——?	**scrīp-tiō**, ——?

[1] The final letter of the stem is often so changed by its contact with the inflectional endings as not to be evident without careful analysis.

339.

ag-ō, *lead*	**āg-men**, *line of march*
flu-ō, *flow*	**flū-men**, *river*
move-ō, *move*	**mō-men-tum**, *movement*
mone-ō, *remind*	**monu-men-tum**, *reminder*

1. Observe that the endings **-men**, **-mentum**, denote acts, or the means or results of acts.

340.

arm-ō, *arm*	**armā-tūra**, *armor, armed troops*
scrīb-ō, *write*	**scrīp-tūra**, *a writing*

341.

ar-ō, *plow*	**arā-trum**, *that which plows, a plow*
voc-ō, *call*	**vocā-bulum**, *that by which one is called, a name*
gubern-ō, *guide*	**gubernā-culum**, *that which guides, a helm*

1. Observe that the endings **-trum**, **-bulum**, **-culum**, denote the means or instrument of an action.

From the meaning of the endings **-tor**, **-tiō** in **338**, 1, tell the meaning of the following words: —

arā-tor, **arā-tiō**; **gubernā-tor**, **gubernā-tiō**; **vocā-tor**, **vocā-tiō**.

342.

lae-tus, *glad*	**laeti-tia**, *gladness*
levis, *light*	**levi-tās**, *lightness, fickleness*
māgnus, *great*	**māgni-tūdō**, *greatness, size*
servus, *slave*	**servi-tūs**, *slavery*

1. Observe that the endings **-tia**, **-tās**, **-tūdō**, **-tūs** are added to noun and adjective stems to form abstracts. Note change in stem vowel.

343. The following words will give corresponding forms: —

iūstus, *just*	——? *justice*
vērus, *true*	——? *truth*
lātus, *broad*	——? *breadth*
vir, *man*	——? *manhood, courage*

344.

fīlius, *son*	**fīli-olus**, *little son*
ager, *field*	**agel-lus**, *little field*
homō, *man*	**homun-culus**, *manikin*

1. Observe that the Nominative endings **-ulus** (after a vowel **-olus**), **-lus**, **-culus** are added to noun stems to form diminutives.

Compare with these the English words *brooklet, rivulet, bracelet, versicle, reticule.*

345.

homō, *man*	**hum-ānus**, *belonging to man, human*
lāc, *milk*	**lact-eus**, *belonging to milk, lacteal*
alius, *another*	**ali-ēnus**, *belonging to another, alien*
cīvis, *citizen*	**cīv-icus**, *belonging to a citizen, civic*
Rōma, *Rome*	**Rōm-ānus**, *belonging to Rome, Roman*

Observe the formation of the preceding adjectives, and of the corresponding English words.

ARATRUM

LESSON LIII

WORD FORMATION

346.

nāvis, *ship*	**nāv-ālis**, *pertaining to a ship, naval*
servus, *slave*	**serv-īlis**, *pertaining to a slave, servile*
cōnsul, *consul*	**cōnsul-āris**, *pertaining to a consul, consular*

1. Observe that the endings **-ālis**, **-īlis**, **-āris**, denote belonging or pertaining to. The very common English endings *-al, -ar, -il, -ile*, are derived from these.

347.

eques, *horseman*	**eques-ter**, *belonging to a horseman, equestrian*
silva, *wood*	**silves-ter**, *belonging to a forest, wooded*
nōs, *we, us*	**nos-ter**, *belonging to us, our*

What is the adjective corresponding to **pedēs**, *foot soldier* ——? to **terra**, *land* ——?

348.

capi-ō, *take*	**capt-īvus**, *captive*
cupi-ō, *desire*	**cup-idus**, *desirous, eager*
tene-ō, *hold*	**ten-āx**, *prone to hold, tenacious*
aude-ō, *dare*	**aud-āx**, ——?
pūgn-ō, *fight*	**pūgn-āx**, ——?

1. Observe that the endings **-īvus**, **-idus**, are added to verb stems to express state, and **-āx** to express tendency.

349.

ag-ō, *drive*	**ag-ilis**, *active, agile*
faci-ō, *make, do*	**fac-ilis**, *easy* (that which can be done)
nōsc-ō, *know*	**nō-bilis**, *known, noble*
exim-ō, *select*	**exim-ius**, *selected, remarkable*

1. Observe that the endings **-ilis**, **-bilis**, **-ius**, are added to verb stems to express passive qualities.

350.

arma, *arms*	**arm-ō**, **āre**, *arm*
hiems, *winter*	**hiem-ō**, **āre**, *pass the winter*
albus, *white*	**albe-ō**, **ēre**, *be white*
metus, *fear*	**metu-ō**, **ere**, *fear*
finis, *end*	**fini-ō**, **īre**, *end*

1. Observe that verbs of the four conjugations are derived from noun stems. This is true of most of the three hundred and sixty verbs of the First Conjugation, some of the Second and Third, and many of the Fourth.

351. Compounds. — A simple word is one containing a single stem: **dux**, **duc-**. A compound word is one containing two or more stems: **agricola** = **agri** + **cola** (**agro-** + **cole-**); **ager**, *field*; **colō**, *cultivate*; **agricola**, *one who cultivates a field, a farmer.*

Pro-avus, *great-grandfather*, **prō** + **avus**, preposition + noun. **Arti-fex**, *artisan*, **arti-** (stem of **ars**) + **fex** (**faciō**), noun stem + verb stem. **Per-gravis**, *very heavy*, **per** + **gravis**, preposition + adjective. **Īn-fīdus**, *not to be trusted*, **in** + **fīdus**, negative particle + adjective. **Māgn-animus**, *great-hearted*, **māgno** + **animus**. adj. stem + noun. **Ex-eō**, *go out*, **ex** + **eō**, preposition + verb.

352. In **338–351** you have seen how words are formed by the addition of prefixes and suffixes. A great many words in Latin group themselves about a single root. In learning a Latin vocabulary bear this in mind, and associate together words which have a common root. Many words are of doubtful origin, but in the following exercises only those whose origin is practically certain, and which are in frequent use, will be given.

353. Study carefully the words in the group in this and succeeding lessons, and endeavor to explain the formation of each word, referring to **338-350.**

1. At the end of each group a list of English derivatives has been given which should be carefully studied for the purpose of enlarging your English vocabulary, and emphasizing the relation between your own language and the Latin.

354. Root **duc**, *lead.*

dūc-ō, *lead*	**duc-tor**, ——?	**intrō-dūcō**, *lead into*
dux, *leader*	**in-duc-tiō**, ——?	**intrō-duc-tiō**, ——?

Form compounds with **ad, con, dē, in, re,** and give meanings.

ENG. DER. — Duke, ductile, conductor, induce, ducat, reduction, viaduct, aqueduct, subdue, educate, duchy.

LESSON LIV

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

355. Quis? Quae? Quid? *Who? Which? What?*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	**quis (quī)**	**quae**	**quid (quod)**	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
G.	**cūius**	**cūius**	**cūius**	**quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
D.	**cuī**	**cuī**	**cuī**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**
Ac.	**quem**	**quam**	**quid (quod)**	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Ab.	**quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**

356. In the Nominative singular, masculine and neuter, **quis** and **quid** are used substantively, **quī** and **quod** adjectively; as, —

Quis mē vocāvit, *who called me?*
Quī puer mē vocāvit, *what boy called me?*
Quid vidēs, *what do you see?*
Quod animal vides, *what animal do you see?*

Review the declension of the relative (**147**), and compare it with the interrogative.

357. Examine the following: —

1. **Eum rēgem appellāvērunt,** *they called him king.*
2. **Mē cōnsulem fēcistis,** *you made me consul.*
3. **Urbs Rōma appellāta est,** *the city was called Rome.*

RULE. — Verbs of naming, making, choosing, calling, showing, take two Accusatives, one of the person or thing affected, the other a predicate Accusative.

NOTE. — In the passive the direct object becomes the subject, and the predicate Accusative a predicate Nominative.

358. VOCABULARY

benefactor, ōris, m., *benefactor.*
gelus, ūs, m., *frost, cold.*
hiems, emis, f., *winter.*
serpēns, entis, f. or m., *serpent.*
vestis, is, f., *garment.*
improbus, a, um, *wicked.*
condō, ere, didī, ditus, *hide, bring together, found.*
incalēscō, ere, caluī, —, *grow warm.*
inveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, *find, discover.*
miserēscō, ere, —, —, *feel pity for, pity.*
morior, morī (morīrī), mortuus sum, *die.*
reciperō, āre, āvī, ātus, *recover.*
rigeō, ēre, uī, —, *become stiff.*
mox, adv., *soon.*

359. EXERCISES

I. 1. Quis serpentem hiemis tempore in agrō invēnit? 2. Agricola serpentem invēnit et eī vītam servāvit. 3. Serpēns quem agricola invēnit gelū riguerat. 4. Incalēscēns autem benefactōrem suum mox momordit interfēcitque. 5. Senex serpentem miserēscit, quārē eum in veste condidit. 6. Serpentēs sunt improba animālia, quae saepe benefactōrēs suōs mordent. 7. Eum hominem improbum vocāmus quod amīcīs suīs fīdus nōn est. 8. Quis dīxit Caesarem aciem triplicem īnstruere? 9. Quem rēgem appellāvērunt? 10. Cūius vītam agricola servāvit? Servāvit vītam serpentis, quae eum mox momordit.

II. 1. A farmer hid under his garment a serpent which had become stiff with cold. 2. In the winter-time[1] serpents often

[1] **hiemis tempore.**

become stiff with cold. 3. The serpent, however, did not die, but was saved by a farmer, who, pitying it, hid it under his garment. 4. We easily suffer serpents to die, for they often bite their benefactors. 5. This serpent soon recovered, and bit the farmer. 6. Who saved the life of the wicked animal? 7. To whom did the Gauls give abodes on this side of the Rhine? To the Germans. 8. Whose life did the dove save? She saved the ant's life. 9. We called him our benefactor, because he saved the life of our brother.

360. READING LESSON: *Agricola et Serpēns*

Agricola, senex, hiemis tempore, serpentem invēnit gelū rigentem, et miserēscēns sub veste condidit. Mox serpēns incalēscēns, et indolem suam reciperāns, benefactōrem momordit interfēcitque; quī moriēns dīxit: "Iūsta patior, quī animālī improbō[1] vītam servāverim.

361. Study carefully the following word group. Determine the meaning of words marked ——?

Root **spec**, *see, spy*.

spec-t-ō, *to behold*	**spec-iēs**, *appearance*	**spec-u-lā-tor**, *spy*
spec-tā-tor, ——?	**spec-tā-culum**, ——?	**spec-trum**, *image*

ENG. DER. — Species, specious, spectacle, spectrum, spectral, conspicuous.

LESSON LV

IRREGULAR VERBS, INDICATIVE — **Ferō** AND ITS COMPOUNDS

362. Certain verbs, called irregular verbs, annex the personal endings in the Present system for the most part directly to the root.

[1] *who have saved the life of a . . .*

363. **Ferō**, *bear, carry*

Princ. Parts, **fer-ō, fer-re, tul-ī, lā-t-us**

Active

		PRESENT		IMPERF.	**fer-ē-ba-m**, etc.
SING.	1.	**fer-ō**		FUT.	**fer-a-m**, etc.
	2.	**fer-s**		PERF.	**tul-ī**, etc.
	3.	**fer-t**		PLUPERF.	**tul-era-m**, etc.
PLUR.	1.	**fer-i-mus**		FUT. PERF.	**tul-er-ō**, etc.
	2.	**fer-tis**			
	3.	**fer-u-nt**			

Passive

		PRESENT		IMPERF.	**fer-ē-ba-r**, etc.
SING.	1.	**fer-o-r**		FUT.	**fer-a-r**, etc.
	2.	**fer-ris (re)**		PERF.	**lā-t-us sum**, etc.
	3.	**fer-tur**		PLUPERF.	**lā-t-us eram**, etc.
PLUR.	1.	**fer-i-mur**		FUT. PERF.	**lā-t-us erō**, etc.
	2.	**fer-i-minī**			
	3.	**fer-u-ntur**			

1. Observe the quantity of the penult of **ferō**, and accent its compounds properly.

364. Inflect like **ferō** the following compounds: —

ad-ferō, ferre, attulī, adlātus, *bring to*, — **ad** + **ferō**
dē-ferō, ferre, dētulī, dēlātus, *bring down from, transfer*
in-ferō, ferre, intulī, inlātus, *bring in* or *on, inflict*
per-ferō, ferre, pertulī, perlātus, *bring to an end, endure*

1. Observe the change in **ad** in composition. Learn the above list of words with their forms and meanings.

365. **VOCABULARY**

agricultūra, ae, f., *agriculture.*
occāsus, ūs, m., *a falling down;* **sōlis occāsus**, *sunset.*
passus, ūs, m., *pace.*
vulnus, eris, n., *wound.*
intellegō, ere, lēxī, lēctus, *understand, perceive, know.*
redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead back.*
circiter, adv., *about.*
postrīdiē, *on the day after* (with Gen.).
praeter, prep. with Acc., *beyond.*
ultrā, prep. with Acc., *beyond.*
ūsque, adv., *even up to, as far as.*

366. EXERCISES

I. 1. Hīs respōnsīs adlātīs, occāsū sōlis Caesar equitēs in castra redūxit. 2. Vulneribus multīs inlātīs, ūsque ad vesperum pūgnāvērunt et multōs hostīs interfēcērunt. 3. Omnem equitātum praeter oppidum redūxit quod hostēs integrīs vīribus pūgnābant. 4. Bellum, quod Germānīs intulerat, duōbus annīs[1] pertulit. 5. Postrīdiē ēius diēī montem relīquit, et, aciē īnstrūctā, ad lacum prōcessit, quō in locō erant castra hostium. 6. Ultrā eum locum, circiter mīlia[2] passuum duo ā Bibractī, cōpiās pedestrēs dūxit. 7. Contentiōne omnium vīrium sē agricultūrae dedit. 8. Intellēxit hostēs locum castrīs idōneum dēligere.

II. 1. Caesar led his army about three[3] miles to the town (of) Bibracte.[4] 2. On the day after that day, having received[5] many wounds, they led their forces to a high hill near the river. 3. I know that you are drawing up a triple line of battle. 4. They fought even (up) to sunset, and no one saw an enemy turned away. 5. The army was led six hundred paces beyond the city. 6. The Germans had settled in a place beyond the Rhine. 7. You knew that they were surrendering their arms, and giving hostages to Caesar. 8. At sunset they will bring the battle to an end. 9. Were you not bringing the grain down from the hills into the town?

367. READING LESSON

Eōdem diē Ariovistus castra prōmōvit,[6] et mīlibus[7] passuum sex ā Caesaris castrīs sub monte cōnsēdit. Postrīdiē ēius diēī praeter Caesaris castra suās cōpiās trādūxit, et mīlibus passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit. Caesar ubi intellēxit Ariovistum sē castrīs tenēre, ultrā eum locum, quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sēscentōs ab eīs, locum castrīs idōneum dēlēgit aciēque triplicī īnstrūctā, ad eum locum vēnit. Proximō diē Caesar ē

[1] See **167, 2.** [2] *two thousands of paces — two miles.* [3] See **366,** 6. [4] Acc. in apposition with **oppidum.** [5] Abl. Abs. [6] Infer meaning. [7] See **267.**

castrīs utrīsque[1] cōpiās suās ēdūxit et aciem īnstrūxit. Eō diē ācriter pūgnātum[2] est utrimque[3] ūsque ad vesperum. Sōlis occāsū Ariovistus, multīs vulneribus et inlātīs et acceptīs, suās cōpiās in castra redūxit.

368. Root **mit**, *send*.

mit-tō, *send*	**mis-sile**, *a javelin*	**o-mit-tō**, *neglect*
mis-siō, *a sending*	**ā-mit-tō**, ——?	**com-mis-sūra**, *a joining together*

Form compound words with **com**, **inter**, **per**, **prae**, **sub**, and give meaning.

ENG. DER. — Admit, omit, mission, promise, remittance, missionary.

LESSON LVI

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS — WORD LIST

369. The indefinite **quis** is rare except in the compound **aliquis**, *some one*, and the combinations **sīquis**, *if any one*; **nē quis**, *lest any one*; **numquis**, *whether any one*; and a few others which will be explained later.

370.

	SINGULAR		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	**aliquis (aliquī)**	**aliqua**	**aliquid (aliquod)**
G.	**alicūius**	**alicūius**	**alicūius**
D.	**alicuī**	**alicuī**	**alicuī**
Ac.	**aliquem**	**aliquam**	**aliquid (aliquod)**
Ab.	**aliquō**	**aliquā**	**aliquō**
		PLURAL	
N.	**aliquī**	**aliquae**	**aliqua**
G.	**aliquōrum**	**aliquārum**	**aliquōrum**
D.	**aliquibus**	**aliquibus**	**aliquibus**
Ac.	**aliquōs**	**aliquās**	**aliqua**
Ab.	**aliquibus**	**aliquibus**	**aliquibus**

[1] Adj., agreeing with **castrīs**, *both*. [2] Lit. it was fought. Translate, *they fought*. [3] Adv., modifying **pūgnātum est**, *on both sides*.

371. The forms **aliquī** (sing.) and **aliquod** are used adjectively: **aliquī deus**, *some god*; **aliquod malum**, *some evil.*

372. The most important indefinites besides **aliquis** are: —

Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
quīdam	**quaedam**	**quiddam (quoddam)**, *a certain one*
quisquam	**(quaequam)**	**quidquam (quicquam)**, *any one*
quisque	**quaeque**	**quidque (quodque)**, *each one, every one*

1. These are declined like the simple pronoun, but **quīdam** changes **m** to **n** before **d**: **quendam, quōrundam.**

373. **Aliquis** means some one unknown to the speaker. **Quīdam** means a certain one not described by the speaker.

374. VOCABULARY

acervus, ī, m., *heap, pile.*
indolēs, is, f., *disposition, character.*
ālārius, a, um, *belonging to the wing.*
ālāriī, ōrum, m. pl., *auxiliaries on the wing.*
aliēnus, a, um, *belonging to another, another's.*
contentus, a, um, *content, satisfied.*
carpō, ere, sī, tus, *pick, gather.*
implōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *implore, beg for.*
invideō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *grudge, envy* (w. Dat.).
mūtō, āre, āvī, ātus, *change.*
dēmum, adv., *at length.*
ōlim, adv., *formerly, once upon a time.*

375. EXERCISES

I. 1. Dīcunt formīcam ōlim hominem fuisse. 2. Hīc homō agricultūrae māximē studuit, suīs autem labōribus contentus nōn erat. 3. Quam ob rem[1] in animal quae[2] nunc formīca vocātur mūtātus est. 4. Postrīdiē ēius diēī Caesar omnēs ālāriōs in cōnspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōnstituit. 5. Dīxistis eum, triplicī aciē īnstrūctā, ūsque ad castra hostium accessisse. 6. Homō quod bonīs aliēnīs invīdit frūgēs proximōrum carpsit. 7. Hostēs ad Caesarem mittentēs pācem implōrābant. 8. Dēmum, armīs trāditīs, condiciōnem pācis obtinuērunt. 9. Quīdam prīmā

[1] *therefore.* [2] Attracted into agreement with **formīca.**

lūce ad castra nostra vēnit. 10. Quārē quisquam bonīs aliēnīs invidet? 11. Quīdam speculātōrēs ad castra hostium quāque nocte veniēbant.

II. 1. Each one was content with his own labors, and did not envy the good fortune of another. 2. A certain man was changed into an ant because he was not content with his own labors. 3. The ant kept picking up heaps of grain. 4. The disposition of the man was not changed. 5. Why does any one refuse to bring aid to his friends? 6. We saw some soldiers every day near the town. 7. The soldier does not envy the leader's danger. 8. Some are content with a brief story. 9. I shall not give this shield to any one.

376. READING LESSON: *Formīca*

Formīca, quae nunc est, ōlim homō erat; et māximē agricultūrae studēns, labōribus suīs contentus nōn erat; sed semper bonīs[1] aliēnīs invidēns frūgēs proximōrum carpēbat. Iuppiter[2] autem, īrātus[3] ēius avāritiae, mūtāvit eum in animal quae nunc formīca vocātur. Sed, fōrmā mūtātā, indolem nōn mūtāvit; nam etiam nunc, circumiēns[4] ad acervōs frūmentī, frūgēs aliēnās conligit,[5] sibique repōnit.[6]

377. WORD LIST IX

acervus	*circiter	implōrō	*morior	**quīdam
*adequitō	*conclāmō	improbus	**mox	**quisquam
**adferō	*condō	incalēscō	**mūtō	**quisque
*agricultūra	*cōnsīdō	indolēs	*occāsus	*reciperō
ālārīī	*contentus	**īnferō	*occāsus sōlis	rigeō
ālārius	**dēferō	*intellegō	**ōlim	serpēns
**aliēnus	*dēmum	*interclūdō	passus	**ultrā
**aliquis	*exerceō	*inveniō	**perferō	*ūsque
avāritia	**ferō	*invideō	**permoveō	*versor
*benefactor	gelus	*īrāscor	*postrīdiē	vestis
*carpō	*hiems	lingua	*praeter	vulgus
catēna	*hospitium	*miserēscō	*prōdūcō	*vulnus

[1] *the property of others.* [2] *Jupiter.* [3] *angry at his avarice:* **avāritiae**, Dat. after the intrans. **īrāscor**, see **294**. [4] *going around.* [5] *gathers.* [6] *lays up.*

378. Root **fac**, *make* or *do*.

fac-i-ō, *make, do*	**fac-tum**, *deed*	**fac-ilis**, *easy*
fac-iēs, *appearance, make*	**fac-ul-tās**, *ability*	**dif-fic-ilis**, *hard*

1. Observe changes in the root in composition. Form compound verbs with **con, dē, per, prae**, making the same change in the root as in **difficilis**.

ENG. DER. — Fact, factor, factory, faction, facility, defect.

LESSON LVII

IRREGULAR VERBS — Volō AND ITS COMPOUNDS

379. **Volō**, *be willing, wish.* Princ. Parts, **volō, velle, voluī**
Nōlō (**nōn** + **volō**), *be unwilling.* Princ. Parts, **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī**
Mālō (**magis** + **volō**), *wish rather, prefer.* Princ. Parts, **mālō, mālle, mālui**

PRESENT

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
1.	**volō**	**volumus**	**nōlō**	**nōlumus**	**mālō**	**mālumus**
2.	**vīs**	**vultis**	**nōn vīs**	**nōn vultis**	**māvīs**	**māvultis**
3.	**vult**	**volunt**	**nōn vult**	**nōlunt**	**māvult**	**mālunt**

IMPERFECT

volē-ba-m, etc.	**nōlē-ba-m**, etc.	**mālē-ba-m**, etc.

FUTURE

vol-a-m	**nōl-a-m**	**māl-a-m**
vol-ē-s, etc.	**nōl-ē-s**, etc.	**māl-ē-s**, etc.

PERFECT

vol-u-ī, etc.	**nōl-u-ī**, etc.	**māl-u-ī**, etc.

PLUPERFECT

vol-u-eram, etc.	**nōl-u-eram**, etc.	**māl-u-eram**, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

vol-u-erō, etc.	**nōl-u-erō**, etc.	**māl-u-erō**, etc.

1. Observe that **nōlō** and **mālō** are compounds of **volō**, and that the irregularities occur in the Present tense only.

380. VOCABULARY

hospes, itis, m. and f., *host, guest, friend.*
nāvicula, ae, f., *skiff.*
phalanx, ngis, f., *phalanx.*
quaestor, ōris, m., *quaestor.*
testis, is, m. and f., *witness.*
uxor, ōris, f., *wife.*
voluptās, ātis, f., *pleasure.*
cōnfīdō, ere, fīsus sum, *trust firmly, rely upon.*
dēligō, āre, āvī, ātus, *bind fast, fasten.*
ēripiō, ere, uī, reptus, *snatch away.*
pereō, īre, īvī (iī), itus, *perish.*
revellō, ere, ī, vulsus, *pull back, tear away.*
trahō, ere, trāxī, trāctus, *draw, drag.*

381. EXERCISES

I. 1. Eōs testēs suae[1] quisque virtūtis habēbat. 2. At Germānī phalange factā in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. 3. Ad flūmen Rhēnum, mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnquāgintā, pervēnērunt. 4. Ibi paucī salūtem sibi repperērunt; in hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam ad rīpam dēligātam invēnerat. 5. Meīs amīcīs cōnfīdere mālō, fīdī enim sunt. 6. Nostrī salūtem in fugā petere nōlēbant. 7. Hostēs ad flūmen contendere voluerant. 8. In urbe manēre mālet. 9. Caesar māgnā voluptāte hospitem suum ēreptum esse ē manibus hostium audīvit. 10. Mulierēs in castrīs manēre nōluerant; itaque multae occīsae sunt in fugā.

II. 1. Many perished in this battle, for it was long and fierce. 2. Caesar's guest friend was being dragged along the road. 3. There were many witnesses of his bravery, for the army had been drawn up upon the hill. 4. The enemy did not wish to give up their arms. 5. Caesar did not trust Ariovistus firmly. 6. The two wives of Ariovistus preferred to perish in flight. 7. The soldiers wished to assault the town at daybreak. 8. I was unwilling to snatch the shield away from my friend. 9. The skiff was bound fast to the bank.

---

[1] The reflexive regularly precedes **quisque** when used in the same sentence.

382. READING LESSON

Postrīdiē ēius diēī Caesar praesidiō utrīsque castrīs paucōs relīquit et omnēs ālāriōs in cōnspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōnstituit. Ipse, triplicī īnstrūctā aciē, ūsque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs ēdūxērunt. Caesar singulīs legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quaestōrem praefēcit; ipse ā dextrō[1] cornū proelium commīsit. Nostrī ācriter in hostēs sīgnō datō impetum fēcērunt et diū in ūnō locō pūgnātum est. Tandem hostēs fugere coepērunt neque prius fugere dēstitērunt[2] quam ad flūmen Rhēnum, mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnquāgintā, pervēnērunt. Multī in eā pūgnā atque fugā occīsī sunt; in hīs duae Ariovistī uxōrēs. Duae fīliae; hārum altera occīsa est, altera capta. Ariovistus ipse ēvāsit.[3]

383. Root **fer**, *bear*.

fer-ō, *bear*	**for-te**, *by chance*	**for-tūna**, ——?
fer-t-ilis, ——?	**fer-t-ili-tās**, ——?	**dē-fer-ō**, ——?

ENG. DER. — Fertile, fortune, infer, offer, suffer. Give others.

LESSON LVIII

REVIEW OF PRONOUNS

384. Review carefully **136, 147, 148, 272–275, 286–288, 298.**

385. VOCABULARY

gēns, gentis, f., *tribe, nation.*
Lābiēnus, ī, m., *Labienus.*
littera, ae, f., *letter;* pl. *epistle, letter.*
rūmor, ōris, m., *report, rumor.*
cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus, *drive together, collect.*
commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move, disturb.*
condūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead* or *bring together.*
coniūrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *conspire.*

---

[1] *right.* [2] **neque dēstitērunt**, *did not cease.* [3] *escaped.*

386. SPECIAL EXERCISES ON THE PRONOUNS

I. 1. Tū mihi litterās ā Lābiēnō dedistī, ego huīc lēgātō dedī. 2. Hīc puer bonus est, ille malus. 3. Vōs ad herbida loca perveniētis, nōs ad montēs. 4. Cūius est tēlum? illīus est. 5. In locum properās ultrā quem castra posita sunt. 6. Huīc ignōscit, illī nōn ignōscit. 7. Quīdam homō contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāvit. 8. Dīcit sē litterās mihi dedisse. 9. Is est amīcus mihi, tibi inimīcus ille. 10. Tuus amīcus tibi nōn est similis.

II. 1. The man killed himself. 2. His friend is unlike him. 3. You are unfriendly to me, but I am friendly to you. 4. You gave me a letter from my friend. 5. Whose arms are in the town? The soldiers' arms (are). 6. Men and women are present; the former are brave, the latter graceful. 7. He gave his weapons to a certain man who was in our camp. 8. The men themselves will be in the village. 9. The king says that a supply of grain is at hand for you.

387. EXERCISES

I. 1. Rūmōrēs crēbrī ad Caesarem adlātī erant, quibus rūmōribus nōn est territus. 2. Dīcit Caesarem duās novās legiōnēs cōnscrībere, quās ē castrīs contrā hostēs dūcet. 3. Nūntiātum est omnēs Belgās inter sē obsidēs dare. 4. Hīs litterīs rūmōribusque nōn omnīnō commōtus est, sed exercitum condūcere coepit. 5. Belgae, quī contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāverant, gēns fortis et bellicōsa erant. 6. Lābiēnus, ūnus ex Caesaris lēgātīs, eī nūntiōs et litterās mīsit. 7. Ubi est in agrīs pābulī cōpia, iter faciēmus in fīnēs hostium. 8. Dīcit manum māgnam Belgārum cōgī et contrā Caesarem armārī.

II. 1. Caesar came into Gaul into the winter quarters over which Labienus was in command. 2. Caesar will enroll three new legions in farther Gaul, and lead them together into winter quarters. 3. All the Belgae are conspiring against the Roman people, and giving hostages to one another. They say that the

neighbors of the Belgae are being led together. 5. When we had led the army together into one place, a fierce battle was fought.[1] 6. They said that Caesar was disturbed by the rumors of war. 7. Many hostile nations wished to contend with the Germans.

388. Root **leg**, *gather*.

leg-ō, *gather*	**dē-lig-ō**, *choose*	**dī-lig-enter**, ——?
leg-iō, ——?	**dī-lig-entia**, *diligence*	**in-tel-leg-ō**, *know*

ENG. DER. — Coil, cull, collection, legion, legend, intellect, neglect. Form others.

LESSON LIX

IRREGULAR VERBS — Eō AND Fīō, INDICATIVE — CONSTRUCTIONS OF PLACE

389. **Eō**, *go*. Princ. Parts, **eō, īre, īvī(iī), itus**

PRESENT

SING.	PLUR.				
1. **e-ō**	**ī-mus**	IMPF.	**ī-ba-m**, etc.	PERF.	**ī-v-ī (i-ī)**, etc.
2. **ī-s**	**ī-tis**	FUT.	**ī-b-ō**, etc.	PLUP.	**ī-v-era-m**, etc.
3. **i-t**	**e-u-nt**			FUT. PERF.	**ī-v-er-ō**, etc.

1. Supply omitted forms. **Eō** is used impersonally in the third person singular, passive. The compounds **ad-eō**, *I approach*, and **in-eō**, *I enter*, are transitive, and have a passive inflection also.

390.

	SINGULAR		
PRES.	1. **ad-e-o-r**	IMPF.	**ad-ī-ba-r**, etc.
	2. **ad-ī-ris (re)**	FUT.	**ad-ī-bo-r**, etc.
	3. **ad-ī-tur**	PERF.	**ad-i-t-us sum**, etc.
	PLURAL	PLUP.	**ad-i-t-us eram**, etc.
	1. **ad-ī-mur**	FUT. PERF.	**ad-i-t-us erō**, etc.
	2. **ad-ī-minī**		
	3. **ad-e-u-ntur**		

[1] **ācriter pūgnātum est.**

391. **Fīō**, *become* (used as passive of **faciō**)
Princ. Parts, **fīō, fierī, factus sum**

	SINGULAR		
PRES.	1. **fī-ō**	IMPF.	**fī-ē-ba-m**, etc.
	2. **fī-s**	FUT.	**fī-a-m**
	3. **fī-t**		**fī-ē-s**, etc.
	PLURAL	PERF.	**fac-t-us sum**, etc.
	1. **fī-mus**	PLUP.	**fac-t-us eram**, etc.
	2. **fī-tis**	FUT. PERF.	**fac-t-us erō**, etc.
	3. **fī-u-nt**		

392. Examine the following: —

1. **Caesarem certiōrem facit**, *he informs Caesar* (makes Caesar more certain).
2. **Caesar certior factus est**, *Caesar was informed.*

Observe that **certior** is an adjective in the comparative degree, and is declined like any other comparative.

393. Examine the following: —

1. **Ā Galliā nāvigāvit**, *he sailed away from Gaul.*
2. **Rōmā profectus est**, *he set out from Rome.*
3. **Ex urbe ēgressus est**, *he went out of the city.*
4. **Dēlō vēnit**, *he came from Delos.*
5. **Domō exīvit**, *he went out from home.*

RULE. — The place from which is regularly expressed by the Ablative with a preposition, generally **ab, dē**, or **ex**; but names of towns and small islands, also **domus** and **rūs**, omit the preposition.

394. Examine the following: —

1. **Ad fīnēs Belgārum properat**, *he hastens to the territory of the Belgae.*
2. **In Ītaliam profectus est**, *he set out for Italy.*
3. **Rōmam īvit**, *he went to Rome.*

4. **Dēlum nāvigāvit,** *he sailed to Delos.*
5. **Domum ībit,** *he will go home.*
6. **Rūs vēnit,** *he came into the country.*

RULE. — The place to which is regularly expressed by the Accusative with a preposition; but names of towns and small islands, also **domus** and **rūs,** omit the preposition.

395. Examine the following: —

1. **In urbe mānsit,** *he remained in the city.*
2. **Rōmae mānsit,** *he remained at Rome.*
3. **Athēnīs fuit,** *he was at Athens.*
4. **Dēlō nōn fuī,** *I was not at Delos.*
5. **Rēx erat Curibus,** *the king was at Cures.*
6. **Domī erāmus,** *we were at home.*

RULE. — The place in which is regularly expressed by the Ablative with the preposition **in**; but names of towns and small islands, also **domus** and **rūs,** are put in the Locative.

NOTE. — The Locative (see **21,** n. 1) has the same form as the Genitive in singulars of the First and Second Declensions; but in singulars of the Third and all plurals it has the same form as the Dative or Ablative. The Locative forms of **domus** and **rūs** are **domī** and **rūrī.**

396. VOCABULARY

Athēnae, ārum, f. pl., *Athens.*
Curēs, ium, f. or m. pl., *Cures.*
Dēlos, ī, f., *Delos.*
rēs frūmentāria, reī frūmentāriae, f., *grain supply.*
Rōma, ae, f., *Rome.*
rūs, rūris, n., *country* (opposed to city).
ēgredior, ī, gressus sum, *go* or *march out.*
certiōrem[1] **faciō, ere, fēcī, certior factus,** *inform.*
nāvigō, āre, āvī, ātus, *sail.*
proficīscor, ī, fectus sum, *set out, march.*
frūstrā, adv., *in vain.*
statim, adv., *immediately, at once.*

[1] Inflected to agree with object of **faciō.**

397. EXERCISES

I. 1. Impetū factō in multa oppida, Rōmam statim profectus est. 2. Rēbus frūmentāriīs conlēctīs, Dēlum cum māximā multitūdine hominum īvit. 3. Certior factus est amīcum domum proficīscī.[1] 4. Athēnīs sunt multī et fortēs virī, quī statim Dēlum nāvigābunt. 5. Diū Curibus mānsit, tum Athēnās vēnit. 6. Frūstrā cōnātus est nāvigāre domum. 7. Q. Pedius,[2] Caesaris lēgātus, cum cōpiīs omnibus in interiōrem Galliam statim ībit. 8. Ēgressus est ex urbe quod rūs īre volēbat. 9. Māius fīet perīculum quod hostēs ad nostra oppida veniunt. 10. Rōmam īvērunt, quae urbs clārissima erat.

II. 1. He went to Rome on the tenth day and set out immediately for Athens. 2. Grain supplies were brought into the city, for the citizens feared an attack of the enemy. 3. He informs them that the soldiers are making an attack in vain. 4. You will go immediately into the country. 5. He will have gone to Delos within four days. 6. There were few inhabitants in Cures. 7. He became king at Athens. 8. He will become the leader of all their forces. 9. They were going from the city to the country.

398. READING LESSON

Cum esset[3] Caesar in citeriōre Galliā in hībernīs, crēbrī rūmōrēs ad eum adferēbantur, litterīsque item[4] Lābiēnī certior fīēbat omnēs Belgās contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē[5] dare. Hīs nūntiīs litterīsque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā cōnscrīpsit, et initā[6] aestāte in interiōrem Galliam cum eīs Q. Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet,[7] ad exercitum vēnit. Fīnitimī Belgārum Caesarī nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī et exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Quārē Caesar ad eōs proficīscī cōnstituit. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā, castra movet, diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad fīnēs Belgārum pervēnit.

---

[1] **certior factus** is followed by the construction of the indirect discourse. [2] **Quīntus Pedius.** [3] *When Caesar was.* [4] *likewise.* [5] *to one another.* [6] *in the beginning of summer.* [7] *when there began to be. . . .*

399. Root, **da**, *give*.

dō, *give*	**dō-nō**, *give*	**ē-dō**, *give out*
dē-dō, *give up*	**dō-num**, —— ?	**trā-dō** (**trāns** + **dō**), *give over*
dē-di-tiō, —— ?	**vēn-dō**, *sell*	**trā-di-tiō**, —— ?

ENG. DER. — Date, dot, dative, edition, donor, donate, traitor, vend.

LESSON LX

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, **Sum** — INDEPENDENT USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

400.

		PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
SING.	1.	**si-m**	**es-se-m**	**fu-eri-m**	**fu-isse-m**
	2.	**sī-s**	**es-sē-s**	**fu-eri-s**	**fu-issē-s**
	3.	**si-t**	**es-se-t**	**fu-eri-t**	**fu-isse-t**
PLUR.	1.	**sī-mus**	**es-sē-mus**	**fu-eri-mus**	**fu-issē-mus**
	2.	**sī-tis**	**es-sē-tis**	**fu-eri-tis**	**fu-issē-tis**
	3.	**si-nt**	**es-se-nt**	**fu-eri-nt**	**fu-isse-nt**

1. Observe that the Imperfect Subjunctive is made from the Present Infinitive, the Pluperfect Subjunctive from the Perfect Infinitive.

2. Note also the one difference in inflection between the Perfect Subjunctive and the Future Perfect Indicative (see **208**). Note that the Future and Future Perfect tenses are lacking in the Subjunctive.

401. The Subjunctive is used either independently or dependently. It is used in independent clauses to express —

1. An exhortation: **Sīmus fortēs**, *let us be brave.*

A command: **Sit miser**, *let him be wretched.*

A prohibition: **Nē fueris inimīcus**, *do not be unfriendly.*

In this use it is called the Hortatory Subjunctive.

2. A wish: **Utinam essem Rōmae**, *would that I were at Rome.*

In this use it is called the Optative Subjunctive.

3. A possibility: **Aliquis sit amīcus,** *some one may be a friend.* In this use it is called the Potential Subjunctive.

4. Doubt or Indignation in questions: **Quid faciamus?** *What shall we do?* In this use it is called the Dubitative Subjunctive.

The use of the Subjunctive in dependent clauses will be gradually discussed as the work advances.

402. VOCABULARY

clāva, ae, f., *staff, club.*
Herculēs, is, m., *Hercules.*
magistrātus, ūs, m., *magistrate.*
Nemea, ae, f., *Nemea.*
pecus, oris, n., *flock.*
sagitta, ae, f., *arrow.*
umerus, ī, m., *shoulder.*
vallēs, is, f., *valley.*
advocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call to* or *towards.*
consentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *agree with, conspire.*
impōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *place upon, assign.*
valeō, ēre, uī, itūrus, *be strong, avail.*
vīvō, ere, vīxī, vīctus, *live.*

403. EXERCISES

I. 1. Leōne interfectō, fortēs sīmus. 2. In valle Nemeae leō ingēns vīvēbat quī pecora hominēsque interficiēbat. 3. Herculēs sit fortis, leō enim adest. 4. Rēx dīxit: "Cūrae tibi sit ea rēs." 5. Herculēs respondit: "Quam celerrimē[1] leōnem interficiam," et statim profectus est. 6. Herculēs clāvam in manū suā habuit. 7. Mortuum leōnem umerīs imposuerat et ad rēgem tulerat. 8. Utinam domī essem, ingēns enim leō ad mē venit. 9. Quid faciam? Nam omnēs cōnsentiunt leōnem esse hominī inimīcum. 10. Ūnum imperium et ūnum magistrātum eōs habēre dīxērunt.

PHARETRA

II. 1. Let our friends be faithful in (time of) danger. 2. Hercules had used his club and arrows in vain. 3. The king had called Hercules to him, and had assigned to him twelve labors. 4. Her-

[1] *as quickly as possible.*

cules was not able to kill the lion with his club or arrows. 5. They had not conspired against the Roman people, and were ready to give hostages. 6. The Germans who live on this side of the Rhine had joined themselves with these. 7. Over this river was a bridge. Here he places a guard, and on the other side of the river he leaves a lieutenant with six cohorts. 8. Would that he were[1] with his army in the camp. 9. Let us be faithful to our friends. 10. He may be brave, but he is not good.

404. READING LESSON: *Nemeus Leō*

In valle Nemeae leō ingēns vīvēbat, et pecora hominēsque cottīdiē interficiēbat. Eurystheus,[2] rēx Tīrynthis,[3] Herculem ad sē advocāvit, eīque dīxit: "Cūrae tibi sit hunc leōnem quam celerrimē interficere."[4] Statim proficīscitur Herculēs. Clāvā sagittīsque frūstrā ūsus, impetū factō, leōnem manibus interfēcit. Tum ad Eurystheum revertit, mortuum leōnem umerīs impositum ferēns.

405. Root **ac**, *sharp*.

ăc-er, *sharp*	**ac-er-bus**, *bitter, sour*	**ac-iēs**, *edge, line of battle*
ăc-us, *needle*	**ăc-ri-ter**, ——?	**ac-er-bi-tās**, *sharpness*

ENG. DER. — Edge, acrobat, acid, acrimonious.

LESSON LXI

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD — SEQUENCE OF TENSES

406. The tenses of the Subjunctive in dependent clauses follow special laws of sequence.

407. All tenses are divided into two classes, primary and secondary.

---

[1] See **401**, 2. [2] *Eurystheus.* [3] **Tīryns**, **Tīrynthis**, or **Tīrynthos**, *Tiryns* (an ancient town of Argolis). [4] **interficere**, subject of **sit**. Translate, *Let it be a care to you to kill*, or *See that you kill . . .*

408. The primary tenses express present or future time: the Present, Pure Perfect,[1] Future, and Future Perfect Indicative, the Present and Perfect Subjunctive, and the Present and Future Imperative.

409. The secondary tenses express past time: the Imperfect, Perfect Historical,[2] and Pluperfect Indicative, and the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

410. General Rule for Sequence of Tenses. — In complex sentences a primary tense in the principal clause is followed by a primary in the subordinate, a secondary by a secondary.

411. Examine the following: —

1. **Monet ut sīmus bonī,** *he advises us to be good* (that we may be).
2. **Monēbit ut sīmus bonī,** *he will advise us to be good.*
3. **Monuit ut essēmus bonī,** *he advised us to be good* (that we might be).
4. **Monuerat ut essēmus bonī,** *he had advised us to be good.*
5. **Monēbat ut essēmus bonī,** *he was advising us to be good.*
6. **Monuit ut sīmus bonī,** *he has advised us to be good.*
7. **Monuerit ut sīmus bonī,** *he will have advised us to be good.*

Learn these examples, and note the distinction in meaning and use of the tenses in 3 and 6. Learn carefully the list of primary and secondary tenses, and in the succeeding lessons point them out until you are thoroughly familiar with them.

412. VOCABULARY

Galba, ae, m., *Galba.*
hydra, ae, f., *hydra.*
iūs, iūris n., *right, law.*
iūstitia, ae, f., *justice.*
Rēmī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Remi.*
Suessiōnēs, um, m. pl., *the Suessiones.*
plērusque, aque, umque, *a very great part.*
plērīque, ōrumque, m. pl., *the most.*

[1] That use of the Perfect which is expressed in English by the Present Perfect.

[2] The English simple Past tense.

abscīdō, ere, ī, scīsus, *cut off* or *away.*

dīmittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *send away, dismiss.*

distineō, ēre, uī, tentus, *hold* or *keep apart.*

expellō, ere, pulī, pulsus, *expel, drive out.*

orior, īrī, tus sum, *arise, spring* or *descend from.*

antīquitus, adv., *long ago, in ancient times.*

ut, conj., *that, in order that.*

413. EXERCISES

I. 1. Lēgātī, prīmī cīvitātis, ad eum ab Rēmīs missī sunt. 2. Hī omnēs sē suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populī Rōmānī permīsērunt. 3. Rēmī neque cum reliquīs Belgīs cōnsēnserant neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāverant. 4. Plērīque Belgae erant ortī ā Germānīs, Rhēnumque antīquitus trāductī, propter fertilitātem ibi cōnsēderant. 5. Apud Suessiōnēs fuerat rēx nostrā etiam memoriā[1] Divitiacus, tōtīus Galliae potentissimus. 6. Pontem Caesar facit ut subsidiō sibi sit. 7. Pontem Caesar fēcit ut subsidiō sibi esset. 8. Ad Aeduōs lēgātōs mittet ut frūmentī cōpia sibi sit. 9. Ad Aeduōs lēgātōs mīserat ut frūmentī cōpia sibi esset. 10. Lēgātus ad collem legiōnem decimam mīsit ut Caesarī auxiliō esset.

II. 1. Galba was chosen leader[2] on account of his justice and prudence. 2. Caesar having encouraged[3] the Remi, ordered all the senate to come to him, and all the children of the chiefs to be brought to him as hostages. 3. Caesar advises his soldiers to be (that they may be) brave. 4. Caesar advised his soldiers to be (that they might be) brave. 5. Caesar was advising his soldiers to be brave. 6. Caesar will advise his soldiers to be brave. 7. Caesar has advised his centurions to be faithful. 8. Caesar will have advised the tenth legion to be faithful. 9. The lieutenant had advised his centurions to be brave.

414. READING LESSON

Rēmī ad Caesarem lēgātōs, prīmōs cīvitātis, mīsērunt, quī dīxērunt Rēmōs sē suaque omnia in potestātem populī Rōmānī per-

[1] *even within our memory.* [2] See **357.** [3] **cohortātus.**

mittere,[1] neque sē cum Belgīs reliquīs cōnsēnsisse, neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse,[2] parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere: reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant,[3] sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse.

Dē summā[4] autem bellī et dē numerō armātōrum lēgātī Caesarem certiōrem fēcērunt. Summa bellī, quam Bellovacī[5] propter virtūtem numerumque mīlitum postulāvērunt, ad Galbam, rēgem Suessiōnum, propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque dēlāta est.[6]

Caesar, Rēmōs cohortātus, omnem senātum ad sē convenīre prīncipumque līberōs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs dīligenter[7] ad diem facta sunt. Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās ad sē venīre vīdit, flūmen Axonam cōpiās trādūxit ibique castra posuit.

415. Root **sta**, *stand*.

stō, *stand*	**sta-bulum**, ——?	**sta-tūra**, ——?
sta-bilis, *firm*	**sta-tiō**, ——?	**sta-tim**, *immediately*

ENG. DER. — State, station, stand, distant, constant, standard.

LESSON LXII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, FIRST CONJUGATION — PURPOSE CLAUSES

416. **Active**

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
SING. 1.	**voce-m**[8]	**vocā-re-m**	**vocāv-eri-m**	**vocāv-isse-m**
SING. 2.	**vocē-s**	**vocā-rē-s**	**vocāv-eri-s**	**vocāv-issē-s**
SING. 3.	**voce-t**	**vocā-re-t**	**vocāv-eri-t**	**vocāv-isse-t**
PLUR. 1.	**vocē-mus**	**vocā-rē-mus**	**vocāv-eri-mus**	**vocāv-issē-mus**
PLUR. 2.	**vocē-tis**	**vocā-rē-tis**	**vocāv-eri-tis**	**vocāv-issē-tis**
PLUR. 3.	**voce-nt**	**vocā-re-nt**	**vocāv-eri-nt**	**vocāv-isse-nt**

[1] **permittō**, *intrust*. [2] Contracted form for **coniūrāvisse**. [3] *dwell*. [4] *the leadership*. [5] *the Bellovaci*. [6] *was conferred*. [7] *promptly*.

[8] No sufficient translation of the Subjunctive can be given in the paradigms. You must depend for its meaning upon a study of the context and the illustrative examples which will accompany the discussion of this mood.

417. **Passive**

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
SING.	1. **voce-r**	**vocā-re-r**	**vocātus sim**	**vocātus essem**
	2. **vocē-ris(re)**	**vocā-rē-ris(re)**	**vocātus sīs**	**vocātus essēs**
	3. **vocē-tur**	**vocā-rē-tur**	**vocātus sit**	**vocātus esset**
PLUR.	1. **vocē-mur**	**vocā-rē-mur**	**vocātī sīmus**	**vocātī essēmus**
	2. **vocē-minī**	**vocā-rē-minī**	**vocātī sītis**	**vocātī essētis**
	3. **voce-ntur**	**vocā-re-ntur**	**vocātī sint**	**vocātī essent**

418. Observe the change in the stem vowel of the Present Subjunctive, both active and passive, and the one difference in form of the Perfect Subjunctive and Future Perfect Indicative active.

Inflect in the same way **mūtō, armō, implōrō, superō.**

419. Examine the following: —

1. **Magister venit ut discipulōs vocet,** *the teacher is coming to call the pupils* (that he may call).
2. **Magister vēnit ut discipulōs vocāret,** *the teacher came to call the pupils* (that he might call).
3. **Mīlitēs fortiter pūgnant nē dux culpet,** *the soldiers fight bravely that their leader may not blame them* (lest he may).
4. **Mīlitēs fortiter pūgnāvērunt nē dux culpāret,** *the soldiers fought bravely that their leader might not blame them* (lest he might).
5. **Mīlitēs ad superiōrem locum contendent, quō facilius pūgnent,** *the soldiers will hasten to a higher place in order to fight more easily* (in order that they may).
6. **Mīlitēs ad superiōrem locum contendērunt, quō facilius pūgnārent,** *the soldiers hastened to a higher place in order to fight more easily* (in order that they might).

1. Observe that **ut,** *in order that,* introduces an affirmative clause of purpose; **nē,** *that not* or *lest,* a negative one; and that **quō** is used with a comparative to express purpose. Never use the infinitive in such clauses.

2. The law for the sequence of tenses (**406–410**) should be followed in writing the exercise of this lesson.

420. VOCABULARY

bēlua, ae, f., *beast, monster.*
cōnsilium, ī, n., *plan, counsel.*
discipulus, ī, m., *pupil.*
liber, brī, m., *book.*
nātiō, ōnis, f., *nation.*
venēnātus, a, um, *poisoned, poisonous.*
cōnsūmō, ere, psī, ptus, *destroy, use up, consume.*
ēnāscor, ī, nātus sum, *spring up, grow out.*
tingō, ere, tīnxī, tinctus, *wet, moisten.*
vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātus, *wound.*
nē, conj., *in order that not, lest.*
quō, conj. with comparatives, *that.*
vērō, adv., *in truth, indeed.*

421. EXERCISES

I. 1. In palūdem vēnit ut hydram vulnerāret. 2. In palūdem venit ut hydram vulneret. 3. Antīquitus Herculēs, bēluā victā, sagittās sanguine tīnxit. 4. Multīs oppidīs cōnsūmptīs, monet ut mīlitēs in Galliā hiement. 5. Lēgātum in Aquītāniam proficīscī iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus in Galliam auxilia convocentur. 6. In prōvinciam contendere cōnstituit ut frūmentum comparārētur. 7. Rōmam vēnit, quō facilius amīcōs līberāret. 8. Summā celeritāte in Galliam contendērunt ut agrōs hostium vāstārent. 9. Ad Ītaliam proficīscēmur ut auxilium ab amīcīs implōrēmus. 10. Multās cōpiās ūnum in locum condūcēs ut bellum renovēs.

II. 1. They came into the territory of the Remi in order to[1] devastate their fields. 2. He advises us not to change our plans. 3. You will set out for Rome in order to implore aid from Caesar. 4. We shall lead the lamb to the temple to sacrifice it. 5. You advised us to deliver our friends from danger. 6. We shall winter in Gaul in order that we may more easily attack the towns in the beginning of summer.[2] 7. He persuaded me[3] not to give the books to the master. 8. They sent a messenger to carry the poisoned arrows to Hercules.

422. READING LESSON: *Hydra Lernaea*

Hydra appellāta est bēlua, quae in palūde Lernaeā[4] versābātur, cuī erant capita novem, octō vērō mortālia, nōnum autem immor-

[1] Sign of Subj., **ut**. [2] **aestāte initā**. [3] Dative. [4] **Lernaeā**, *of Lerna.*

tāle. Capita mortalia Herculēs gladiō suō abscīdit, immortāle autem vulnerāre nōn potuit. Ūnō vērō capite abscīsō, statim ēnāscēbantur duo. Haec autem, silvīs incēnsīs, īgne cōnsūmpsit. Tum caput immortāle sub saxō condidit. Hydrā ita victā, sagittās bēluae sanguine venēnātō tīnxit.

423. Root **fa-**, *shine, show.*

fā-bula, *fable, story*	**fā-ma**, *report*	**in-fā-ns**, *infant*
fā-bulōsus, ——?	**fā-s**, *right* (by divine law)	**in-fa-ndus**, *unspeakable*
fā-bulōsē, ——?	**nē-fā-s**, ——?	**fā-tum**, *fate* (things spoken)

ENG. DER. — Fable, fame, fate, nefarious, infamous. Form others.

LESSON LXIII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, SECOND CONJUGATION — VERBS OF FEARING — WORD LIST

424. **Active**

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
SING. 1.	**monea-m**	**monē-re-m**	**monu-eri-m**	**monu-isse-m**
SING. 2.	**moneā-s**	**monē-rē-s**	**monu-eri-s**	**monu-issē-s**
SING. 3.	**monea-t**	**monē-re-t**	**monu-eri-t**	**monu-isse-t**
PLUR. 1.	**moneā-mus**	**monē-rē-mus**	**monu-eri-mus**	**monu-issē-mus**
PLUR. 2.	**moneā-tis**	**monē-rē-tis**	**monu-eri-tis**	**monu-issē-tis**
PLUR. 3.	**monea-nt**	**monē-re-nt**	**monu-eri-nt**	**monu-isse-nt**

425. **Passive**

SING. 1.	**monea-r**	**monē-re-r**	**monitus sim**	**monitus essem**
SING. 2.	**moneā-ris(re)**	**monē-rē-ris(re)**	**monitus sīs**	**monitus essēs**
SING. 3.	**moneā-tur**	**monē-rē-tur**	**monitus sit**	**monitus esset**
PLUR. 1.	**moneā-mur**	**monē-rē-mur**	**monitī sīmus**	**monitī essēmus**
PLUR. 2.	**moneā-minī**	**monē-rē-minī**	**monitī sītis**	**monitī essētis**
PLUR. 3.	**monea-ntur**	**monē-re-ntur**	**monitī sint**	**monitī essent**

1. Observe the signs of mood and tense in the above. In what respect do the Future Perfect Indicative active and the Perfect Subjunctive differ?

2. Inflect as above **teneō, terreō, dēleō,** observing carefully the principal parts of **dēleō.**

426. Examine the following: —

1. **Vereor nē pūgnet,** *I fear that he* will *fight.*
2. **Vereor ut pūgnet,** *I fear that he will* not *fight.*
3. **Veritus sum nē pūgnāret,** *I feared that he* would *fight.*
4. **Veritus sum ut pūgnāret,** *I feared that he would* not *fight.*

Observe the use of **nē** and **ut** with verbs of fearing, and compare this use with that seen in the preceding lesson.

Observe that the Subjunctive may be translated by the English Future Indicative; also that the dependent verbs follow the law of sequence of tenses (**406–410**).

RULE. — Verbs and other expressions of fearing are followed by the Subjunctive with **nē** affirmative and **ut** negative.

427. **VOCABULARY**

funditor, ōris, m., *slinger.*
Iccius, I, m., *Iccius.*
sagittārius, ī, m., *archer.*
tormentum, ī, n., *hurling engine.*
conlocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *set, place.*
dēdō, ere, didī, ditus, *give up, surrender.*
statuō, ere, ī, ūtus, *station, set up, resolve.*
supersedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus, *refrain from.*
vereor, ērī, itus sum, *fear.*
item, adv., *likewise.*
libenter, adv., *willingly, gladly.*

428. **EXERCISES**

I. 1. Veritus est nē tantae nātiōnēs coniūrārent. 2. Lābiēnum in Helvētiōs mīsit ut eam manum distinēret. 3. Iccius verētur ut proeliō libenter supersedeant. 4. Nōnne verēbāris ut oppidum ā funditōribus sagittāriīsque expūgnārētur? 5. Hostēs item armīs trāditīs sē dēdidērunt, nē gravius dolērent. 6. Ad oppidum profectus, ibi castella cōnstituit et tormenta conlocāvit ut celeriter

oppidum expūgnārētur. 7. Vereor ut castra hostium dēleantur. 8. Veritī sunt nē castra movērētis. 9. Ad oppidum pedestrēs cōpiās īre iussit, ut oppūgnētur. 10. Nōnne tē in Galliam mīsit ut hostēs proeliō prohibērēs?

II. 1. We feared lest the archers and slingers might attack the town. 2. They feared that the Helvetii might be terrified by the great danger. 3. They fear that the army will not willingly remain in Gaul. 4. We fear that you will destroy the towns of the enemy. 5. He will fear that Caesar may refrain from battle. 6. I likewise shall fear that the forces may be kept apart. 7. They hastened to the town in order that they might place hurling engines there. 8. We had feared that you would remain in the camp of the enemy.

FUNDITOR

429. READING LESSON

Ā castrīs Rōmānōrum oppidum Rēmōrum, nōmine Bibrax,[1] aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere māgnō impetū[2] Belgae oppūgnāre coepērunt. Cum proelī fīnem nox fēcisset, Iccius, vir summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter Rēmōs, quī tum oppidō praefuerat, nūntium ad Caesarem mīsit:[3] sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse. Caesar statim auxiliō mīsit sagittāriōs et funditōrēs, quōrum adventū oppidum relīquērunt hostēs et ad Caesaris castra omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt. Caesar prīmō[4] supersedēre proeliō cōnstituit, deinde fossam ab utrōque[5] latere collis perdūxit et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōnstituit et tormenta conlocāvit. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus in castrīs relictīs, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās īnstrūxērunt.

---

[1] *Bibrax* (a town of the Remi). [2] *with great force.* [3] Indirect discourse depending on the idea of saying implied in **nūntium mīsit**. [4] *at first.* [5] *each.*

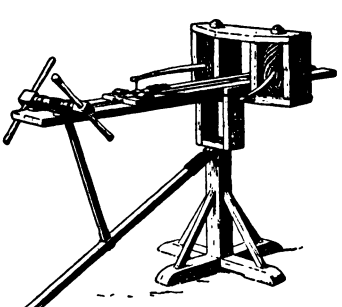
430. Root **dic**, *show, point.*

dīc-ō, *say, tell*	**in-dex**, *pointer, witness*	**ab-dīc-ō**, ——?
dic-tā-tiō, *a saying often*	**iū-dex**, *law speaker, judge*	**prae-dīc-ō**, ——?
ē-dic-tum, *edict*	**iū-dic-ium**, ——?	**prae-dic-tiō**, ——?

ENG. DER. — Diction, dictionary, dictate, ditto, judge, edict, benediction. Form others.

431. **WORD LIST X**

*abscīdō	*dēligō	*impōnō	pecus	*supersedeō
**adeō	Dēlos	**ineō	**pereō	testis
*advocō	*dīmittō	*item	phalanx	tingō
antīquitus	discipulus	**iūs	*plērusque	tormentum
Athēnae	*distineō	**iūstitia	*proficīscor	*trahō
bēlua	*ēgredior	Lābiēnus	quaestor	umerus
clāva	**ēnāscor	libenter	*quō	ut
*cōgō	**eō	liber	Rēmī	uxor
*commoveō	*expellō	littera	*rēs frūmentāria	valeō
*condūcō	fīō	*magistrātus	revellō	vallēs
*cōnfīdō	frūstrā	**mālō	*Rōma	venēnātus
*coniūrō	funditor	**nātiō	rūmor	vereor
*conlocō	Galba	**nāvicula	rūs	vērō
*cōnsentiō	*gēns	**nāvigō	**sagitta	*vīvō
*cōnsilium	Herculēs	*nē	**sagittārius	**volō
cōnsūmō	*hospes	Nemea	**statim	**voluptās
Curēs	hydra	**nōlō	**statuō	*vulnerō
*dēdō	Iccius	*orior	Suessiōnēs	



TORMENTUM

LESSON LXIV

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, THIRD CONJUGATION — RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

432. **Active**

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
SING. 1.	**rega-m**	**rege-re-m**	**rēx-eri-m**	**rēx-isse-m**
SING. 2.	**regā-s**	**rege-rē-s**	**rēx-eri-s**	**rēx-issē-s**
SING. 3.	**rega-t**	**rege-re-t**	**rēx-eri-t**	**rēx-isse-t**
PLUR. 1.	**regā-mus**	**rege-rē-mus**	**rēx-eri-mus**	**rēx-issē-mus**
PLUR. 2.	**regā-tis**	**rege-rē-tis**	**rēx-eri-tis**	**rēx-issē-tis**
PLUR. 3.	**rega-nt**	**rege-re-nt**	**rēx-eri-nt**	**rēx-isse-nt**

433. **Passive**

SING. 1.	**rega-r**	**rege-re-r**	**rēctus sim**	**rēctus essem**
SING. 2.	**regā-ris(re)**	**rege-rē-ris(re)**	**rēctus sīs**	**rēctus essēs**
SING. 3.	**regā-tur**	**rege-rē-tur**	**rēctus sit**	**rēctus esset**
PLUR. 1.	**regā-mur**	**rege-rē-mur**	**rēctī sīmus**	**rēctī essēmus**
PLUR. 2.	**regā-minī**	**rege-rē-minī**	**rēctī sītis**	**rēctī essētis**
PLUR. 3.	**rega-ntur**	**rege-re-ntur**	**rēctī sint**	**rēctī essent**

Note vowel changes from the Present Indicative (**63**), and compare with the Future Indicative (**128**).

Inflect as above, **dūcō**, **mittō**, **vincō**.

434. Examine the following: —

1. **Rēmī lēgātōs mittunt quī dīcant,** *the Remi send ambassadors to say, that they may say* (who shall or may say).
2. **Rēmī lēgātōs mīsērunt quī dīcerent,** *the Remi sent ambassadors to say, that they might say* (who should say).

Observe that **quī dīcant** and **quī dīcerent** are equivalent respectively to **ut dīcant** and **ut dīcerent**, and that they express purpose.

RULE. — Clauses introduced by relatives and used to express purpose, have their verbs in the Subjunctive, and follow the general law for the sequence of tenses (**410**).

435. VOCABULARY

laqueus, ī, m., *noose, snare.*
nix, nivis, f., *snow.*
tumultus, ūs, m., *tumult.*
vadum, ī, n., *ford.*
exsistō, ere, stitī, —, *spring forth, appear.*
implicō, āre, āvī, ātus, *entangle, enfold.*
moror, ārī, ātus sum, *delay.*
praemittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *send forward.*
trānseō, īre, īvī (iī), itus, *cross over.*

436. EXERCISES

I. 1. In monte aper mīrā māgnitūdine erat. 2. Eurystheus Herculem mīsit quī aprum occīderet. 3. Aper quem Herculēs cēpit laqueīs implicātus est. 4. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. 5. Caesar funditōrēs sagittāriōsque praemīsit, quī āgmen hostium morārentur. • 6. Ibi, vadīs repertīs, partem suōrum mīlitum trādūcere cōnātī sunt quī hostēs vincerent. 7. Caesar certior factus ab lēgātō, omnem equitātum, funditōrēs, sagittāriōs pontem trādūcit quī oppidum dēfendant. 8. Hāc rē statim per speculātōrēs cognitā, Caesar exercitum castrīs continuit. 9. Prīmā lūce cōnfīrmātā rē ab explōrātōribus omnem exercitum, quī āgmen hostium interclūderet, praemīsit. 10. Prīmōs quī trānsierant equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt.

II. 1. A large wild boar appeared in the mountains. 2. Caesar sent the tenth legion to defend (which should defend) the camp. 3. The lieutenant sent certain soldiers to cut down the bridge. 4. The Remi sent ambassadors to say that they had not conspired against the Roman people. 5. The king had been called by the senate, a friend of the Roman people. 6. Some of the enemy had been sent to storm the fortress. 7. The lieutenant was in command of the town which they stormed.

437. READING LESSON: *Erymanthius Aper*

Exstitit in monte Erymanthiō[1] aper mīrā māgnitūdine. Hunc capere Herculēs iussus est ab rēge; itaque statim profectus est. Per nivēs diū īnsecūtus aprum, tandem laqueīs implicātum capere potuit et ad Eurystheum rettulit.

[1] *Erymanthian* (belonging to Erymanthus, a mountain range in Arcadia).

438. Root **es**, *be, exist.*

s-um (es + um), *am*	**in-s-um**, ——?	**ab-s-entia**, ——?
inter-s-um, ——?	**sub-s-um**, ——?	**es-s-entia**, ——?
super-s-um, ——?	**ab-s-ēns**, *absent*	**prae-s-entia**, ——?

ENG. DER. — Entity, essential, present, interest, absentee, quintessence.

LESSON LXV

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, FOURTH CONJUGATION — CLAUSES OF RESULT

439. **Active**

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
SING. 1.	**audia-m**	**audī-re-m**	**audīv-eri-m**	**audīv-isse-m**
SING. 2.	**audiā-s**	**audī-rē-s**	**audīv-eri-s**	**audīv-issē-s**
SING. 3.	**audia-t**	**audī-re-t**	**audīv-eri-t**	**audīv-isse-t**
PLUR. 1.	**audiā-mus**	**audī-rē-mus**	**audīv-eri-mus**	**audīv-issē-mus**
PLUR. 2.	**audiā-tis**	**audī-rē-tis**	**audīv-eri-tis**	**audīv-issē-tis**
PLUR. 3.	**audia-nt**	**audī-re-nt**	**audīv-eri-nt**	**audīv-isse-nt**

440. **Passive**

SING. 1.	**audia-r**	**audī-re-r**	**audītus sim**	**audītus essem**
SING. 2.	**audiā-ris(re)**	**audī-rē-ris(re)**	**audītus sīs**	**audītus essēs**
SING. 3.	**audiā-tur**	**audī-rē-tur**	**audītus sit**	**audītus esset**
PLUR. 1.	**audiā-mur**	**audī-rē-mur**	**audītī sīmus**	**audītī essēmus**
PLUR. 2.	**audiā-minī**	**audī-rē-minī**	**audītī sītis**	**audītī essētis**
PLUR. 3.	**audia-ntur**	**audī-re-ntur**	**audītī sint**	**audītī essent**

441. Examine the following: —

1. **Flūmen erat tam altum ut sine nāvibus trānsīrī nōn posset,** *the river was so deep that it could not be crossed without boats.*
2. **Mīlitēs ita fortiter pūgnāvērunt ut oppidum expūgnārent,** *the soldiers fought so bravely that they took the town.*
3. **Nōn dubitō quīn oppidum mūniant,** *I do not doubt that they will fortify the town.*

4. **Eum continēre nōn potuī quīn castra mūniret,** *I could not restrain him from fortifying the camp.*

Observe that the subordinate clauses above express result, that they take the Subjunctive, that they follow the law of sequence of tenses (**410**), that the affirmative particle is **ut**, the negative **ut nōn**.

Observe that in 3 and 4 the Subjunctive is used after **quīn** (**quī nōn**).

RULES. — 1. In clauses of result the Subjunctive is used with **ut** affirmative, and **ut nōn** negative.

2. After expressions of doubt, hindrance, and the like, the Subjunctive with **quīn** is used.

NOTE. — Clauses of result are very often introduced by **ita**, *thus, so;* **tālis, e**, *such;* **tantus, a, um**, *so great;* **tam**, *so.*

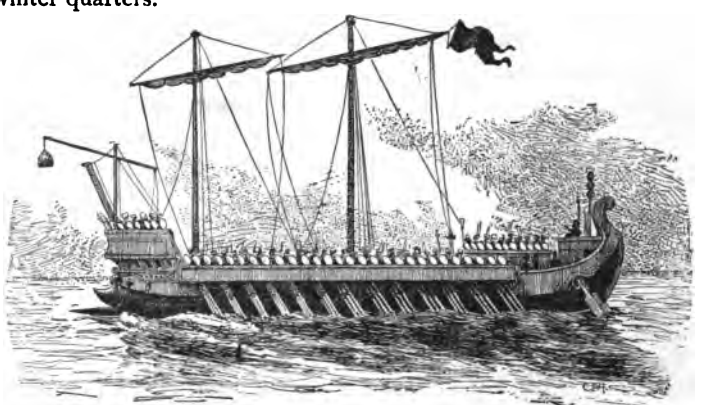
442. VOCABULARY

Axona, ae, f., *the Axona* (Aisne).
captīvus, ī, m., *captive.*
hasta, ae, f., *spear, lance.*
īnsidiae, ārum, f. pl., *ambush.*
nāvis, is, f., *boat, ship.*
aggredior, ī, gressus sum, *attack, approach.*
dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *point out, show.*
dubitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *doubt, hesitate.*
fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus, *deceive, cheat.*
populor, ārī, ātus sum, *ravage.*
quīn, conj., *but that, that, that not.*

443. EXERCISES

I. 1. Hostēs ita perterritī sunt ut statim arma trāderent. 2. Clāmor erat tantus ut mīlitēs nōn vōcem imperātōris audīrent. 3. Tempus erat tam breve ut castra nōn mūnīrēmus. 4. Caesar nōn dubitāvit quīn mīlitēs pontem interscinderent. 5. Diū atque ācriter in eō locō pūgnātum est, ut multī occīderentur. 6. Captīvī ita fallēbantur ut castra hostium dēmōnstrārent. 7. Hostēs tam celeriter contendērunt ut ad oppidum sub vesperum venīrent. 8. Eā rē cōnstitūtā, māgnō cum strepitū ēgressī castrīs fēcērunt ut similis fugae profectiō vidērētur. 9. Hostēs impedītōs in flūmine nostrī aggressī māgnum eōrum numerum occīdērunt. 10. Tam ācriter pūgnātum est ab hostibus ut nostrī itinere prohibērentur.

II. 1. Caesar, fearing an ambush, kept his army and cavalry in camp. 2. The soldiers fought so fiercely that they took the town within three hours. 3. I do not doubt that Caesar will fortify the camp. 4. I did not doubt that the centurion would hear the shout. 5. The river was so deep that they always used boats. 6. The mountains were so high that the soldiers feared to cross. 7. They had had great hopes, but nevertheless they were deceived. 8. The snow was so deep that the soldiers came into winter quarters.



NAVIS

444. READING LESSON

Equitēs hostium cum nostrīs prō palūde, quae erat inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum, contendērunt. Caesar cōpiās suās in castra redūxit. Hostēs statim ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam properāvērunt, quod[1] esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt ut castellum, cuī praeerat lēgātus, expūgnārent pontemque interscinderent. Caesar omnēs equitēs et funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. In eō locō ācriter pūgnātum est. Nostrī hostēs in flūmine impedītōs aggressī māgnum eōrum numerum occīdērunt.

[1] *which, as has been shown, was behind our camp.*

Cōnsiliō convocātō, hostēs domum contendere et fīnēs suōs dēfendere cōnstituērunt. Eā rē cōnstitūtā, secundā vigiliā[1] māgnō cum tumultū castrīs ēgressī sunt. Caesar, īnsidiās veritus, cōpiās suās castrīs continuit. Prīmā lūce, omnēs equitēs praemīsit, quī māgnum hostium numerum interfēcērunt.

445. Root **ag**, *drive*.

ag-ō, *drive*	**ag-i-tō**, *put in motion*	**ag-i-tā-tiō**, ——?
āg-men, *line of army*	**ag-ilis**, *agile*	**cōgō** (**con**+**agō**), *drive together*
āc-tor, ——?	**ex-ig-uus**, *driven out, scanty*	**ex-ig-ō**, *drive out*

ENG. DER. — Acre, act, agriculture, cogent, agent, cogitate, ache.

LESSON LXVI

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, THIRD CONJUGATION, VERBS IN -iō — RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

446. **Active**

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT
SING.	1. **capia-m**	**cape-re-m**, etc.
	2. **capiā-s**	PERFECT
	3. **capia-t**	**cēp-eri-m**, etc.
PLUR.	1. **capiā-mus**	PLUPERFECT
	2. **capiā-tis**	**cēp-isse-m**, etc.
	3. **capia-nt**	

447. **Passive**

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT
SING.	1. **capia-r**	**cape-re-r**, etc.
	2. **capiā-ris** (**re**)	PERFECT
	3. **capiā-tur**	**captus sim**, etc.
PLUR.	1. **capiā-mur**	PLUPERFECT
	2. **capiā-minī**	**captus essem**, etc.
	3. **capia-ntur**	

Note resemblance to the Subjunctive of the Fourth Conjugation.

[1] *in the second watch.*

448. Examine the following: —

1. **Erant quī venīrent,** *there were some who came.*
2. **Nēmō erat quīn pūgnāret,** *there was no one who did not fight.*
3. **Nēmō est quī hōc nōn intellegat,** *there is no one who does not know this.*
4. **Quis est quī nesciat?** *who is there that does not know?*

Observe that the above sentences contain expressions of existence and non-existence, and that the act of the verb is expressed as characteristic of the subject.

RULE. — The Subjunctive is used, especially after expressions of existence and non-existence, and questions implying a negative answer, to express a characteristic or essential quality of the subject (Subjunctive of Characteristic).

449. VOCABULARY

Arcadia, ae, f., *Arcadia.*
cervus, ī, m., *stag.*
contumēlia, ae, f., *affront, insult.*
glōria, ae, f., *glory.*
indīgnitās, ātis, f., *indignity.*
aēneus, a, um, *of brass, brazen.*
dīgnus, a, um, *worthy.*
indīgnus, a, um, *unworthy.*
nesciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, *be ignorant, not know.*
pandō, ere, ī, passus, *spread out, extend.*
putō, āre, āvī, ātus, *think.*
sequor, ī, secūtus sum, *follow.*

450. EXERCISES

I. 1. Nēmō erat in Caesaris castrīs quīn (quī nōn) libenter prō glōriā ducis interficerētur. 2. Quis est quī eum sequī dubitet? 3. In Arcadiam vēnit Herculēs ut cervum aureīs cornibus pedibusque aēneīs redūceret. 4. Quis est quī contumēliās indīgnitātēsque facile patiātur? 5. Quis est quem amīcī suī nōn laudent? 6. Flūmen trānsīvit quō facilius hostēs sequerētur. 7. Mulierēs et puerī,[1] passīs manibus, ad Caesarem contendērunt ut ab eō condiciōnēs pācis acciperent. 8. Neque erat is quī lēgātus ad exercitum mit-

[1] *children.*

terētur. 9. Quis est quī amīcīs libenter iniūriam faciat? 10. Virgulam dēcerpsit ut in aquam eam iniceret.

II. 1. They say that a stag with brazen feet lives in Arcadia. 2. There is no one who is bringing together all the forces of the enemy. 3. Hercules came into Arcadia in order to capture the stag of Diana. 4. They sent him to Rome to suffer all insults and indignities. 5. Who is there that will not kill the enemies of the Roman people? 6. Diana was angry because Hercules was leading away the stag. 7. There was no one in the army who did not follow willingly into the territory of the enemy. 8. He went out of the city by night in order to flee into a safe place.

DIANA

451. READING LESSON: *Cervus Diānae*[1]

Antīquitus vīvēbat in Arcadiā cervus cornibus aureīs pedibusque aēneīs, Diānae sacer. Eurystheus Herculem iussit eum sequī, capere, ad sē dūcere. Diū secūtus est cervum, capere autem nōn poterat. Dēnique sagittīs vulnerātum cēpit et redūcēbat. In itinere vērō Diānae īvit obviam,[2] quae erat īrāta quod cervus captus est. Plācāta autem dictīs Herculis permīsit ut eum abdūceret.

452. Root **ten**, *stretch, hold.*

ten-dō, *stretch*	**ten-āx**, —— ?	**ten-ui-ter**, —— ?
ten-eō, *hold*	**ten-āc-iter**, *firmly*	**ten-ui-tās**, —— ?
ten-er, *tender*	**ten-āc-i-tās**, —— ?	**ten-u-ō**, *make thin*

ENG. DER. — Tend, tenant, tender, tennis, tenement, tense, tent, tentacle, tenure, contend, tension.

---

[1] *Diana, goddess of the chase.* [2] **īvit obviam**, *met.*

LESSON LXVII

REVIEW OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD — INDIRECT QUESTIONS

453. Review carefully **400, 416–417, 424–425, 432–433, 439–440, 446–447.**

454. Examine the following: —

1. **Quid dīcis?** *what are you saying?* **Sciō quid dīcās,** *I know what you are saying.*
2. **Quid dīxistī?** *what did you say?* **Sciō quid dīxeris,** *I know what you said.*
3. **Quid dīxistī?** *what did you say?* **Scīvī quid dīcerēs,** *I knew what you were saying.*
4. **Quid dīxistī?** *what have you said?* **Scīvī quid dīxissēs,** *I knew what you had said.*
5. **Ubi est?** *where is he?* **Sciō ubi sit,** *I know where he is.*
6. **Unde vēnit?** *whence has he come?* **Scīvī unde vēnisset,** *I knew whence he had come.*

Observe that in each case the first sentence is introduced by an interrogative word and is independent, that the dependent clause of the second sentence in each case is introduced by the same interrogative word and contains the same substance as the first, although it has not the form of a question.

The first is called a direct question, the second an indirect question.

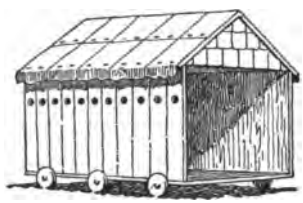
RULE. — The Subjunctive mood is used in indirect questions.

Such questions may be introduced by interrogative pronouns, adjectives, and adverbs, and by the particles **num** and **nē**.

Review rules for sequence of tenses (**410**).

455. VOCABULARY

agger, eris, m., *mound.*
altitūdō, inis, f., *height.*
Bellovacī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Bellovaci.*
Noviodūnum, ī, n., *Noviodunum.*
opus, eris, n., *work.*
vīnea, ae, f., *shed.*
claudō, ere, clausī, clausus, *close up;* **āgmen claudere**, *bring up the rear.*
sciō, īre, scīvī, scītus, *know.*
unde, adv., *whence.*



VINEA

456. EXERCISES

I. 1. Scit unde vēneris. 2. Scīvit unde vēnīrēs. 3. Scit unde veniās. 4. Scīvit unde vēnissēs. 5. Sciet unde vēneris. 6. Altitūdō montis tanta erat ut nēmō ascendere cōnārētur. 7. Tanta erat celeritās operis ut Gallī nōn vidērent quid agerētur. 8. Propter celeritātem Rōmānōrum altitūdinemque aggeris hostēs impetum diūtius sustinēre nōn poterant. 9. Caesar legiōnēs ad Noviodūnum mīsit et ipse āgmen clausit. 10. Ad mūrum vīneās agere coepit ut oppidum caperet. 11. Exercitum in fīnēs Bellovacōrum mīsit, quō facilius eōs superāre posset.

II. 1. You know whence the slingers and archers are coming. 2. We know who ravaged the towns of the enemy. 3. They will know why we are frightened. 4. You know who brought up the rear of Caesar's army. 5. They pushed the sheds up to the wall in order that they might more easily[1] take the town. 6. You know why the height of the wall was so great. 7. So great was

[1] See **456**, I, 11.

the tumult in the camp that it disturbed the minds of all. 8. We know that Labienus is bringing up the rear of Caesar's army.

457. READING LESSON

Postrīdiē ēius diēī Caesar in fīnēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit, et māgnō itinere cōnfectō ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Ibi castrīs mūnītīs, vīneās agere coepit. Māgnitūdine operum et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mīsērunt. Caesar vērō, obsidibus acceptīs, armīsque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs, in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accēpit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūxit, quī pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

458. Root **cap**, *take*.

cap-i-ō, *take*	**cap-tō**, *take eagerly*	**prae-cip-uē**, *especially*
cap-āx, ——?	**cap-tā-tiō**, ——?	**prīn-cip-ium**, *beginning*
cap-āc-i-tās, ——?	**cap-tī-vus**, ——?	**cap-ut**, *head*

Form compound verbs with **con**, **dē**, **ex**, **per**, **re**, and give meanings. Note change in root vowel in forming compounds.

ENG. DER. — Capture, captive, captivate, reception, acceptable. Form other derivatives.

LESSON LXVIII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, **Ferō** — CONDITIONAL SENTENCES, SIMPLE

459. **Active**

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
SING. 1.	**fera-m**	**fer-re-m**	**tul-eri-m**	**tul-isse-m**
SING. 2.	**ferā-s**	**fer-rē-s**	**tul-eri-s**	**tul-issē-s**
SING. 3.	**fera-t**	**fer-re-t**	**tul-eri-t**	**tul-isse-t**
PLUR. 1.	**ferā-mus**	**fer-rē-mus**	**tul-eri-mus**	**tul-issē-mus**
PLUR. 2.	**ferā-tis**	**fer-rē-tis**	**tul-eri-tis**	**tul-issē-tis**
PLUR. 3.	**fera-nt**	**fer-re-nt**	**tul-eri-nt**	**tul-isse-nt**

460. **Passive**

		PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
SING.	1.	**fera-r**	**fer-re-r**	**lātus sim**	**lātus essem**
	2.	**ferā-ris (re)**	**fer-rē-ris (re)**	**lātus sīs**	**lātus essēs**
	3.	**ferā-tur**	**fer-rē-tur**	**lātus sit**	**lātus esset**
PLUR.	1.	**ferā-mur**	**fer-rē-mur**	**lātī sīmus**	**lātī essēmus**
	2.	**ferā-minī**	**fer-rē-minī**	**lātī sītis**	**lātī essētis**
	3.	**fera-ntur**	**fer-re-ntur**	**lātī sint**	**lātī essent**

Inflect in the same way **inferō, cōnferō, dēferō, perferō.**

461. A conditional sentence consists of two clauses, a dependent and an independent.

The dependent clause contains the condition, and is called the Protasis.

The independent clause contains the conclusion, and is called the Apodosis.

The protasis is generally introduced by **sī**, *if*, or one of its compounds.

Simple conditions are found in present or past time.

1. Present: **Sī venit, fīdus est**, *if he comes, he is faithful.*
2. Past: **Sī vēnit, fīdus fuit**, *if he came, he was faithful.*

Observe that in 1 the Present Indicative is used in both clauses, in 2 the Perfect Indicative, and that in both nothing is implied as to the fulfillment of the condition.

462. VOCABULARY

aetās, ātis, f., *age.*
amnis, is, m., *river.*
• **Nerviī, ōrum**, m. pl., *the Nervii.*
stabulum, ī, n., *stable.*
tuba, ae, f., *trumpet.*
vīnum, ī, n., *wine.*
lavō, āre, lāvī, lautus or **lōtus**, *wash;* pass., *bathe, be washed.*
peragō, ere, ēgī, āctus, *accomplish.*
prōiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, *hurl forward, abandon.*
relanguēscō, ere, —, —, *become weak.*

463. EXERCISES

I. 1. Rēx tria mīlia boum quondam habēbat. 2. Hōrum stabula per trīgintā annōs nōn erant lōta. 3. Amnis per stabula

conversus est, itaque ea facile lōta sunt. 4. Sī Herculēs leōnem occīdit, fortis est. 5. Herculēs, sī ea stabula lāvit, māgnum opus perēgit. 6. Quod cīvitās erat māgnā inter Belgās auctōritāte, sēscentōs obsidēs popōscit. 7. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō conlātīs, ab eō locō in fīnēs Nerviōrum contendērunt. 8. Sī mercātōrēs Nerviōs adiērunt, fortēs fuērunt. 9. Nervii nihil vīnī īnferrī patiēbantur quod hīs rēbus animōs suōs relanguēscere exīstimābant. 10. Rōmam venit ut amīcīs auxilium ferat. 11. Rōmam vēnistī ut amīcīs auxilium ferrēs. 12. Nesciō unde cōpia frūmentī in urbem īnferātur.

TUBA

II. 1. If the serpent bit the man, he died. 2. If Hercules caught the wild boar, he was brave. 3. If Hercules has his club and arrows, he is defending himself. 4. I do not know why the boys are bearing arms. 5. Some could not fight on account of age, others did not dare to fight. 6. I know whence you are bringing the swords and shields. 7. They sent us to bring a supply of grain into the camp. 8. They accused the rest of the Belgians, because they had surrendered themselves to the Roman people. 9. Would that you had not brought war upon our allies.

464. READING LESSON: *Stabula Augēae*

Herculēs, postquam cervum cēpit, difficilius opus facere iussus est. Augēās,[1] rēx Ēlidis, mīlia tria boum habēbat, quōrum stabula per trīgintā annōs nōn erant lōta. Herculēs autem Augēan adiit eīque dīxit: "Ūnō diē haec stabula lavābō. Vīsne mihi, hōc factō, decimam boum partem dare?" Respondit Augēās: "Libenter dabō." Tum Herculēs, amne per stabula conversō, opus facillimē intrā ūnum diem perēgit. Augēās autem bovēs dare nōlēbat, quod Eurystheus Herculem stabula lavāre iusserat. Itaque Herculēs rēgī bellum īnfert et eum atque ēius fīliōs interfēcit.

[1] **Augēās, ae,** m., *Augeas,* king of Elis.

465. Root **reg**, *stretch, guide.*

reg-ō, *rule*	**reg-iō**, *region*	**reg-ālis**, ——?
rēx (**reg** + **s**), *king*	**reg-īna**, *queen*	**reg-āliter**, ——?
rēg-nō, *reign*	**rēg-num**, ——?	**rēc-tor**, ——?

ENG. DER. — Regal, rector, direct, correct, correction, incorrigible.

LESSON LXIX

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, **Eō** — FUTURE CONDITIONS

466. **Active, eō**

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
SING. 1.	**ea-m**	**ī-re-m**	**īv-eri-m**	**īv-isse-m**
SING. 2.	**eā-s**	**ī-rē-s**	**īv-eri-s**	**īv-issē-s**
SING. 3.	**ea-t**	**ī-re-t**	**īv-eri-t**	**īv-isse-t**
PLUR. 1.	**eā-mus**	**ī-rē-mus**	**īv-eri-mus**	**īv-issē-mus**
PLUR. 2.	**eā-tis**	**ī-rē-tis**	**īv-eri-tis**	**īv-issē-tis**
PLUR. 3.	**ea-nt**	**ī-re-nt**	**īv-eri-nt**	**īv-isse-nt**

467. **Passive, adeō**

SING. 1.	**adea-r**	**adī-re-r**	**aditus sim**	**aditus essem**
SING. 2.	**adeā-ris** (**re**)	**adī-rē-ris** (**re**)	**aditus sīs**	**aditus essēs**
SING. 3.	**adeā-tur**	**adī-rē-tur**	**aditus sit**	**aditus esset**
PLUR. 1.	**adeā-mur**	**adī-rē-mur**	**aditī sīmus**	**aditī essēmus**
PLUR. 2.	**adeā-minī**	**adī-rē-minī**	**aditī sītis**	**aditī essētis**
PLUR. 3.	**adea-ntur**	**adī-re-ntur**	**aditī sint**	**aditī essent**

Inflect in both active and passive, **trānseō** and **praetereō** (*pass by*).

468. Future conditions are divided into two classes, more vivid and less vivid.

More vivid or probable:

1. **Sī veniet, laetus erō**, *if he comes* (*shall come*), *I shall be glad.*
2. **Sī vēnerit, laetus erō**, *if he comes* (*shall have come*), *I shall be glad.*

Less vivid, or possible:

1. **Sī veniat, laetus sim,** *if he should come, I should be glad.*
2. **Sī vēnerit, laetus sim,** *if he should come (should have come), I should be glad.*

1. Observe that in the more vivid future condition, the Future or Future Perfect Indicative is used in the protasis, and the Future Indicative in the apodosis, and that necessarily the condition is not yet fulfilled.

2. Observe that in the less vivid future condition, the Present or Perfect Subjunctive is used in the protasis, and the Present Subjunctive in the apodosis, and that necessarily the condition is not yet fulfilled. Note also that in the Latin in the future condition there is greater precision in regard to time than in the English.

3. The Future and Future Perfect Indicative are both translated by the English Present, and the Present and Perfect Subjunctive by our Potential, with *should.*

RULES. — 1. The Future (or Future Perfect) Indicative is used in the protasis of more vivid future conditions, and the Future Indicative in the apodosis.

2. The Present (or Perfect) Subjunctive is used in the protasis of less vivid future conditions, and the Present Subjunctive in the apodosis.

469. VOCABULARY

arbor, oris, f., *tree.*
cōnsuetūdō, inis, f., *custom.*
mūnīmentum, ī, n., *defense.*
nātūra, ae, f., *nature.*
saepēs, is, f., *hedge.*
testūdō, inis, f., *roof of shields, testudo.*
tener, era, erum, *tender, young.*
perspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus, *see through, perceive, observe.*
vergō, ere, —, *incline, slope.*
aequāliter, adv., *uniformly.*
nē . . . quidem, adv. phr., *not even.* The emphatic word stands between **nē** and **quidem.**

470. EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar ex captīvīs cognōvit quōsdam ex Belgīs nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnisse. 2. Nervii, quō facilius fīnitimōrum equitā-

tum prohibērent, dēnsissimās saepēs fēcerant. 3. Hae saepēs Nerviīs mūnīmentō māgnō erant, nam nē perspicī quidem poterant. 4. Collis ab summō aequāliter vergēbat ad flūmen. 5. Sī Rōmam ībis, multa et pulchra aedificia vidēbis. 6. Sī Athēnās eās, pulchram et clāram urbem videās. 7. Sī Caesar equitēs praemittat, pontem trānseant. 8. Pontem fēcit ut flūmen sine nāvibus trānsirētur. 9. Sī saepēs faciant, fīnitimōs prohibeant. 10. Sī saepēs facient, fīnitimōs prohibēbunt. 11. Sī Caesar equitēs praemittet, māgnum hostium numerum occīdent.

TESTUDO

II. 1. If he should go to Rome, he would live in a beautiful city. 2. If he goes into Italy, he will see much wine and fertile fields. 3. If you should cross the river, the enemy would not follow. 4. If they see the nature of the hill, they will choose it for a camp. 5. If the enemy should cross the river and fight bravely, they would take the town by assault. 6. After these six legions, Caesar had placed the baggage of the whole army. 7. Two legions which had been enrolled last closed the line, and were a guard to the baggage. 8. They persuaded us to pass by the enemy's camp, and go to the town.

471. READING LESSON

Caesar sēsē Bellovacōs cōnservātūrum esse dīxit; et quod erat cīvitās māgnā inter Belgās auctōritāte, sēscentōs obsidēs popōscit. Hīs trāditīs, omnibusque armīs ex oppidō conlātīs, ab eō locō ad Nerviōs contendit. Quōrum dē nātūrā reperiēbat: mercātōrēs ad sē adīre nōn patī; nihil patī vīnī[1] īnferrī, quod eā rē relanguēscere

[1] Part. Gen. depending on **nihil**.

animōs suōs exīstimārent; esse hominēs ferōs māgnaeque virtūtis;[1] incūsāre reliquōs Belgās quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent.

Cum per eōrum fīnēs trīduī iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suīs nōn amplius mīlia[2] passuum decem abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse atque ibi adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre.

Quīdam ex Belgīs nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt atque hīs dēmōnstrāvērunt inter singulās legiōnēs māgnum numerum impedīmentōrum intercēdere. Itaque Nervii, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset, eam sub sarcinīs adorīrī cōnstituērunt. Sed quod ad hostēs appropīnquābat Caesar sex legiōnēs expedītās[3] dūcēbat; post eās omnia impedīmenta conlocārat;[4] inde duae legiōnēs, quae proximē cōnscrīptae erant, āgmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedīmentīs erant.

472. Root **i**, *go*.

e-ō, *go*	**ad-i-tus**, *approach*	**com-e-s**, *companion*
i-ter, *journey*	**ad-e-ō**, *go to* or *towards*	**in-i-tium**, *beginning*

ENG. DER. — Exit, initial, itinerant, ambition, transit.

LESSON LXX

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, **fīō** — CONDITIONS CONTRARY TO FACT — WORD LIST

473. **Fīō**, used as passive of **faciō**

Princ. Parts, **fīō, fierī, factus sum**

	SING.	PLUR.		
PRESENT	1. **fīa-m**	**fīā-mus**	IMPERFECT	**fie-re-m, fie-rē-s**, etc.
	2. **fīā-s**	**fīā-tis**	PERFECT	**factus sim**, etc.
	3. **fīa-t**	**fīa-nt**	PLUPERFECT	**factus essem**, etc.

[1] *of great valor;* Gen. of quality. [2] Acc. of extent of space; **amplius** does not influence the construction here: *not more than ten miles.* [3] *unincumbered.* [4] Contracted Pluperf. for **conlocāverat.**

474. Examine the following: —

1. **Sī pater mē timēret, ab ēius oculīs concēderem,** *if my father feared me, I should withdraw from his sight.*

This implies: My father *does not* fear me, I *do not* withdraw. The condition (protasis) is not fulfilled, the conclusion (apodosis) does not follow.

2. **Sī pater mē timuisset, ab ēius oculīs concēdissem,** *if my father had feared me, I should have withdrawn from his sight.*

This implies: My father *did not* fear me, I *did not* withdraw. The condition was not fulfilled, the conclusion did not follow.

Observe carefully in the above that the condition in each case states what is not a fact, and that the conclusion does not follow.

Observe that in both protasis and apodosis the verbs are in the Subjunctive, that in 1 they are both in the Imperfect, and express present time, and that in 2 they are both in the Pluperfect, and express past time.

RULE. — In conditions contrary to fact, the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are used in both protasis and apodosis, the Imperfect to express present time, and the Pluperfect to express past time.

475. Examine the following: —

1. **Nisi id fieret, nōn adessem,** *if this were not being done, I should not be here.* It is being done, I am here.
2. **Nisi id factum esset, nōn adfuissem,** *if this had not been done, I should not have been here.* It did take place, I was here.

Observe that the same points are true of these two sentences as of those in **474**, except that the statements of the protases and apodoses are in the negative form.

Note also that the same rule holds.

476. VOCABULARY

avis, is, f., *bird.*
pater, tris, m., *father.*
penna, ae, f., *feather, wing.*
ratiō, ōnis, f., *plan.*
rōstrum, ī, n., *beak.*
sīstrum, ī, n., *clapper, rattle.*
strepitus, ūs, m., *noise, din.*
arbitror, ārī, ātus sum, *think, suppose.*
exterreō, ēre, uī, itus, *frighten forth.*
incitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *urge on, incite.*
volō, āre, āvī, ātus, *fly.*

477. EXERCISES

I. 1. Avēs nisi pennās habērent volāre nōn possent. 2. Avēs, nisi ab Hercule exterritae essent, nōn essent interfectae. 3. Sī Caesar aliam proelī ratiōnem cēpisset, celeriter omnēs hostēs vīcisset. 4. Nisi māgnus strepitus factus esset, avēs nōn essent perterritae. 5. Sī cōnsul fīās, omnēs hostēs vincās. 6. Sī imperātor factus essēs, omnēs hostēs vīcissēs. 7. Nunquam avēs vīdimus quibus erant rōstra aēnea. 8. Sī māgnum strepitum sīstrō aēneō fēcisset, omnēs avēs terruisset. 9. Sī equum incitāvisset, celeriter ad castra pervēnisset. 10. Arbitrātus est, hīs victīs, sē exercitum in fīnēs Aeduōrum dūcere posse.

II. 1. If I had seen birds with brazen feathers, beaks, and feet, I should have killed them with my arrows. 2. If I had not urged on my horse, I should not have arrived at the city. 3. If you had not become consul, you would not have led the army into the enemy's territory. 4. If a new plan of battle were made, we should conquer the enemy. 5. If the birds had not flown out of the marsh, they would not have been killed. 6. If he should become king, he would enroll many legions in Italy. 7. The legions which had been most recently enrolled fought bravely. 8. They ran down with incredible speed to the river in order that they might contend there with the enemy.

478. READING LESSON: *Avēs Stymphāliae*[1]

Eurystheus Herculem iussit interficere avēs quae, pedibus et rōstrīs et pennīs aēneīs,[2] ad Stymphālum in lacū vīvēbant. Eae

[1] *The Stymphalian birds.*

[2] Abl. of quality.

avēs vērō pennīs prō sagittīs ūtēbantur, et, hominibus interfectīs, eōrum carne[1] vescēbantur. Herculēs autem strepitum māgnum sīstrō aēneō fēcit, quō exterritae avēs prōvolāvērunt et ab Hercule interfectae sunt.

HERCULES AND THE STYMPHALIAN BIRDS

479. Root **luc**, *shine*.

lūc-e-ō, *shine*
lūx (**luc** + **s**), *light*
lū-men (**luc** + **men**), *light*
lūc-us, *sacred grove* (the shining place)
lū-na (**luc** + **na**), *moon*
lūs-trō, *light up*
in-lūs-tris, ——?
lūc-idus, ——?

ENG. DER. — Luster, illustrious, illumine, lucid, lunatic.

480. WORD LIST XI

aēneus
*aequāliter
aetās
agger
*aggredior
*altitūdō
amnis
arbitror
arbor
Arcadia
*avis
Axona
Bellovacī
*captīvus
cervus
*claudō
*āgmen claudō
*cōnferō
*cōnsuētūdō
contumēlia
dēmōnstrō
**dīgnus
*exsistō
*exterreō
*fallō
glōria
hasta
*implicō
incitō
**indīgnitās
**indīgnus
īnsidiae
laqueus
lavō
moror
*mūnīmentum
*nāvis
**nē . . . quidem
**nesciō
nix
Noviodūnum
opus
pandō
*pater
penna
*peragō
*perspiciō
*populor
*prōiciō
*proximē
**quīn
ratiō
relanguēscō
rōstrum
saepēs
**sciō
*sequor
sīstrum
*stabulum
strepitus
*tālis
tener
testūdō
*trānseō
tuba
*tumultus
*unde
vadum
vergō
**vīnea
**vīnum
*volō

[1] from **carō**, **carnis**, *flesh*, Abl. with **vescēbantur**. See **316**.

LESSON LXXI

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, **Volō** AND ITS COMPOUNDS— NOUN AND ADJECTIVE REVIEW

481.

	Volō		**Nōlō**		**Mālō**	
	PRESENT SING.	IMPERF.	PRESENT SING.	IMPERF.	PRESENT SING.	IMPERF.
1.	**veli-m**	**velle-m**	**nōli-m**	**nōlle-m**	**māli-m**	**mālle-m**
2.	**velī-s**	**vellē-s**, etc.	**nōlī-s**	**nōllē-s**, etc.	**mālī-s**	**māllē-s**, etc.
3.	**veli-t**		**nōli-t**		**māli-t**	
	PLUR.	PERF.	PLUR.	PERF.	PLUR.	PERF.
1.	**velī-mus**	**volu-eri-m**	**nōlī-mus**	**nōlu-eri-m**	**mālī-mus**	**mālu-eri-m**
		etc.		etc.		etc.
2.	**velī-tis**	PLUP.	**nōlī-tis**	PLUP.	**mālī-tis**	PLUP.
3.	**veli-nt**	**volu-isse-m**	**nōli-nt**	**nōlu-isse-m**	**māli-nt**	**mālu-isse-m**
		etc.		etc.		etc.

Observe that the irregularities appear in the Present tense only.

482. Review carefully nouns and adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

483. VOCABULARY

condiciō, ōnis, f., *condition, terms.*
memoria, ae, f., *memory.*
rēs mīlitāris, reī mīlitāris, f., *military affairs.*
adversus, a, um, *opposite, adverse.*
adversō colle, *uphill.*
prīstinus, a, um, *former.*
cohortor, ārī, ātus sum, *encourage.*
pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus, *drive, beat.*
prōvolō, āre, āvī, ātus, *fly forth, rush forth.*
recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *take back.*
sē recipere, *betake oneself, draw back, retreat.*
trānsgredior, gredī, gressus sum, *cross over.*
deinde, adv., *thereupon.*
identidem, adv., *repeatedly.*

484. EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesaris ratiō reī mīlitāris nōn erat eadem quae[1] hostium. 2. Multī mīlitēs adversō colle ad castra nostra sē recēpērunt.

[1] *the same as that.*

3. Sī dux mīlitēs cohortārī voluisset, fortiter ūsque ad vesperum pūgnāvissent. 4. Sī flūmen trānsgredī nōlīs, tē ibi exspectem. 5. Sī vērō trānsgredī mālīs, tē sequar et tēcum oppida hostium oppūgnem. 6. Prīmum ad silvās identidem sē recēpērunt, deinde omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in hostēs fēcērunt. 7. Hīs pulsīs, sagittāriōs funditōrēsque ad rīpam flūminis mīsērunt ut ibi cum hostibus contenderent. 8. Longa ōrātiōne mīlitēs monuit ut memoriam virtūtis prīstinae retinērent.

II. 1. He advises us to be willing to fight for our leader. 2. If you were willing to retain the memory of your former valor, you could[1] conquer all your enemies. 3. If I could make terms of peace, I should prefer not to fight. 4. If they should be unwilling to hasten uphill to our camp, they would not bring aid to us before the battle. 5. We drove the enemy from the city lest they should wish to make an attack upon our friends. 6. They knew what we wished. 7. If we had preferred to fight, we might have taken the town. 8. If I had been willing to go to Italy, I might have seen you in Rome.[2]

485. Reading Lesson

Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriīsque flūmen trānsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsērunt, quī identidem sē in silvās ad suōs recēpērunt. Deinde subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs quī in opere occupātī erant contendērunt. Caesar mīlitēs nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus quam ut suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent proelium commīsit. Īnstrūctō exercitū magis ut[3] locī nātūra, quam ut reī mīlitāris ōrdō postulābat, fortūnae ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

---

[1] Use proper form of **possum**.

[2] **Rōmae**.

[3] **ut**, *as*. When used with the Indicative **ut** means *as* or *when*.

486. Root **mu, mov,** *move.*

mov-e-ō, *move*	**mō-tus,** *a moving*	**mō-bilitās,** ——?
mō-tiō, ——?	**mo-x,** *soon*	**mū-tō,** *move, change*
mō-tor, ——?	**mō-bilis,** *movable*	**mū-tā-tiō,** ——?
mō-mentum, *weight*	**mo-llis,** *easily moved*	**pro-mo-veō,** ——?

ENG. DER. — Motion, movable, mobile, motor, moment, motive, mob.

LESSON LXXII

Cum CAUSAL AND CONCESSIVE — NOUN AND ADJECTIVE REVIEW

487. Examine the following: —

1. **Cum nōbīs nāvēs nōn essent, trānsīre nōn poterāmus,** *since we did not have boats, we could not cross.*
2. **Cum nōbīs nāvēs essent, tamen nōn trānsīvimus,** *although we had boats, yet we did not cross.*

Observe that in 1 **cum** is causal — *since;* that in 2 **cum** is concessive — *although.*

RULE. — **Cum** causal and concessive is followed by the Subjunctive.

488. Make a careful review of consonant stems, nouns, and adjectives of the Third Declension (**581, 583, 591, 592**).

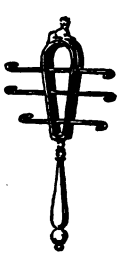
489. VOCABULARY

Crēta, ae, f., *Crete.*
fōrma, ae, f., *form.*
speciēs, ēī, f., *appearance, beauty.*
decumānus, a, um, *decuman, rear.*
īrātus, a, um, *angry, enraged.*
compellō, ere, pulī, pulsus, *compel, drive together, drive.*
corrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus, *destroy.*
ēdō, ere, didī, ditus, *put forth, make, cause.*
resistō, ere, stitī, —, *resist, oppose.*
rūrsus, adv., *again.*
tamen, adv., *still, yet, nevertheless.*

490. EXERCISES

I. 1. Cum bōs mīrā speciē esset, rēx eum nōn sacrificāvit. 2. Cum rēx sacrificāre bovem iussus esset, tamen pulchrum animal trucīdāre nōlēbat. 3. Cum nostrī hostibus fortiter resisterent, tamen ad flūmen compellēbantur. 4. Cum bōs in furōrem āctus esset, multa et pulchra opera corrumpēbat. 5. Hīc bōs māgnam calamitātem ēdēbat, nam in furōrem āctus erat. 6. Rēx, cum īrātus esset, tamen captīvōs nōn interfēcit. 7. Nostrī trānsīre nōn dubitāvērunt et rūrsus resistentēs hostēs in fugam dēdērunt. 8. Omnēs Nervii cōnfertissimō āgmine ad eum locum contendērunt. 9. Ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse perspexerant. 10. Cum bōs in furōrem āctus esset, tamen hunc capere cōnstituit. 11. Cum ācriter pūgnātum esset, tamen nēmō hostem āversum vidēre potuit.

II. 1. Since the island is large and beautiful, we will visit it. 2. Although our men fought bravely, still they could not drive the enemy from that place. 3. Although the bull was large and fierce, still Hercules dared to undertake the work. 4. Since Caesar had encouraged the soldiers, they fought much more fiercely. 5. The bull was of such a beautiful form that the king did not wish to sacrifice him. 6. Although we were not at Rome, we saw many beautiful cities on our journey. 7. Since life is short, let us enjoy the beautiful things which we see every day. 8. Hercules had been ordered to seize the bull of Crete,[1] because it was causing a great calamity on the island.



SISTRUM

491. READING LESSON: *Bōs Crēticus*

Herculēs, postquam avēs Stymphāliās sīstrō aēneō exterruit et aliās sagittīs interfēcit, ad Eurystheum revertit. Tum Eurystheus ad sē Herculem advocāns eum capere bovem in īnsulā Crētā iussit.

[1] **bōs Crēticus.**

Bovem mīrae māgnitūdinis et eximiae fōrmae ē marī ēmīsit Poseidōn.[1] Hunc sacrificāre Mīnos,[2] Crētae rēx, iussus erat. Captus[3] autem bovis speciē alium ēius vice[4] sacrificāvit. Poseidōn vērō īrātus bovem in furōrem ēgit. Tum bōs per tōtam īnsulam māgnam hominum strāgem[5] ēdēbat, et opera agrestia[6] corrumpēbat. Hunc tandem captum Herculēs trāns mare ad Eurystheum portāvit.

492. Root **iug,** *join, yoke.*

iu(n)g-ō, *join*	**iug-ulum,** *collar bone*	**con-iū-rō,** ——?
iug-um, *yoke*	**iū-dex,** *judge*	**iū-mentum,** *yoke-animal*
iū-s, *right*	**iu-beō,** *order*	**iū-s-titia,** ——?

ENG. DER. — Judge, jury, junction, conjugate, just, conjunction, joint, jugular, subjugate.

LESSON LXXIII

TEMPORAL CLAUSES — **Cum** TEMPORAL — NOUN AND ADJECTIVE REVIEW

493. Examine the following: —

1. **Postquam Caesar pervēnit, pontem fierī iussit,** *after Caesar had arrived, he ordered a bridge to be made.*
2. **Ubi Caesar pervēnit, suās cōpiās in castra redūxit,** *when Caesar arrived, he led his forces back into camp.*
3. **Simul ac hostēs id intellēxērunt, fugā salūtem petiērunt,** *as soon as the enemy perceived this, they sought safety in flight.*
4. **Ut Caesar pervēnit, mīlitēs castra mūnīre coepērunt,** *when Caesar arrived, the soldiers began to fortify the camp.*

Observe that **postquam, ubi, simul ac,** and **ut** denote time, and are followed by the Perfect Indicative.

---

[1] *Poseidon* or *Neptune* (god of the sea). [2] *Minos.* [3] *charmed.*
[4] *in its stead.* [5] *destruction.* [6] *of the field.*

494. Examine the following: —

1. **Cum per eōrum fīnēs iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs . . .**, *when he had marched through their territory, he found out from the captives . . .*
2. **Nam tum, cum ex urbe Catilīnam ēiciēbam . . .**, *for at that time when I was hurling Catiline from the city . . .*

Observe that in 1 **cum** is used with the Subjunctive, and in 2 with the Indicative.

RULES. — 1. The particles **postquam, ubi, simul atque (simul ac** or **simul)**, take the Indicative, usually the Perfect.

2. **Cum** temporal is used with the Subjunctive when the circumstance or action depends upon another, or when the time is described. It is used with the Indicative when the time is made emphatic or defined.

NOTE. — In narration **cum** temporal is almost always used with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive.

495. Make a careful review of vowel stems, — nouns and adjectives, **579, 580, 582, 584–590.**

496. VOCABULARY

cālō, ōnis, m., *soldier's servant, camp follower.*
cōnsēnsus, ūs, m., *consent, agreement.*
Trēverī, ōrum, m. *pl., the Treveri.*
turpitūdō, inis, f., *disgrace.*
praeceps, cipitis, *headlong.*
singulāris, e, *peculiar, remarkable.*
mandō, āre, āvī, ātus, *give over, intrust.*
redigō, ere, ēgī, āctus, *drive back, reduce, render.*

497. EXERCISES

I. 1. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī, cum sē in castra reciperent, hostibus perspectīs, rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant. 2. Cālōnēs quoque, cum hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. 3. Quī[1] cum ex equitum et

[1] *when these.*

cālōnum fugā quantō in perīculō et legiōnēs et imperātor versārentur, cognōvissent, summā celeritāte trāns flūmen contendērunt. 4. Dīxērunt sēsē ad quīngentōs, quī arma ferre possent, redāctōs esse. 5. Ubi proelium renovātum est, equitēs fortiter pūgnāvērunt ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent. 6. Simul ac prīma impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab hostibus vīsa sunt, impetum in nostrōs fēcērunt. 7. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, cum cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent, domum contendērunt.

II. 1. As soon as Caesar found out in what place the enemy were, he hastened toward them. 2. When Labienus had seen that the seventh legion was being overcome by the enemy, he sent the tenth legion as an aid to our men. 3. After Caesar came, he began to encourage the soldiers. 4. When Caesar was in Gaul, frequent letters were brought to him. 5. When he had led his troops out from the camp, he drew up a triple line of battle. 6. When this had been announced to Caesar, he hastened to set out from the city. 7. If the town should be taken, they would surrender their arms. 8. As soon as they saw that the tower was being moved, they sought safety in flight.

498. Reading Lesson

Legiōnis nōnae et decimae mīlitēs, quī in sinistrā parte aciēī īnstrūctī erant, hostēs ex locō superiōre compulērunt et multōs eōrum interfēcērunt. Item aliā in parte dīversae[1] duae legiōnēs in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs contendēbant. Nervīī autem cōnfertissimō āgmine ad castra nostra contendērunt. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī, quī prīmō impetū hostium pulsī erant, rūrsus aliam in partem fugā salūtem petēbant.

Caesar, cum suōs urgērī[2] vidēret, in prīmam aciem prōcessit et mīlitēs cohortātus est. Ēius adventū mīlitēs ācrius fortiusque pūgnāre coepērunt, et proelium rūrsus audācius renovātum est.

---

[1] *different.* [2] *to be hard pressed.*

Intereā mīlitēs duārum legiōnum, quae praesidiō impedīmentis fuerant, in summō colle ab hostibus perspiciēbantur, et T. Lābiēnus quī ex locō superiōre quae gererentur vīdit, decimam legiōnem nostrīs mīsit. Hūius legiōnis adventū nostrī ita fortiter pūgnāre coepērunt ut hostēs brevī tempore pellerentur.

PEDES

Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem[1] gente Nerviōrum redāctā, omnium quī supererant cōnsēnsū, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt. Quōs Caesar in dēditiōnem accēpit et fīnitimōs ab iniūriā maleficiōque prohibuit.

499. Root **ped**, *tread.*

pēs, *foot*	**im-ped-iō**, *entangle*	**ped-es-ter**, *on foot*
ped-ēs, *foot soldier*	**ex-ped-iō**, ——?	**im-ped-ī-mentum**, ——?

ENG. DER. — Pedal, pedestal, pedestrian, biped, impede.

LESSON LXXIV

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD — REGULAR VERBS — NOUN REVIEW

500. **Active**

	FIRST CONJ.	SECOND	THIRD	THIRD IN -iō	FOURTH
PRES. SING. 2.	**vocā**	**monē**	**rege**	**cape**	**audī**
PLUR. 2.	**vocā-te**	**monē-te**	**regi-te**	**capi-te**	**audī-te**
FUT. SING. 2.	**vocā-tō**	**monē-tō**	**regi-tō**	**capi-tō**	**audī-tō**
3.	**vocā-tō**	**monē-tō**	**regi-tō**	**capi-tō**	**audī-tō**
PLUR. 2.	**vocā-tōte**	**monē-tōte**	**regi-tōte**	**capi-tōte**	**audī-tōte**
3.	**voca-ntō**	**mone-ntō**	**regu-ntō**	**capiu-ntō**	**audiu-ntō**

[1] *annihilation.*

501. **Passive**

	First Conj.	Second	Third	Third in -iō	Fourth
Pres. Sing. 2.	**vocā-re**	**monē-re**	**rege-re**	**cape-re**	**audī-re**
Plur. 2.	**vocā-minī**	**monē-minī**	**regi-minī**	**capi-minī**	**audī-minī**
Fut. Sing. 2.	**vocā-tor**	**monē-tor**	**regi-tor**	**capi-tor**	**audī-tor**
3.	**vocā-tor**	**monē-tor**	**regi-tor**	**capi-tor**	**audī-tor**
Plur. 2.	——	——	——	——	——
3.	**voca-ntor**	**mone-ntor**	**regu-ntor**	**capiu-ntor**	**audiu-ntor**

Make out and commit to memory a table of the Imperative endings, both active and passive. Observe carefully in the above paradigms the part to which the endings are joined, and note that this part is precisely the same in both voices.

Inflect in the Imperative **laudō, terreō, agō, dīcō,**[1] **dūcō,**[1] **veniō.**

502. Make a careful review of noun forms of the Fourth and Fifth Declensions, **584, 585.**

503. The Imperative is used to express an exhortation, entreaty, or command, but the Subjunctive is often used in its place.

504. Examine the following: —

1. **Mūnīte oppidum,** *fortify the town.*
2. **Meōs līberōs vōbīs permittam; eōs cōnservātōte,** *I shall intrust my children to you; do you guard them carefully.*
3. **Nē mūnīveritis oppidum,** *do not fortify the town.*
4. **Nōlīte**[2] **mūnīre oppidum,** *do not fortify the town.*

Observe that the Present Imperative is used in commands, unless, as in 2, distinct reference is made to future time; that, as in 3, **nē** with the second person of the Perfect Subjunctive, or, as in 4, the Present Imperative of **nōlō** with the Infinitive, is used to express a prohibition.

---

[1] The second singular Present Imperative of **dīcō** is **dīc**, of **dūcō** is **dūc**, of **faciō** is **fac**.

[2] **Nōlīte**, *be unwilling*, second person plural of the Present Imperative of **nōlō**.

RULES. — 1. The Present Imperative is used in commands and entreaties, but the Future Imperative is used when distinct reference is made to future time.

2. In prohibitions, **nē** with the Perfect Subjunctive, or **nōlī** (**nōlīte**) with the Infinitive, is used.

505. VOCABULARY

equa,[1] **ae**, f., *mare*.
interneciō, **ōnis**, f., *destruction, annihilation*.
incolumis, **e**, *safe, unhurt*.
inermis, **e**, *unarmed*.
auferō, **ferre**, **abstulī**, **ablātus**, *carry off* or *away*.
iaciō, **ere**, **iēcī**, **iactus**, *throw, hurl*.
mānsuēfaciō, **ere**, **fēcī**, **factus**, *tame*.
pāscō, **ere**, **pāvī**, **pāstus**, *feed*.
permittō, **ere**, **mīsī**, **missus**, *intrust, permit*.
clam, adv., *secretly*.

506. EXERCISES

I. 1. Pāsce, mī fīlī, meās equās. 2. Permittite līberōs incolumēs vestrīs amīcīs. 3. Aufer[2] equās ferās ad agricolās ut eās mānsuēfaciant. 4. Dīmittāmus lēgātōs in cīvitātēs fīnitimās. 5. Redige hōs inermēs paene ad interneciōnem. 6. Contende, cum hostibus, Lābīene, et tuōs amīcōs dēfende. 7. Dīc mihi quid in animō tibi sit, quō facilius mē dēfendere possim. 8. Nē permīseris nostrōs hostēs incolumēs domum īre. 9. Āgmen claude et cum omnibus cōpiīs ducem in hostēs sequere. 10. Testūdine factā, ad mūrum properāte.

II. 1. Lead the soldiers secretly into the territories of the enemy, in order that they may fortify a camp there. 2. Let us not intrust our children to the hands of our enemies. 3. We shall intrust the town to you; do you defend it with great care. 4. Let us defend our baggage. 5. Hasten to the top of the mountain in order to bear aid to Labienus. 6. Lead the mares into the field, my son, and feed them there. 7. Let us not re-

[1] Dative and Ablative plural, **equābus**.
[2] Present Imperative second singular.

duce these unarmed men to destruction. 8. Do not abandon[1] the hope of safety, but fight bravely until evening.

507. READING LESSON: *Equae Diomēdis*[2]

Opus Herculis octāvum erat equās Diomēdis, rēgis Bistonum,[3] ad Eurystheum dūcere. Hae equae, carne[4] hominum pāstae, māximē ferae erant; Herculēs autem eās cēpit, clam abstulit, ad mare dūxit. Bistonēs secūtī eum adortī sunt. Diū et ācriter pūgnātum est. Tandem, rēge eōrum interfectō, Herculēs Bistonēs vīcit. Corpus rēgis mortuī equābus[5] iēcit, quae, suī dominī carne pāstae, statim mānsuēfactae sunt. Tum dēmum Herculēs incolumis ad Eurystheum cum equābus revertit.

508. Root **cla**, *call.*

clā-m-ō, *call, cry out*	**clā-rus**, *famous*	**clā-ssis**, *fleet*
clā-m-or, ——?	**prae-clā-rus**, ——?	**con-clā-mō**, ——?

ENG. DER. — Clamor, claim, exclaim, class, classical, calendar.

LESSON LXXV

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD, IRREGULAR VERBS — NOUN REVIEW COMPLETED

509.

		Ferō		Nōlō	Eō	Sum	Fīō
		Act.	Pass.				
PRES. SING.	2.	fer	fer-re	nōlī	ī	es	fī
PLUR.	2.	fer-te	feri-minī	nōlī-te	ī-te	es-te	fī-te
FUT. SING.	2.	fer-tō	fer-tor	nōlī-tō	ī-tō	es-tō	fī-tō
	3.	fer-tō	fer-tor	nōlī-tō	ī-tō	es-tō	fī-tō
PLUR.	2.	fer-tōte	——	nōlī-tōte	ī-tōte	es-tōte	fī-tōte
	3.	feru-ntō	feru-ntor	nōlu-ntō	eu-ntō	su-ntō	flu-ntō

---

[1] **dēpōnō.** [2] *Diomedes.* [3] *The Bistones*, a people of Thrace.
[4] *Having been fed upon the flesh.* [5] See **505**, n. 1.

How does the inflection of these irregular verbs differ from that of the regular verbs?

Review carefully **500**.

510. Make a careful review of the rules for gender, **25, 28, 51, 132, 170, 174, 213.**

511. In the following list of words state in tabular form in each case the declension, gender, Genitive singular and plural.

aciēs	castra	flūmen	locus	pōns
adventus	centuriō	gener	lūx	Rhēnus
aestās	cohors	genus	mēns	scūtum
agger	cōpia	homō	mīles	soror
āgmen	diēs	honor	mōns	tempus
agricola	dolus	īgnis	mulier	vectīgal
bellum	domus	iter	multitūdō	vir
bōs	exercitus	lacus	ōrdō	virtūs
caput	fīnis	lēgātiō	palūs	vīs

512. VOCABULARY

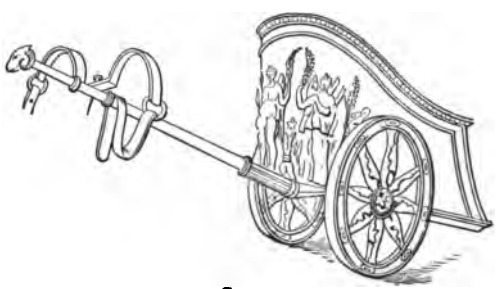
ancora, ae, f., *anchor.*
currus, ūs, m., *chariot, car.*
patria, ae, f., *country.*
praemium, I, n., *reward.*
rēmus, I, m., *oar.*
vēxillum, I, n., *banner.*
victōria, ae, f., *victory.*
apertus, a, um, *open.*
recēns, entis, *recent.*
repentīnus, a, um, *sudden.*
administrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *execute, manage.*
ōrnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *equip.*

ANCORA

513. EXERCISES

I. 1. Ferte mīlitibus prō victōria recentī multa et māgna praemia. 2. Nōlīte patriae vestrae bellum īnferre. 3. Nāvēs

omnibus rēbus celeriter ōrnantur. 4. Este fortēs in perīculō repentīnō. 5. Administrā bene rem mīlitārem. 6. Ēicite, nautae, ancorās ex nāvibus et exspectāte fortiter hostēs. 7. Īte fortiter in proelium et vēxilla ferte in hostēs. 8. Currū per mīlitēs vehitur et eīs dīcit: "Prō patriā fortiter pūgnāte, et, sī necesse erit, moriminī." 9. Suntō fortēs proeliō, domī fīdī et bonī. 10. Fītō cōnsul, sī poteris, et bene omnia administrātō. 11. Per loca aperta īte ad rīpās flūminis ibique castra mūnīte.



CURRUS

II. 1. Do not cast the anchor from the boat, but sail swiftly to Delos. 2. Fight bravely for your country, soldiers, in order that you may bear off the rewards of victory. 3. Equip your boats with oars, for it is necessary to go to Italy. 4. Bear your standards against the enemy with the glad hope of victory. 5. Drive your chariot through the open places in order that you may not be alarmed by any sudden danger. 6. Become wiser[1] every day. 7. Let the soldiers be always brave and faithful. 8. Let the standards be borne by the bravest soldiers, for the fight will be long and fierce.

---

[1] **sapientior.**

LESSON LXXVI

THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE — SOME WAYS OF EXPRESSING PURPOSE

514. The Gerund is a verbal noun governing the same case as its verb, and having the meaning of the English verbal in *-ing*. (Distinguish the English present participle from this verbal.)

515. The Gerund is found only in the oblique cases of the singular.

1. **Bellandī causā,**[1] *for the purpose of waging war.*
2. **Cōnsilium parcendī**[2] **victīs,** *a plan for sparing the conquered.*

516.

Conj.	First	Second	Third	Third in -iō	Fourth
G.	voca-ndī	mone-ndī	rege-ndī	capie-ndī	audie-ndī
D.	voca-ndō	mone-ndō	rege-ndō	capie-ndō	audie-ndō
Ac.	voca-ndum	mone-ndum	rege-ndum	capie-ndum	audie-ndum
Ab.	voca-ndō	mone-ndō	rege-ndō	capie-ndō	audie-ndō

1. Observe carefully the law of formation of the Gerund from the verb stem, and note that, in the Fourth Conjugation and in verbs in -iō of the Third, the verb stem is increased by the addition of **e** before the case endings.

517. Examine the following: —

1. **Magister docet artem legendī,** *the master teaches the art of reading.*
2. **Hī librī idōneī sunt legendō,** *these books are suitable for reading.*
3. **Magister mihi dat librōs ad legendum,** *the master gives me books to read* (for reading).
4. **Magister fit sapiēns legendō,** *the master becomes wise by reading.*

Observe in the above examples the use of the Gerund, governed

---

[1] In this construction **causā** always follows the Gerund.

[2] Note that **parcendī** governs the Dative.

as a noun would be in the four oblique cases by **artem, idōneī, ad,** and **fit,** respectively.

RULE. — The Gerund, as a noun, has the construction of other nouns, and, as a verb, retains its power of governing an object.

518. Examine the following: —

1. **Nūlla erat spēs**
   a. **pācem cōnfīrmandī** (Gerund).
   b. **pācis cōnfīrmandae** (Gerundive).
   } *There was no hope of establishing peace.*

2. **Tempus erat idōneum**
   a. **pācem cōnfīrmandō** (Gerund), rare.
   b. **pācī cōnfīrmandae** (Gerundive).
   } *The time was suitable for establishing peace.*

3. **Mīsit lēgātōs**
   a. **ad pācem cōnfīrmandum** (Gerund), rare.
   b. **ad pācem cōnfīrmandam** (Gerundive).
   } *He sent ambassadors to establish peace.*

4. **Cōnsilia fēcit**
   a. **dē pācem cōnfīrmandō** (Gerund), rare.
   b. **dē pāce cōnfīrmandō** (Gerundive).
   } *He made plans for establishing peace.*

519. 1. Observe carefully the differences between *a* and *b* in each of the above. Note also that the Gerund and Gerundive are translated precisely alike.

2. Observe that the Gerundive is used as an adjective in agreement with a noun which takes the case the Gerund would have had if used.

3. Observe that in the Genitive case either of the above constructions may be used, but that in the other cases the Gerundive is much preferred.

4. Observe that both Gerund and Gerundive are used to express purpose.

RULE. — The Gerundive is used by preference instead of the Gerund when the latter would, if used, take a direct object. This object is then put into the case in which the Gerund, if used, would have been, and the Gerundive agrees with it in gender, number, and case.

520. VOCABULARY

misericordia, ae, f., *compassion.*
multitūdō, inis, f., *multitude, number.*
studium, ī, n., *zeal, desire.*
sapiēns, entis, *wise.*
supplex, icis, *suppliant.*
appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātus, *approach.*
bellō, āre, āvī, ātus, *wage war.*
legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, *collect, read.*
patefaciō, ere, fēcī, factus, *lay open.*
ēgregiē, adv., *excellently.*

521. EXERCISES

I. 1. Omnibus mīlitibus erat māgnum bellandī studium. 2. Spēs māgna oppidī potiundī exercituī iniecta est. 3. Lābiēnus suōs in locum omnibus rēbus idōneum pūgnandō dūxit. 4. Hūc celeriter hostēs contendērunt ut quam minimum[1] spatī ad sē conligendōs armandōsque Rōmānīs relinquerētur. 5. Spēs erat lēgātō rēgnī occupandī. 6. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās annum satis esse arbitrātus est. 7. Agricolās in agrōs mīsit ad frūmentum cōnferendum. 8. Portīs patefactīs, Caesarī sē dēdidērunt, quī condiciōnem pācis accēpit. 9. Misericordiā item in eōs ūsus est. 10. In locum nātūrā ēgregiē mūnītum omnēs cōpiās contulērunt, ut māximā cum multitūdine hostium bellāre possent. 11. Supplicēs, passīs manibus, sē Caesarī[2] ad pedēs prōiēcērunt.

II. 1. Caesar had a great desire for waging war. 2. They went into Gaul for the purpose of bringing together supplies. 3. A great number of wise men came to Caesar, and, with extended hands, begged for peace. 4. These books are not suitable for reading. 5. Their hope of approaching the town was great. 6. He used compassion toward the multitude, for they came to him as suppliants. 7. The camp was excellently fortified, but there were not many men ready to defend it. 8. When the gates are opened, we will go into the city. 9. He led out his soldiers to defend himself. 10. Caesar sent a lieutenant to accomplish all these things.

---

[1] *as little space as possible.* [2] *at Caesar's feet.*

522. READING LESSON

Aduātucī autem, quī omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nerviīs vēnerant, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, ex itinere domum revertērunt, suaque omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt. Id nostrī, vīneīs āctīs turrīque exstrūctā, oppūgnāre coepērunt. Ubi vērō turrim movērī et appropīnquāre moenibus vīdērunt, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt. Hīs Caesar respondit: sē condiciōnem dēditiōnis nūllam acceptūrum esse, nisi armīs trāditīs. Rē nūntiātā, Aduātucī dīxērunt sē factūrōs esse quae imperārentur. Armōrum vērō māgnā multitūdine dē mūrō in fossam iactā, circiter autem tertiā parte cēlātā et in oppidō retentā, portīs patefactīs eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

523. Root **voc**, *call*.

voc-ō, *call*	**vocā-bulum**, *name, word*	**vōc-īferor**, *cry aloud*
vōx (**voc** + **s**), *voice*	**vōc-u-la**, *feeble voice*	**voc-ā-tīvus**, ——?

Form compound verbs with **ā**, **con**, **dē**, **prō**, **re**, and give meanings.

ENG. DER. — Vocal, vocabulary, voice, vocation, vociferate, revoke, vocative.

LESSON LXXVII

THE SUPINE — EXPRESSIONS OF PURPOSE — WORD LIST

524. The Supine is a verbal substantive of the Fourth Declension, found only in the Accusative singular (Former Supine), and in the Ablative singular (Latter Supine): **rogātum, rogātū.**

525. Examine the following: —

1. **Hōc est difficile factū**, *this is difficult to do* (in respect to the doing).
2. **Hōc est fās dictū**, *this is right to say.*

Observe that **factū** and **dictū** express acts in respect to which the quality is asserted.

RULE. — The latter Supine is used with some adjectives and a few other words to express the act in reference to which the quality is asserted.

NOTE. — These adjectives usually denote ease or difficulty, pleasure or displeasure, right or wrong.

526. Examine the following: —

1. **Lēgātī ad eum pācem petītum vēnērunt,** *ambassadors came to him to beg peace.*

Observe that **petītum** expresses the purpose for which the ambassadors came.

RULE. — The former Supine is used with verbs of motion to express the purpose of the motion.

527. Expressions of purpose. — The most common of these are illustrated in the following examples: —

Lēgātī vēnērunt	**ut pācem peterent** **quī pācem peterent** **pācis petendae causā** **pācem petendī causā** **ad pācem petendam** **pācem petītum**	*the ambassadors came to seek peace.*

528. You will observe from these examples that purpose may be expressed by (1) a clause with **ut**, etc., with the Subjunctive, (2) a clause with **quī** and the Subjunctive, (3) the Gerundive or Gerund with **causā**, (4) the Gerundive in the Accusative with **ad**, (5) the former Supine with a verb of motion.

529. VOCABULARY

Amāzōn, onis, f., *an Amazon, a warlike woman.*
ascēnsus, ūs, m., *ascent.*
ēruptiō, ōnis, f., *sally.*
rēgīna, ae, f., *queen.*
rīxa, ae, f., *quarrel, dispute.*
significātiō, ōnis, f., *signal.*
zōna, ae, f., *belt, girdle.*
asportō, āre, āvī, ātus, *carry off* or *away.*
cōnserō, ere, uī, tus, *join, unite;* **manūs cōnserere,** *join battle.*
benīgnē, adv., *kindly.*

530. EXERCISES

I. 1. Amāzonum rēgīna zōnam pulcherrimam quondam habēbat, quam Herculēs ad Eurystheum asportāre iussus est. 2. Herculēs, cum ad Amāzonum terram pervēnisset, ab eīs benīgnē acceptus est. 3. Cum zōnam petītum vēnisset, tamen eum benīgnē accēpērunt. 4. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī mīlitēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidī incolae ā mīlitibus iniūriam acciperent. 5. Caesar lēgātōs ad eōs mīsit, quī dīcerent sē eōs in dēditiōnem acceptūrum esse. 6. Herculēs in terram Amāzonum missus erat ut ad Eurystheum zōnam rēgīnae asportaret. 7. Mīlitēs in agrōs ad frūmentum cōnferendum mittēbantur. 8. Decima legiō ad Caesarem auxilium ferendī causā missa est. 9. Rīxa ortā, Amāzonēs contrā Herculem manūs cōnseruērunt. 10. Simul ac hostēs ēruptiōnem ex oppidō fēcērunt, sīgnificātiō īgnibus facta est. 11. Facile est dictū zōnam rēgīnae asportāre, factū autem difficile.

II. 1. Eurystheus sent Hercules to bring the girdle of the queen (three ways). 2. The soldiers were sent as ambassadors to beg peace (four ways). 3. Labienus was sent to seize the camp of the enemy.

531. READING LESSON: *Hippolytēs*[1] *Zōna*

Herculēs, cum ad Eurystheum cum equābus Diomēdis revertisset, in Amāzonum terram īre iussus est, ut difficile opus cōnficeret. Hippolytē, Amāzonum rēgīna, zōnam pulcherrimam habēbat. Hāc autem potīrī volēbat Admētē,[2] Eurystheī fīlia, itaque Herculēs eam asportāre iussus est. Tandem ad Amāzonum terram pervēnit. Ibi prīmum eum benīgnē accēpit[3] Hippolytē zōnamque prōmīsit; sed, ortā rīxā, contrā Herculem Amāzonēs manūs cōnseruērunt. Hīs victīs et occīsā Hippolytā, Herculēs zōnā potītus est et ad Eurystheum asportāvit, itaque Admētē laeta erat.

---

[1] *of Hippolyte.* [2] *Admete.* [3] *entertained.*

532. Root **flu**, *flow*.

flu-ō, *flow*	**flū-men**, *river*	**flu-ctus**, *wave, flood*
fle-ō, *weep*	**in-flu-ō**, ——?	**flu-itō**, *float*

ENG. DER. — Fluid, flush, fluctuate, flux, flume, influence, fluency.

533. **WORD LIST XII**

administrō
**adversus
**adversō colle
Amāzōn
ancora
*apertus
appropīnquō
*ascēnsus
*asportō
*auferō
*bellō
*benīgnē
cālō
clam
cohortor
**compellō
condiciō
*cōnsēnsus
cōnserō
cōnserere manūs
**corrumpō
Crēta
*currus
*decumānus
*deinde
*ēdō
ēgregiē
*equa
**ēruptiō
fōrma
*iaciō
*identidem
incolumis
*inermis
interneciō
*īrātus
*legō
*mandō
**mānsuēfaciō
*memoria
*misericordia
*multitūdō
ōrnō
**pāscō
**patefaciō
**patria
**pellō
*permittō
**praeceps
*praemium
*prīstinus
*prōvolō
recēns
**recipiō
*redigō
*rēgīna
*rēmus
repentīnus
*rēs mīlitāris
*resistō
rīxa
**rūrsus
sapiēns
**sīgnificatiō
*singulāris
*speciēs
*studium
*supplex
tamen
*trānsgredior
Trēverī
turpitūdō
*vēxillum
*victōria
zōna

VEXILLUM

LESSON LXXVIII

THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS — DATIVE OF THE AGENT

NOTE. — Review the Future Active participle and the Gerundive of the regular verb. See **331**, with 1.

534. First or Active Periphrastic Conjugation

PRES.	**vocā-tūr-us (moni-tūr-us**, etc.) **sum**, *I am about to call, intend to call.*
IMPERF.	**vocā-tūr-us eram**, etc., *I was about to call*, etc.
FUT.	**vocā-tūr-us erō**, etc., *I shall be about to call*, etc.
PERF.	**vocā-tūr-us fuī**, etc., *I was* or *have been about to call*, etc.
PLUP.	**vocā-tūr-us fueram**, etc., *I had been about to call*, etc.
FUT. PERF.	**vocā-tūr-us fuerō**, etc., *I shall have been about to call*, etc.

535. Examine the following: —

1. **Quaerō quid factūrus sit**, *I ask what he is going to do, intends to do, will do.*
2. **Quaesīvī quid factūrus esset**, *I asked what he was going to do*, etc.

Observe in the above sentences that in the indirect question the first periphrastic conjugation takes the place of the lacking Future Subjunctive.

This is true of all forms of indirect discourse.

536. Second or Passive Periphrastic Conjugation

PRES.	**voca-ndus (mone-ndus) sum**, *I have to be, ought to be, must be called.*
IMPERF.	**voca-ndus eram**, *I had to be called*, etc.
FUT.	**voca-ndus erō**, *I shall have to be called*, etc.
PERF.	**voca-ndus fuī**, *I had* or *have had to be called*, etc.
PLUP.	**voca-ndus fueram**, *I had had to be called*, etc.
FUT. PERF.	**voca-ndus fuerō**, *I shall have had to be called*, etc.

1. The Subjunctive and Infinitive in the periphrastic conjugations are formed according to the same law as the Indicative.

537. Examine the following:—

1. **Signum Caesarī dandum est,** *Caesar has to give the signal* (the signal must be given by Caesar).
2. **Mīlitibus ad montem currendum est,** *the soldiers must run to the mountain.*

Observe that in the above, duty, necessity, or obligation is implied, and that the name of the person upon whom the duty, necessity, or obligation rests is in the Dative case.

Observe the impersonal use[1] of the verb in 2.

RULE. — The person upon whom the duty, necessity, or obligation rests is expressed by the use of the second periphrastic conjugation, with the Dative of the agent.

538. VOCABULARY

sectiō, ōnis, f., *booty.*
supplicātiō, ōnis, f., *thanksgiving.*
inīquus, a, um, *uneven, unfavorable.*
ūniversus, a, um, *universal, as a whole.*
dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētus, *decree.*
refringō, ere, frēgī, frāctus, *break down.*
vēndō, ere, didī, ditus, *sell.*

539. EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore agenda erant. 2. Lēgātus septimam legiōnem ad collem missūrus erat. 3. Lēgātō prīmā aestāte bellum gerendum est. 4. Castra mūnienda erunt postquam cōpiās nostrās flūmen trādūximus. 5. Aciēs īnstruenda, sīgnum dandum, mīlitēs ab opere revocandi sunt. 6. Dēditiōne factā, nostrōs praesidia dēductūros esse exīstimāvērunt. 7. Omnibus cōpiīs subitō ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt, quā facilior ad castra nostra ascēnsus vidēbātur. 8. Mīlitēs portās refrāctūri erant. 9. Caesar sectiōnem eō diē vēnditūrus erat. 10. Puella sorōrem vocātūra est.

II. 1. The soldiers are about to storm the town. 2. Caesar had to give the signal. 3. The lieutenant thought that he ought to

[1] The use of a verb in the third person sing. without a personal subject.

occupy the hill. 4. The soldiers had to fortify the camp. 5. The enemy thought that Caesar would not cross the river. 6. If Caesar should enroll two new legions, he would be able to defeat the Germans. 7. When Caesar heard this, he began to return into the province. 8. As soon as Caesar arrived, the army was led into winter quarters.

540. READING LESSON

Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī mīlitēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidī incolae ā mīlitibus iniūriam acciperent. Illī, ante cōnsiliō,[1] ut intellectum est, initō, quod, dēditiōne factā, nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs exīstimāverant, omnibus cōpiīs subitō ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. Pūgnātum est ab hostibus ācriter, cum in ūnā[2] virtūte omnis spēs salūtis esset. Occīsīs ad hominum mīlibus quattuor, reliquī in oppidum repulsī sunt. Postrīdiē ēius diēī, refrāctīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, sectiōnem ēius oppidī ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab eīs quī ēmerant capitum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium quīnquāgintā et trium. Eōdem tempore certior factus est omnēs maritimās cīvitātēs in potestātem populī Rōmānī redāctās esse. Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnī Galliā pācātā, ipse in Ītaliam profectus est. Ob eās rēs in diēs quīndecim[3] supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūllī.

541. Root **cad**, *fall.*

cad-ō, *fall*	**ac-cid-ō**, *happen*	**cad-āver**, *a dead body*
cās-us, *accident*	**dis-cēd-ō**, *depart*	**dis-ces-sus**, ——?

ENG. DER. — Case, casual, accident, secede, ancestor, success.

---

[1] *in accordance with a plan arranged beforehand.*
[2] *in valor alone.*
[3] *a thanksgiving for fifteen days.*

LESSON LXXIX

THE INDIRECT DISCOURSE — PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

542. The Indirect Discourse has been already defined, and simple illustrations of its use given. See **263**, **304**.

Fix in memory the fact that verbs of saying, knowing, perceiving, and the like, introduce the indirect discourse, that the verbs of its principal propositions are in the Infinitive mood, and that the tenses of the Infinitive denote time, present, past, or future, with reference to that of the verb which introduces the indirect discourse.

543. Examine the following: —

1. **Dīcit sē audīre**		
quid faciam	*He says that he hears* or *is hearing*	*what I am doing.*
quid fēcerim		*what I have done* or *did.*
quid factūrus sim		*what I am about to do.*
2. **Dīcit sē audīvisse**		
quid facerem	*He says that he heard* or *has heard*	*what I did* or *was doing.*
quid fēcissem		*what I had done.*
quid factūrus essem		*what I was about to do.*
3. **Dīcit sē audītūrum esse**		
quid faciam	*He says that he will hear*	*what I am doing.*
quid fēcerim		*what I have done* or *did.*
quid factūrus sim		*what I am about to do.*
4. **Dīxit sē audīre**		
quid facerem	*He said that he heard* or *was hearing*	*what I did* or *was doing.*
quid fēcissem		*what I had done.*
quid factūrus essem		*what I was about to do.*
5. **Dīxit sē audīvisse**		
quid facerem	*He said that he had heard*	*what I did* or *was doing.*
quid fēcissem		*what I had done.*
quid factūrus essem		*what I was about to do.*
6. **Dīxit sē audītūrum esse**		
quid facerem	*He said that he should hear*	*what I did* or *was doing.*
quid fēcissem		*what I had done.*
quid factūrus essem		*what I was about to do.*

1. Observe that while the verb of the principal proposition in the indirect discourse is in the Infinitive, that of the subordinate proposition is in the Subjunctive. This holds true in all subordinate propositions, — relative, interrogative, temporal, conditional, causal, etc.

2.[1] Observe sharply the use of tenses in the leading verb, in the Infinitive, and[2] in the verbs of the subordinate clauses.

3. Note that the Perfect Infinitive may represent any past tense of the Indicative.

Learn the above examples, with their English meanings.

RULE. — In the Indirect Discourse, the verbs of the principal propositions are in the Infinitive, the verbs of the subordinate propositions in the Subjunctive.

544. VOCABULARY

calor, ōris, m., *heat.*
columna, ae, f., *column, pillar.*
cymba, ae, f., *skiff, boat.*
gigās, antis, m., *giant.*
Hispānia, ae, f., *Spain.*
latus, eris, n., *side, flank.*
biceps, ipitis, *two headed.*
uterque, traque, trumque, *each, both.*
coniciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, *hurl.*
cūstōdiō, īre, īvī, ītus, *guard.*
mīror, ārī, ātus sum, *wonder at, admire.*
igitur, adv., *therefore.*

545. EXERCISES

I. 1. Dīxit sōlis calōrem tantum esse ut in eum sagittās suās coniceret. 2. In Hispāniam profectus dīcit sē columnās statūtūrum esse ad utrumque latus maris. 3. Dīxit gigantem, quī bovēs cūstōdīret, summīs vīribus esse. 4. Sciō tē mīrārī columnās quae ad utrumque latus maris statūtae sint. 5. Scīvī vōs audāciam mīrārī quam Herculēs praebēret. 6. Dīxit sē nunquam bicipitem

[1] Any primary tense of **dīcō** may be used with the constructions in 1, 2, and 3, and any secondary tense with those in 4, 5, and 6.

[2] Rhetorical questions and subordinate propositions merely explanatory or stating what is true independent of the quotation have their verbs in the indicative.

gigantem vīdisse. 7. Dixit Herculem cymbā aureā sōlis domum nāvigāre, postquam gigantem interfēcisset. 8. Vīdit eōs ad montēs sē recēpisse, quod hostēs secūtī essent. 9. Scīvit, sī id nōn fēcisset, sē fēlīcem futūrum fuisse.[1]

Change each sentence of the above into the direct discourse, giving sharp attention to mood and tense.

II. 1. He said that Hercules when he arrived in Spain placed pillars on each side of the sea. 2. He said that the two-headed giant who guarded the oxen lived in Arcadia. 3. They said that

Hercules hurled his weapons at the sun because the heat was so great. 4. He says that he wonders at the size of the giant who is guarding the oxen. 5. He saw that the golden boat of the sun, in which Hercules was carried, was very large and beautiful. 6. He thinks that the men, who came to Caesar concerning terms of peace, were wise and brave. 7. He replied that he would not give hostages to the Roman people, because that part of Gaul was his. 8. He said that he would go to Arcadia, where the happiest men lived.

546. READING LESSON: *Gēryōnis Bovēs*

Gigās triplicī corpore, Gēryōn nōmine, in īnsulā Erythīā habitābat. Eī erat māximus pulcherrimusque grex boum; quōs gigās Eurytiōn et canis biceps cūstōdiēbant. Herculēs est profectus in Libyam et Hispāniam ut eōs invenīre et abdūcere posset. Suō adventū ad utrumque latus maris columnās statuit quibus nōmen Herculēīs columnīs[2] dedit. Dēfessus labōre et calōre sōlis lacessītus in Hēlion[3] sagittās coniēcit. Hīc autem, audāciam ēius mīrā-

[1] Peculiar Infinitive form used in the indirect discourse in the apodosis of a condition contrary to fact in past time. Translate, *would have been happy.*

[2] *to which he gave the name of the pillars of Hercules.* The most usual construction of the name given is the Dative in agreement with that to which the name is given.

[3] *Helios* (the sun god); **Hēlion**, Greek form of Acc.

tus, eī cymbam auream, quā ipse vehitur, dedit, ut ad Erythīam nāvigāre posset. Hūc vectus Gēryōnem cum Eurytiōne et cane interfēcit, et incolumis domum cum bōbus revertit.

547. Root **col**, *till.*

col-ō, *till, inhabit*	**in-col-ō**, *inhabit*	**agri-col-a**, ——?
col-ōnus, *tiller, colonist*	**in-col-a**, ——?	**agri-cul-tūra**, ——?
cul-tus, *cultivation*	**col-ōnia**, ——?	**in-cul-tus**, ——?

Form English derivatives.

LESSON LXXX

VERB REVIEW — REGULAR VERBS

548. Review carefully the regular verb in both active and passive voices, referring to **603–614.**

Be able to give any form of each of the following verbs: **laudō, terreō, dūcō, faciō, mūniō.**

549. VOCABULARY

Atlās, antis, m., *Atlas.*
caelum, ī, n., *sky.*
dolus, ī, m., *trick, deceit.*
mālum, ī, n., *apple.*
pulvīnus, ī, m., *cushion, pad.*
adsentior, īrī, sēnsus sum, *assent, agree.*
habitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *dwell in, inhabit.*
nancīscor, ī, nactus sum, *obtain, find.*
recēdō, ere, cessī, cessus, *withdraw, go back.*

550. READING LESSON: *Māla Hesperidum*

Deinde Eurystheus Herculem iussit sibi māla aurea Hesperidum asportāre. Opus erat difficillimum, nōn enim locum, quo erant, sciēbat. Erant vērō in hortō māgnō et pulchrō ad montem Atlantem, ubi Hesperidēs cum ingentī serpente ea cūstōdiēbant. Cum tandem locum Herculēs nancīscerētur, Atlantem rogāvit num sibi

māla auferre vellet; pollicitus est vērō sē caelum suīs umerīs impositum, vice[1] ēius sustentūrum esse. Atlās adsēnsus est, profectus est, cum mālīs revertit, nōlēbat autem caelum iterum sustinēre. Tum dīxit Herculēs: "Sustinē caelum, sī placet,[2] dum[3] pulvīnum capitī meō parem." Onere ita per dolum iterum umerīs Atlantis impositō, Herculēs mālīs aureīs potītus ad Eurystheum recessit.

551. Root **man, ma,** *measure.*

man-us, *hand*	**man-dā-tum,** ——?	**man-ipulus,** *handful, company*
man-dō, *put into the hand, order*	**man-ceps (manus capiō)** *one who takes by the hand, purchaser*	

ENG. DER. — Manacle, manage, manifest, manner, manual, manufacture, manuscript, maintain, maneuver.

LESSON LXXXI

VERB REVIEW — IRREGULAR VERBS — WORD LIST

552. Review carefully the irregular verbs. See **615–623.**

553. VOCABULARY

aditus, ūs, m., *approach, entrance.*
canis, is, m. and f., *dog.*
Cerberus, ī, m., *Cerberus.*
servitūs, ūtis, f., *slavery.*
Tartara, ōrum, n. pl., *Tartarus, the lower world.*
trīceps, ipitis, *three headed.*

554. READING LESSON: *Cerberus*

Herculēs ūndecim labōrēs iam perēgerat, difficillimum autem opus erat reliquum. Erat in Tartarīs canis trīceps, nōmine Cerberus. Hīc aditum in Tartara cūstōdiēbat et nē quis adīret prohibē-

---

[1] *in his stead.* [2] *if you please,* lit. if it is pleasing.
[3] **dum** referring to something purposed takes the Subjunctive.

bat. Herculēs hunc in terram ferre iussus in Tartara cum Hermā[1] et Athēnā[2] profectus est. Tum summō labōre Cerberum manibus captum in terram sēcum portāvit. Hīs labōribus fūnctus Herculēs ab Eurystheō servitūte līberātus est. Multae et mīrae fābulae dē hōc fortī homine nārrātae sunt, quās legere aliō[3] possitis.

555. Root **hab**, *have*.

hab-e-ō, *have* **dē-beō** (**de** + **habeō**), *have from some one, owe* **pro-hib-eō**, ——?

hab-i-tō, *inhabit* **hab-i-tus**, *condition, garb* **dē-b-ilis**, *weak*

ENG. DER. — Habit, inhabit, exhibit, prohibit, debt, ability, average.

556. **WORD LIST XIII**

*aditus	Cerberus	gigās	mālum	sectiō
*adsentior	columna	*habitō	*mīror	*servitūs
Atlās	*coniciō	Hispānia	nancīscor	*supplicātiō
**biceps	*cūstōdiō	*igitur	pulvīnus	Tartara
caelum	cymba	*inīquus	*recēdō	**trīceps
calor	dēcernō	latus	refringō	*ūniversus
canis	dolus			*uterque

HERCULES AND CERBERUS

[1] *Hermes* or *Mercury*, the messenger of the gods.
[2] *Athene* or *Minerva*, goddess of wisdom.
[3] *elsewhere*.

CONTINUOUS LATIN PROSE

NOTE. — The pupil should now be able to translate the following continuous passages with ease. Most of the words have been already given in the special vocabularies as English equivalents of Latin words, and frequently used in the Latin-English and English-Latin exercises. The few others can be easily learned from the general vocabulary at the end of the book. All difficult constructions and new idioms will be explained in notes following each exercise, and frequent references made to points already emphasized.

557. EXERCISE I

Caesar, a brave and famous general of the Romans, conquered the forces of the Helvetians in Gaul. He also conquered Ariovistus, king of the Germans, in a great battle. He then led his army among the Sequani, and he himself hastened into the interior of Gaul.[1] There he called together his lieutenants and enrolled two new legions, for the Belgae were conspiring against the Roman people and bringing their forces together into one place.

[1] **in interiōrem Galliam.** See **237.**

558. EXERCISE II

Bibrax was a town of the Remi near the river Axona. This town the Belgae began to attack on the march with great force. Iccius, a man of[1] great authority and influence among the Remi, informed Caesar of[2] the plans of the Belgae. He said[3] that the Remi were not preparing arms, but were ready to give hostages to the Romans, receive them into their towns, and[4] assist them with grain and other things which were of use[5] to them for war. He said, moreover, that the Germans were in arms, and were making a conspiracy against the Roman people.

[1] Use Ablative of quality. See **157.** [2] **dē.** [3] Observe that "said" introduces the indirect discourse. See **543.** [4] Omit. [5] See **129.**

559. Exercise III

Caesar, because the danger of the Remi was great and their safety a care[1] to him, sent as an aid to them archers and slingers. The Bellovaci surpassed the rest of the Belgae in valor,[2] and in the number of men who could[3] bear arms; but the chief command[4] of the war was conferred upon Galba, king of the Suessiones. After[5] hostages had been given by the Remi, Caesar led his forces across the river, and ordered his soldiers to fortify the camp with a wall and a ditch.

[1] Dative. [2] See **94**. [3] Use Subjunctive of **possum** with following Infinitive. Why Subjunctive? See **448**. [4] **summa**. [5] Ablative Absolute. See **176–178**.

560. Exercise IV

After the enemy had been defeated in a fierce cavalry battle, Caesar led his men back into the camp, but the enemy tried to storm the redoubt and cut down the bridge which was over the river. When our men saw this, they hastened toward them and killed a great number. After this battle they decided to return home,[1] and, at the second watch,[2] they set out from the camp with a great shout. Caesar pursued, and having killed many of them, returned to the camp. On the day after this, he led his forces into the territory of the Suessiones and hastened to the town of Noviodunum.[3]

[1] See **394**. [2] **secundā vigiliā**. [3] Accusative in app. with **oppidum**.

561. Exercise V

After Caesar began to push up the sheds and to prepare those things which were of use[1] for assaulting, the Suessiones, alarmed by the magnitude of the works, surrendered themselves to the Romans. Caesar received as hostages the chief men of the state, and among them the two sons of Galba himself. Then, having established[2] peace, he led his cavalry and infantry forces against the Bellovaci, who immediately surrendered themselves and all

their property[3] to the Roman people, and gave Caesar six hundred hostages, the children of the nobility.

[1] **ad oppūgnandum ūsuī erant.** [2] Ablative Absolute. See **176–178.** [3] **suaque omnia.**

562. Exercise VI

Caesar then led his army against the Nervii, a fierce and hostile nation, who neither gave hostages nor accepted terms of peace. Our soldiers had chosen for a camp a hill which sloped gradually[1] to the river. Across this river the Nervii had seized another hill. At the top[2] of this hill were dense woods in which the enemy had concealed themselves. Along[3] the river a few horsemen were seen. Our cavalry, which Caesar had sent forward, hastened to join battle with them, but were in a short time defeated by the enemy, who suddenly made an attack against them from the woods.

[1] **paulātim vergēbat.** [2] See **237.** [3] **secundum flūmen.**

563. Exercise VII

Caesar had[1] to do everything at one time. He drew up his army more[2] as the nature of the place, than[2] as the plan of military affairs, demanded. The soldiers of the ninth and tenth legions were fighting on the left wing,[3] and the two legions which had been most recently enrolled met[4] the enemy on the banks of the river, but the Romans who had been defeated in the first attack,[5] again sought safety in flight. Caesar, greatly disturbed, advanced to the line of battle, and ordered his men to use their swords. At his arrival, their courage was renewed. They met the enemy with fresh strength,[6] and drove them to the banks of the river. Here the Nervii fought with their swords, but our men threw missiles from a higher place and killed a great number of them. The rest, frightened, fled, and thus the name and nation of the Nervii were reduced almost to destruction.

[1] See **537.** [2] **magis ut . . . quam ut . . .** [3] **in sinistrō cornū.** [4] **occurrō** with the Dative. [5] **prīmō impetū.** [6] **integrīs vīribus.**

564. Exercise VIII

The Aduatuci, who had come with all their forces to the aid [1] of the Nervii, betook themselves to a fortified town, and determined to defend themselves against the Romans. For a few days they contended with our soldiers in slight engagements,[2] but at length, being alarmed by the strength and quickness of the Romans, they sent ambassadors to Caesar concerning surrender. They pretended[3] to throw all their arms into the ditch before the town, but they had concealed about a third part within the walls. In the night they made a sally from the town, but were easily repulsed by the Romans.

[1] Two Datives. See **129**. [2] **parvulīs proeliīs**. [3] **simulō**.

565. Exercise IX

Caesar sent Galba [1] with the tenth legion and a great part of the cavalry against the Nantuates, whose territories extend to the summits of the Alps. He ordered him to place[2] two legions there, and to fortify the village of Octodurus.[3] After many days of winter-quarters, Galba ordered grain to be brought from the fields; but it was not brought, for the Nantuates had suddenly withdrawn from the village by night, and the mountains were held by a great number of the enemy, who were preparing war. Galba hearing[4] of this, decided to defend the camp.

[1] Not the Galba who was king of the Suessiones, but one of Caesar's lieutenants. [2] **conlocō**. [3] **560**, n. 3. [4] **hōc audītō**.

566. Exercise X

After a brief time, the enemy made an attack upon our men, and hurled stones against the rampart. Then our soldiers rushed against them from all quarters of the camp, and drove them back. After[1] this battle was finished, Galba led his men safe into the territory of the Allobroges, and wintered there. In the meantime, a new war arose[2] among the Veneti. Caesar having been

informed of these things, sent Brutus with a fleet to capture[3] their boats. After this had been done, he quickly brought[4] the war to an end.

[1] **Hōc proeliō factō.** [2] **ortum est.** [3] **quī** with Subjunctive. [4] *bring to an end*, **cōnficiō.**

567. EXERCISE XI

While these things were going on among the Veneti, Caesar sent Quintus[1] Titurius Sabinus against the Unelli, and ordered him to hinder them from injury and mischief. Sabinus selected a place for a camp suitable in all respects, and kept himself and his men in this camp for many days. In the meantime, many states had come as[2] an aid to the enemy. Sabinus hearing[3] of this, attacked them suddenly, and easily conquered them. They fled, some[4] in one direction, and others in another, but our men pursued and wounded many. Sabinus announced his victory to Caesar, and at the same time was informed of Caesar's naval battle.

[1] **Q. Titūrius Sabīnus.** [2] See **129.** [3] **hīs rēbus audītīs.** [4] See **251.**

CONLOQUIA

THESE conloquia may be taken at the teacher's pleasure at intervals in connection with the other work, or consecutively at the end of the series of lessons and the continuous prose exercises.

568. Conloquium I. Situs Rōmae. Pater et Fīlius Conloquuntur
Dialogue *The location*

F. Ubi est Rōma?

P. In Ītaliā est Rōma.

F. Quā in parte Ītaliae est Rōma?

P. Rōma est in eā parte quae ad occāsum-sōlis spectat.
the west *lies.*

F. Estne Rōma ad mare?
near

P. Scīlicet, Rōma sēdecim mīlibus-passuum ab marī abest,
Certainly, *miles*
posita in flūmine.

F. Quō in flūmine Rōma posita est?

P. In Tiberī Rōma posita est.

569. Conloquium II. Conditor Rōmae
Founder

F. Quis, mī pater, Rōmam cōnstituit?
my *founded?*

P. Trāditur, mī fīliole, Rōmulus Rōmam cōnstituisse multōs
They say, *little son,*
annōs abhinc.
ago.

F. Fābulam mihi dē Rōmulō nārrā, sī tibi libet.
tell, *if you please.*

P. Nunc negōtium mihi est; inveniēs autem fābulam iūcundam
I am busy *pleasing*
dē Rōmulō Remōque in librō quem hodiē tibi dedī.
to-day

570. Colloquium III. C. Iūlius Caesar

F. Quandō Caesar Rōmae vīxit?
When did live?

P. Nātus est Caesar multōs annōs abhinc, C. Mariō et L. Valeriō
was born
cōnsulibus.
in the consulship of.

F. Caesarne unquam cōnsul fuit?
ever

P. Ita vērō, Caesar erat cōnsul cum M. Calpurniō Bibulō.

F. Quam ob rem clārus Caesar erat?

P. Clārus erat quod māgnus ōrātor, doctus vir et litterīs ērudītus, ēgregius auctor, māximus dux erat.
learned educated, eminent author

F. Nōnne mēcum crās amplius de Caesare loquēris?
to-morrow further will speak?

P. Ita, iamque, valē.
and now, farewell.

571. Conloquium IV. C. Iūlius Caesar

F. Cupiō audīre amplius dē Caesare, cāre pater, sī ōtium est tibi.
I wish if you have time

P. Negōtium est mihi, mī fīlī, sed sī quid vīs, nōn occupātus sum. Quid vīs scīre?
if you wish anything engaged

F. Quae Caesar scrīpsit?
did write?

P. Historiam dē suīs bellīs scrīpsit.
A narrative

F. Quibuscum Caesar bellum gessit?

P. Cum Helvētiīs, cum Germānīs, cum multīs aliīs gentibus bellum gessit.

F. Semperne eās proeliō superāvit?

P. Etiam. Iam cognōscēs Caesarem fortem clārumque imperātōrem fuisse.

572. Conloquium V. C. Iūlius Caesar

F. Eratne Caesar rēx Rōmānōrum?

P. Minimē, aliī autem dīcunt eum cupidum rēgnī fuisse.
some *throne*

F. Quārē Caesar nōn rēx creātus est?
made

P. Rōmānī Tarquinium Superbum, suum rēgem septimum et
Tarquin the Proud,
ultimum, multīs annīs ante expulerant, neque volēbant esse alium
last, *before had expelled,*
rēgem; nam nōmen rēgem ōderant.
hated.

573. Conloquium VI. Praeceptor et Discipulus dē Caesare
Teacher *Pupil*
Conloquuntur

D. Nōnne multae fābulae dē Caesare nārrantur?

P. Ita sānē, multae et pulchrae.

D. Nārrā mihi, sī placet tibi, fābulam dē hōc virō māximō.
if you please,

P. Hodiē nārrāre nōn possum, mihi enim ōtium nōn est; crās, sī mē interrogābis, respondēbō.
if you ask me,

D. Bene est. Crās revertar. Valē.

P. Et tū valē.

574. Conloquium VII. Caesar in Tempestāte

D. Nōnne mihi hodiē fābulam dē Caesare nārrāre vīs?

P. Libenter. Quid vīs cognōscere?
Willingly.

D. Nōnne Caesar erat ōlim in nāve in māgnā maris tempestāte?
once

P. Ita vērō, ut dīcit Plutarchus, scrīptor Graecus.
as *Plutarch,* *Greek.*

D. Nōnne erant fluctūs māgnī?
waves

P. Ita sānē, et tantus erat impetus ventōrum, ut omnēs nautae perterritī essent.
force of the winds,

D. Eratne nāvis magister commōtus?

P. Graviter commōtus, et revertī voluit.
Seriously *turn back*

D. Num Caesar timēbat?

P. Minimē vērō; magistrum autem ad sē vocāvit et dīxit: "Quid timēs? Caesarem vehis."

575. Conloquium VIII. Caesar apud Pīrātās I
Pirates

D. Nōnne Caesar ōlim in manūs pīrātārum incidit?

P. Ita. Mox autem līberātus est.

D. Quōmodo?

P. Pīrātae vīgintī talenta redēmptiōnem postulāvērunt.
talents as a ransom

D. Quid fēcit Caesar?

P. Eōs dērīsit quod tantulum postulāvērunt, et dīxit.
laughed at *so little*

D. Quid dīxit?

P. Dīxit: "Mē tantulō redimere nōn volō. Postulāte quīnquā-
for so little *ransom*
gintā talenta. Solvam."
I will pay them.

D. Accēpēruntne pīrātae hās condiciōnēs?

P. Ita vērō. Tum mīsit Caesar amīcōs ad pecūniam conligendam quō factō, līberātus est.
the money *to collect*

576. Conloquium IX. Caesar apud Pīrātās II

D. Quid fēcit Caesar, dum apud pīrātās versābātur?

P. Postquam amīcī suī ad pecūniam conligendam profectī sunt, sē dēlectābat cum pīrātīs.
amused

D. Quōmodo sē dēlectābat?

P. Simulābat sē dormīre velle; itaque iīs imperābat nē
He pretended *to sleep* *not*
clāmōrem facerent.
to make a noise.

D. Nōnne pārēbant?

P. Etiam. Caesar versūs quoque ad eōs lūdendōs fēcit, quōs iīs recitāvit
verses *to make fun of them composed* *read aloud.*

D. Num id placuit pīrātīs?
did please

P. Placuit vērō; quamquam Caesar in versibus dīxit sē, post-
although
quam līberātus esset, reversūrum esse et eōs interfectūrum.
would return

D. Num crēdidērunt pīrātae?
did believe

P. Nōn crēdidērunt. Caesar vērō māgnum exercitum conlēgit, revertit, eōs superāvit, in carcerem coniēcit, posteā in crucem sustulit.
prison *afterwards* *he crucified them.*

D. Ēheu! Ēheu! Quem virum crūdēlem!
Alas! *What a* *cruel!*

P. Minimē vērō, nōn crūdēlis, plērumque mītissimus erat.
generally *very gentle.*

577. Conloquium X. C. Crastinus

D. Quis, mī praeceptor, erat C. Crastinus?

P. Erat, mī discipule, ut dīxit Plutarchus, vir fortis, quī in pūgnā ad Pharsālum ūnī ex Caesaris manipulīs praeerat.
companies

D. Quid dīxit Caesar cum sē in pūgnā illī obvium ferret?
he met him?

P. Dīxit: "Quae spēs est, Crastine, fortūnae meliōris?"

D. Quid respondit Crastinus?

P. Respondit, manū dextrā tentā, "Hodiē, mī imperātor,
reaching out his right hand,

māgnificē vincēmus, et tū quoque mē, vīvum aut mortuum lau-
gloriously *shall conquer* *alive* *or* *dead*
dābis."

D. Fābula optima est. Agō tibi grātiās.
excellent *I thank you.*

P. Minimē. Nārrō libenter.
gladly.

578. Conloquium XI. Caesar ad Zēlam

D. Nārrā mihi, mī praeceptor, sī placet, fābulam amplius, crās domum redeō.
I am going back.

P. Mē miserum! Tē saepe dēsīderābō. Cūr abis?
Alas! *shall miss.* *Why are you going away?*

D. Pater meus aeger est. Mē arcessīvit. Eundum est mihi.
sick *I must go.*

P. Certē, tibi est eundum. Ante autem interrogā quidcumque vīs.
Certainly *ask* *whatever*

D. Velim cognōscere num Caesar cum Pharnace pūgnāret.
I should like *whether* *Pharnaces*

P. Ita sānē, et praeclāram victōriam dēportāvit.
famous *bore off.*

D. Quem ad locum pūgnāvit?

P. Pūgnāvit ad Zēlam, unde litterās dē hāc pūgnā ad amīcum Rōmam mīsit.

D. Quid scrīpsit Caesar?

P. Scrīpsit: "Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī."

D. O verbum mīrābile! Quem virum fortem! Nunquam
wonderful!
dēsinam eum admīrārī.
shall I cease *to admire.*

P. Bene dīcis, est enim laude dīgnus.
worthy of praise.

D. Agō tibi grātiās. Nunc abeundum est mihi. Valē!

P. Tū quoque valē.

TABLE OF DECLENSION

TYPICAL SUBSTANTIVES

579. FIRST DECLENSION

Stem ending **a**; Base **silv-**

SING.	N.	silv-a, F.	PLUR.	N.	silv-ae
	G.	silv-ae		G.	silv-ārum
	D.	silv-ae		D.	silv-īs
	Ac.	silv-am		Ac.	silv-ās
	V.	silv-a		V.	silv-ae
	Ab.	silv-ā		Ab.	silv-īs

580. SECOND DECLENSION

Stem ending **o**

		Base **lēgāt-**	**bell-**	**puer-**	**agr-**	**vir-**
SING.	N.	lēgāt-us, M.	bell-um, N.	puer, M.	ager, M.	vir, M.
	G.	lēgāt-ī	bell-ī	puer-ī	agr-ī	vir-ī
	D.	lēgāt-ō	bell-ō	puer-ō	agr-ō	vir-ō
	Ac.	lēgāt-um	bell-um	puer-um	agr-um	vir-um
	V.	lēgāt-e	bell-um	puer	ager	vir
	Ab.	lēgāt-ō	bell-ō	puer-ō	agr-ō	vir-ō
PLUR.	N.	lēgāt-ī	bell-a	puer-ī	agr-ī	vir-ī
	G.	lēgāt-ōrum	bell-ōrum	puer-ōrum	agr-ōrum	vir-ōrum
	D.	lēgāt-īs	bell-īs	puer-īs	agr-īs	vir-īs
	Ac.	lēgāt-ōs	bell-a	puer-ōs	agr-ōs	vir-ōs
	V.	lēgāt-ī	bell-a	puer-ī	agr-ī	vir-ī
	Ab.	lēgāt-īs	bell-īs	puer-īs	agr-īs	vir-īs

581. THIRD DECLENSION

Stem ending consonant

	Base **duc-**		**corpor-**	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.V.	dux, M.	duc-ēs	corpus, N.	corpor-a
G.	duc-is	duc-um	corpor-is	corpor-um
D.	duc-ī	duc-ibus	corpor-ī	corpor-ibus
Ac.	duc-em	duc-ēs	corpus	corpor-a
Ab.	duc-e	duc-ibus	corpor-e	corpor-ibus

582. THIRD DECLENSION (*Continued*)

Stem ending **i**

	Base	**host-**	**turr-**	**mar-**	**urb-**
SING.	N.V.	host-is, M. F.	turr-is, F.	mar-e, N.	urb-s, F.
	G.	host-is	turr-is	mar-is	urb-is
	D.	host-ī	turr-ī	mar-ī	urb-ī
	Ac.	host-em	turr-im (em)	mar-e	urb-em
	Ab.	host-e	turr-ī (e)	mar-ī	urb-e
PLUR.	N.V.	host-ēs	turr-ēs	mar-ia	urb-ēs
	G.	host-ium	turr-ium	mar-ium	urb-ium
	D.	host-ibus	turr-ibus	mar-ibus	urb-ibus
	Ac.	host-īs (ēs)	turr-īs (ēs)	mar-ia	urb-īs (ēs)
	Ab.	host-ibus	turr-ibus	mar-ibus	urb-ibus

583. Stem ending irregular

Base irregular

SING.	N.V.	iter, N.	senex, M.	vī-s, F.
	G.	itiner-is	sen-is	vī-s (rare)
	D.	itiner-ī	sen-ī	vī (rare)
	Ac.	iter	sen-em	vi-m
	Ab.	itiner-e	sen-e	vī
PLUR.	N.V.	itiner-a	sen-ēs	vīr-ēs
	G.	itiner-um	sen-um	vīr-ium
	D.	itiner-ibus	sen-ibus	vīr-ibus
	Ac.	itiner-a	sen-ēs	vīr-ēs
	Ab.	itiner-ibus	sen-ibus	vīr-ibus

584. FOURTH DECLENSION

Stem ending **u**

	Base	**cās-**	**corn-**
SING.	N.V.	cās-us, M.	corn-ū, N.
	G.	cās-ūs	corn-ūs
	D.	cās-uī	corn-ū
	Ac.	cās-um	corn-ū
	Ab.	cās-ū	corn-ū
PLUR.	N.V.	cās-ūs	corn-ua
	G.	cās-uum	corn-uum
	D.	cās-ibus	corn-ibus
	Ac.	cās-ūs	corn-ua
	Ab.	cās-ibus	corn-ibus

585. FIFTH DECLENSION

Stem ending **e**

Base **di-**

SING.	N.V.	di-ēs, M. F.	PLUR.	N.V.	di-ēs, M. F.
	G.	di-ēī		G.	di-ērum
	D.	di-ēī		D.	di-ēbus
	Ac.	di-em		Ac.	di-ēs
	Ab.	di-ē		Ab.	di-ēbus

ADJECTIVES

586. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION

a- and **o**-Stems

SING.	N.	fīd-us	fīd-a	fīd-um
	G.	fīd-ī	fīd-ae	fīd-ī
	D.	fīd-ō	fīd-ae	fīd-ō
	Ac.	fīd-um	fīd-am	fīd-um
	V.	fīd-e	fīd-a	fīd-um
	Ab.	fīd-ō	fīd-ā	fīd-ō
PLUR.	N.	fīd-ī	fīd-ae	fīd-a
	G.	fīd-ōrum	fīd-ārum	fīd-ōrum
	D.	fīd-īs	fīd-īs	fīd-īs
	Ac.	fīd-ōs	fīd-ās	fīd-a
	V.	fīd-ī	fīd-ae	fīd-a
	Ab.	fīd-īs	fīd-īs	fīd-īs

587. **a-** and **o**-Stems

SING.	N.	miser	miser-a	miser-um
	G.	miser-ī	miser-ae	miser-ī
	D.	miser-ō	miser-ae	miser-ō
	Ac.	miser-um	miser-am	miser-um
	V.	miser	miser-a	miser-um
	Ab.	miser-ō	miser-ā	miser-ō
PLUR.	N.	miser-ī	miser-ae	miser-a
	G.	miser-ōrum	miser-ārum	miser-ōrum
	D.	miser-īs	miser-īs	miser-īs
	Ac.	miser-ōs	miser-ās	miser-a
	V.	miser-ī	miser-ae	miser-a
	Ab.	miser-īs	miser-īs	miser-īs

588. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION (*Continued*)

a- and o-Stems

SING.	N.V.	noster	nostr-a	nostr-um
	G.	nostr-ī	nostr-ae	nostr-ī
	D.	nostr-ō	nostr-ae	nostr-ō
	Ac.	nostr-um	nostr-am	nostr-um
	Ab.	nostr-ō	nostr-ā	nostr-ō
PLUR.	N.V.	nostr-ī	nostr-ae	nostr-a
	G.	nostr-ōrum	nostr-ārum	nostr-ōrum
	D.	nostr-īs	nostr-īs	nostr-īs
	Ac.	nostr-ōs	nostr-ae	nostr-a
	Ab.	nostr-īs	nostr-īs	nostr-īs

589. THIRD DECLENSION

Three terminations; i-Stems

SING.	N.V.	ācer	ācr-is	ācr-e
	G.	ācr-is	ācr-is	ācr-is
	D.	ācr-ī	ācr-ī	ācr-ī
	Ac.	ācr-em	ācr-em	ācr-e
	Ab.	ācr-ī	ācr-ī	ācr-ī
PLUR.	N.V.	ācr-ēs	ācr-ēs	ācr-ia
	G.	ācr-ium	ācr-ium	ācr-ium
	D.	ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus
	Ac.	ācr-īs (ēs)	ācr-īs (ēs)	ācr-ia
	Ab.	ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus

590. Two terminations; i-Stems

SING.	N.V.	facil-is	facil-e	PLUR.	N.V.	facil-ēs	facil-ia
	G.	facil-is	facil-is		G.	facil-ium	facil-ium
	D.	facil-ī	facil-ī		D.	facil-ibus	facil-ibus
	Ac.	facil-em	facil-e		Ac.	facil-īs (ēs)	facil-ia
	Ab.	facil-ī	facil-ī		Ab.	facil-ibus	facil-ibus

591. One termination; Consonant Stems

SING.	N.V.	ferāx	ferāx	PLUR.	N.V.	ferāc-ēs	ferāc-ia
	G.	ferāc-is	ferāc-is		G.	ferāc-ium	ferāc-ium
	D.	ferāc-ī	ferac-ī		D.	ferāc-ibus	ferāc-ibus
	Ac.	ferāc-em	ferāx		Ac.	ferāc-īs (ēs)	ferāc-ia
	Ab.	ferāc-ī (e)	ferāc-ī (e)		Ab.	ferāc-ibus	ferāc-ibus

592. THIRD DECLENSION (*Continued*)

Comparative; Consonant Stems

SING.	N.V.	fortior	fortius	PLUR.	N.V.	fortiōr-ēs	fortiōr-a
	G.	fortiōr-is	fortiōr-is		G.	fortiōr-um	fortiōr-um
	D.	fortiōr-ī	fortiōr-ī		D.	fortiōr-ibus	fortiōr-ibus
	Ac.	fortiōr-em	fortius		Ac.	fortiōr-īs (ēs)	fortiōr-a
	Ab.	fortiōr-e (ī)	fortiōr-e (ī)		Ab.	fortiōr-ibus	fortiōr-ibus

593. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

		Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
SING.	N.	ūllus	ūlla	ūllum	uter	utra	utrum
	G.	ūllīus	ūllīus	ūllīus	utrīus	utrīus	utrīus
	D.	ūllī	ūllī	ūllī	utrī	utrī	utrī
	Ac.	ūllum	ūllam	ūllum	utrum	utram	utrum
	Ab.	ūllō	ūllā	ūllō	utrō	utrā	utrō
PLUR.	N.	ūllī	ūllae	ūlla	utrī	utrae	utra
	G.	ūllōrum	ūllārum	ūllōrum	utrōrum	utrārum	utrōrum
	D.	ūllīs	ūllīs	ūllīs	utrīs	utrīs	utrīs
	Ac.	ūllōs	ūllās	ūlla	utrōs	utrās	utra
	Ab.	ūllīs	ūllīs	ūllīs	utrīs	utrīs	utrīs

LIST OF ADJECTIVES DECLINED AS ABOVE

alius alter neuter nūllus sōlus tōtus ūllus ūnus uter

594. DECLENSION OF **Duo** AND **Trēs**

		Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
PLUR.	N.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
	G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
	D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
	Ac.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs, trīs	tria
	Ab.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

595. TABLE OF COMPARISON

bonus	melior	optimus	cis	citerior	citimus
malus	pēior	pessimus	in, intrā	interior	intimus
māgnus	māior	māximus	prae, prō	prior	prīmus
parvus	minor	minimus	prope	propior	proximus
multus	plūs	plūrimus	ultrā	ulterior	ultimus
exterus	exterior	extrēmus, extimus	posterus	posterior	postrēmus, postumus
īnferus	īnferior	īnfimus, īmus	superus	superior	suprēmus, summus

PRONOUNS

596. Personal — 597. Reflexive

SING.	N.	ego	tū [1]	——
	G.	meī	tuī	suī
	D.	mihi	tibi	sibi
	Ac.	mē	tē	sē
	Ab.	mē	tē	sē
PLUR.	N.	nōs	vōs	——
	G.	nostrum (ī)	vestrum (ī)	suī
	D.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
	Ac.	nōs	vōs	sē
	Ab.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē

598. Demonstrative

SING.	N.	hīc	haec	hōc	is	ea	id
	G.	hūius	hūius	hūius	ēius	ēius	ēius
	D.	huīc	huīc	huīc	eī	eī	eī
	Ac.	hunc	hanc	hōc	eum	eam	id
	Ab.	hōc	hāc	hōc	eō	eā	eō
PLUR.	N.	hī	hae	haec	eī (iī)	eae	ea
	G.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
	D.	hīs	hīs	hīs	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)
	Ac.	hōs	hās	haec	eōs	eās	ea
	Ab.	hīs	hīs	hīs	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)

599.

SING.	N.	ille [2]	illa	illud	ipse [1]	ipsa	ipsum
	G.	illīus	illīus	illīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus
	D.	illī	illī	illī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
	Ac.	illum	illam	illud	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
	Ab.	illō	illā	illō	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō
PLUR.	N.	illī	illae	illa	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
	G.	illōrum	illārum	illōrum	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
	D.	illīs	illīs	illīs	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
	Ac.	illōs	illās	illa	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
	Ab.	illīs	illīs	illīs	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

[1] In **tū** and **ipse** the Vocative is like the Nominative; it is lacking in the other pronouns.

[2] **iste** is declined like **ille**.

600. RELATIVE

SING.	N.	quī	quae	quod
	G.	cūius	cūius	cūius
	D.	cuī	cuī	cuī
	Ac.	quem	quam	quod
	Ab.	quō	quā	quō
PLUR.	N.	quī	quae	quae
	G.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
	D.	quibus	quibus	quibus
	Ac.	quōs	quās	quae
	Ab.	quibus	quibus	quibus

601. INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE

SING.	N.	quis (quī)	quae	quid (quod)
	G.	cūius	cūius	cūius
	D.	cuī	cuī	cuī
	Ac.	quem	quam	quid (quod)
	Ab.	quō	quā	quō
PLUR.	N.	quī	quae	quae
	G.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
	D.	quibus	quibus	quibus
	Ac.	quōs	quās	quae
	Ab.	quibus	quibus	quibus

602. INDEFINITE

SING.	N.	aliquis (-quī)	aliqua	aliquid (-quod)
	G.	alicūius	alicūius	alicūius
	D.	alicuī	alicuī	alicuī
	Ac.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (-quod)
	Ab.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō
PLUR.	N.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
	G.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
	D.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
	Ac.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
	Ab.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

TABLE OF CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE

Stems	vocā-	monē-	rege-	capie-	audī-

603.

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present Tense

	vocā-	monē-	rege-	capie-	audī-
	ō	e-ō	ō	i-ō	i-ō
	ā-s	ē-s	i-s	i-s	ī-s
	a-t	e-t	i-t	i-t	i-t
	ā-mus	ē-mus	i-mus	i-mus	ī-mus
	ā-tis	ē-tis	i-tis	i-tis	ī-tis
	a-nt	e-nt	u-nt	iu-nt	iu-nt

Imperfect Tense

	vocā-	monē-	rege-	capie-	audī-
	ā-ba-m	ē-ba-m	ē-ba-m	iē-ba-m	iē-ba-m
	ā-bā-s	ē-bā-s	ē-bā-s	iē-bā-s	iē-bā-s
	ā-ba-t	ē-ba-t	ē-ba-t	iē-ba-t	iē-ba-t
	ā-bā-mus	ē-bā-mus	ē-bā-mus	iē-bā-mus	iē-bā-mus
	ā-bā-tis	ē-bā-tis	ē-bā-tis	iē-bā-tis	iē-bā-tis
	ā-ba-nt	ē-ba-nt	ē-ba-nt	iē-ba-nt	iē-ba-nt

FUTURE TENSE

voc-	mon-	reg-	cap-	aud-
ā-b-ō	ē-b-ō	a-m	ia-m	ia-m
ā-bi-s	ē-bi-s	ē-s	iē-s	iē-s
ā-bi-t	ē-bi-t	e-t	ie-t	ie-t
ā-bi-mus	ē-bi-mus	ē-mus	iē-mus	iē-mus
ā-bi-tis	ē-bi-tis	ē-tis	iē-tis	iē-tis
ā-bu-nt	ē-bu-nt	e-nt	ie-nt	ie-nt

PERFECT TENSE

vocāv-	ī
monu-	istī
rēx-	it
cēp-	imus
audīv-	istis
	ērunt

PLUPERFECT TENSE

vocāv-	era-m
monu-	erā-s
rēx-	era-t
cep-	erā-mus
audīv-	erā-tis
	era-nt

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

vocāv-	er-ō
monu-	eri-s
rēx-	eri-t
cēp-	eri-mus
audīv-	eri-tis
	eri-nt

604.

IMPERATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

voc-	mon-	reg-	cap-	aud-
ā	ē	e	e	ī
ā-te	ē-te	i-te	i-te	ī-te

FUTURE TENSE

voc-	mon-	reg-	cap-	aud-
ā-tō	ē-tō	i-tō	i-tō	ī-tō
ā-tō	ē-tō	i-tō	i-tō	ī-tō
ā-tōte	ē-tōte	i-tōte	i-tōte	ī-tōte
a-ntō	e-ntō	u-ntō	iu-ntō	iu-ntō

TABLE OF CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE

Stems	**vocā-**	**monē-**	**rege-**	**capie-**	**audī-**
605.		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD			
		PRESENT TENSE			
	e-m	**ea-m**	**a-m**	**ia-m**	**ia-m**
	ē-s	**eā-s**	**ā-s**	**iā-s**	**iā-s**
	e-t	**ea-t**	**a-t**	**ia-t**	**ia-t**
voc-	**ē-mus**	**eā-mus**	**ā-mus**	**iā-mus**	**iā-mus**
	ē-tis	**eā-tis**	**ā-tis**	**iā-tis**	**iā-tis**
	e-nt	**ea-nt**	**a-nt**	**ia-nt**	**ia-nt**
		IMPERFECT TENSE			
	ā-re-m	**ē-re-m**	**e-re-m**	**e-re-m**	**ī-re-m**
	ā-rē-s	**ē-rē-s**	**e-rē-s**	**e-rē-s**	**ī-rē-s**
	ā-re-t	**ē-re-t**	**e-re-t**	**e-re-t**	**ī-re-t**
voc-	**ā-rē-mus**	**ē-rē-mus**	**e-rē-mus**	**e-rē-mus**	**ī-rē-mus**
	ā-rē-tis	**ē-rē-tis**	**e-rē-tis**	**e-rē-tis**	**ī-rē-tis**
	ā-re-nt	**ē-re-nt**	**e-re-nt**	**e-re-nt**	**ī-re-nt**

	PERFECT TENSE	PLUPERFECT TENSE
vocāv-	eri-m	isse-m
monu-	eri-s	issē-s
rēx-	eri-t	isse-t
cēp-	eri-mus	issē-mus
audīv-	eri-tis	issē-tis
	eri-nt	isse-nt

606. INFINITIVE

PRES.	voc-āre	mon-ēre	reg-ere	cap-ere	aud-īre
PERF.	vocāv-isse	monu-isse	rēx-isse	cēp-isse	audīv-isse
FUT.	vocā-tūrus esse	moni-tūrus esse	rēc-tūrus esse	cap-tūrus esse	audī-tūrus esse

607. PARTICIPLE

PRES.	voc-āns	mon-ēns	reg-ēns	cap-iēns	aud-iēns
FUT.	vocā-tūrus	moni-tūrus	rēc-tūrus	cap-tūrus	audī-tūrus

608. GERUND

G.	voc-andī	mon-endī	reg-endī	cap-iendī	aud-iendī
D.	voc-andō	mon-endō	reg-endō	cap-iendō	aud-iendō
Ac.	voc-andum	mon-endum	reg-endum	cap-iendum	aud-iendum
Ab.	voc-andō	mon-endō	reg-endō	cap-iendō	aud-iendō

609. SUPINE

FORMER	vocā-tum	moni-tum	rēc-tum	cap-tum	audī-tum
LATTER	vocā-tū	moni-tū	rēc-tū	cap-tū	audī-tū

TABLE OF CONJUGATION: PASSIVE VOICE

Stems	vocā-	monē-	rege-	capie-	audī-

610. INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

	vocā-	monē-	rege-	capie-	audī-
	o-r	e-o-r	o-r	i-o-r	i-o-r
	ā-ris (re)	ē-ris (re)	e-ris (re)	e-ris (re)	ī-ris (re)
	ā-tur	ē-tur	i-tur	i-tur	ī-tur
	ā-mur	ē-mur	i-mur	i-mur	ī-mur
	ā-minī	ē-minī	i-minī	i-minī	ī-minī
	a-ntur	e-ntur	u-ntur	iu-ntur	iu-ntur

IMPERFECT TENSE

	vocā-	monē-	rege-	capie-	audī-
	ā-ba-r	ē-ba-r	ē-bā-r	iē-ba-r	iē-ba-r
	ā-bā-ris (re)	ē-bā-ris (re)	ē-bā-ris (re)	iē-bā-ris (re)	iē-bā-ris (re)
	ā-bā-tur	ē-bā-tur	ē-bā-tur	iē-bā-tur	iē-bā-tur
	ā-bā-mur	ē-bā-mur	ē-bā-mur	iē-bā-mur	iē-bā-mur
	ā-bā-minī	ē-bā-minī	ē-bā-minī	iē-bā-minī	iē-bā-minī
	ā-ba-ntur	ē-ba-ntur	ē-ba-ntur	iē-ba-ntur	iē-ba-ntur

Future Tense

voc-	mon-	reg-	cap-	aud-
ā-bo-r	ē-bo-r	a-r	ia-r	ia-r
ā-be-ris (re)	ē-be-ris (re)	ē-ris (re)	iē-ris (re)	iē-ris (re)
ā-bi-tur	ē-bi-tur	ē-tur	iē-tur	iē-tur
ā-bi-mur	ē-bi-mur	ē-mur	iē-mur	iē-mur
ā-bi-minī	ē-bi-minī	ē-minī	iē-minī	iē-minī
ā-bu-ntur	ē-bu-ntur	e-ntur	ie-ntur	ie-ntur

	Perfect Tense	Pluperfect Tense	Future Perfect Tense
vocāt-, monit-, rēct-, capt-, audīt- + us, a, um	sum	eram	erō
	es	erās	eris
	est	erat	erit
	sumus	erāmus	erimus
	estis	erātis	eritis
	sunt	erant	erunt

611. Imperative Mood

Present Tense

voc-	mon-	reg-	cap-	aud-
ār-e	ē-re	e-re	e-re	ī-re
ā-minī	ē-minī	i-minī	i-minī	ī-minī

Future Tense

voc-	mon-	reg-	cap-	aud-
ā-tor	ē-tor	i-tor	i-tor	ī-tor
ā-tor	ē-tor	i-tor	i-tor	ī-tor
——	——	——	——	——
a-ntor	e-ntor	u-ntor	iu-ntor	iu-ntor

TABLE OF CONJUGATION: PASSIVE VOICE

Stems	**vocā-**	**monē-**	**rege-**	**capie-**	**audī-**

612. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

	vocā-	**monē-**	**rege-**	**capie-**	**audī-**
	e-r	ea-r	a-r	ia-r	ia-r
	ē-ris (re)	eā-ris (re)	ā-ris (re)	iā-ris (re)	iā-ris (re)
	ē-tur	eā-tur	ā-tur	iā-tur	iā-tur
	ē-mur	eā-mur	ā-mur	iā-mur	iā-mur
	ē-minī	eā-minī	ā-minī	iā-minī	iā-minī
	e-ntur	ea-ntur	a-ntur	ia-ntur	ia-ntur

IMPERFECT TENSE

	vocā-	**monē-**	**rege-**	**capie-**	**audī-**
	ā-re-r	ē-re-r	e-re-r	e-re-r	ī-re-r
	ā-rē-ris (re)	ē-rē-ris (re)	e-rē-ris (re)	e-rē-ris (re)	ī-rē-ris (re)
	ā-rē-tur	ē-rē-tur	e-rē-tur	e-rē-tur	ī-rē-tur
	ā-rē-mur	ē-rē-mur	e-rē-mur	e-rē-mur	ī-rē-mur
	ā-rē-minī	ē-rē-minī	e-rē-minī	e-rē-minī	ī-rē-minī
	ā-re-ntur	ē-re-ntur	e-re-ntur	e-re-ntur	ī-re-ntur

	PERFECT TENSE		PLUPERFECT TENSE
vocāt- monit- rēct- capt- audīt-	us, a, um	sim	essem
		sīs	essēs
		sit	esset
		sīmus	essēmus
	ī, ae, a	sītis	essētis
		sint	essent

613. INFINITIVE

PRES.	voc-ārī	mon-ērī	reg-ī	cap-ī	aud-īrī
PERF.	vocāt-us esse	monit-us esse	rēct-us esse	capt-us esse	audīt-us esse
FUT.	vocāt-um īrī	monit-um īrī	rēct-um īrī	capt-um īrī	audīt-um īrī

614. PARTICIPLE

PERF.	vocāt-us	monit-us	rēct-us	capt-us	audīt-us
GERUNDIVE	voc-andus	mon-endus	reg-endus	cap-iendus	aud-iendus

TABLE OF CONJUGATION

IRREGULAR VERBS

615. INDICATIVE MOOD

sum	eram	erō	fuī	fueram	fuerō
es	erās	eris	fuistī	fuerās	fueris
est	erat	erit	fuit	fuerat	fuerit
sumus	erāmus	erimus	fuimus	fuerāmus	fuerimus
estis	erātis	eritis	fuistis	fuerātis	fueritis
sunt	erant	erunt	fuērunt (-re)	fuerant	fuerint

616. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

sim	essem	fuerim	fuissem
sīs	essēs	fueris	fuissēs
sit	esset	fuerit	fuisset
sīmus	essēmus	fuerimus	fuissēmus
sītis	essētis	fueritis	fuissētis
sint	essent	fuerint	fuissent

617. IMPERATIVE MOOD

PRESENT { es / este

FUTURE { estō / estō / estōte / suntō

618. INFINITIVE

PRESENT	esse
PERFECT	fuisse
FUTURE	fore *or* futūrus esse
FUT. PART.	futūrus, a, um

619. INDICATIVE MOOD

pos-sum	volō	nōlō	mālō	fīō
pot-es	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs	fīs
pot-est	vult	nōn vult	māvult	fit
pos-sumus	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus	fīmus
pot-estis	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis	fītis
pos-sunt	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt	fiunt

INDICATIVE MOOD (*Continued*)

pot-eram	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam	fīēbam
pot-erō	volam	nōlam	mālam	fīam
pot-uī	voluī	nōluī	māluī	factus sum
pot-ueram	volueram	nōlueram	māluēram	factus eram
pot-uerō	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō	factus erō

620. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

pos-sim	velim	nōlim	mālim	fīam
pos-sīs	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs	fīas
pos-sit	velit	nōlit	mālit	fīat
pos-sīmus	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus	fīāmus
pos-sītis	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis	fīātis
pos-sint	velint	nōlint	mālint	fīant
pos-sem	vellem	nōllem	māllem	fierem
pot-uerim	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim	factus sim
pot-uissem	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem	factus essem

621. INFINITIVE

PRESENT	posse	velle	nōlle	mālle	fierī
PERFECT	potuisse	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse	factus esse
				FUTURE	factum iri

622. PARTICIPLE

PRESENT	potēns	volēns	nōlēns	——	——
PERFECT	——	——	——	——	factus
GERUNDIVE	——	——	——	——	faciendus

623. INDICATIVE MOOD

e-ō	fer-ō	fer-o-r
ī-s	fer-s	fer-ris
i-t	fer-t	fer-tur
ī-mus	fer-i-mus	feri-mur
ī-tis	fer-tis	feri-minī
eu-nt	fer-u-nt	feru-ntur
ī-ba-m	ferē-ba-m	ferē-ba-r
ī-b-ō	fera-m	fera-r
ī-v-ī (i-ī)	tul-ī	lā-tus sum
ī-v-era-m	tul-era-m	lā-tus eram
ī-v-er-ō	tul-er-ō	lā-tus erō

624. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

ea-m	fera-m	fera-r
eā-s	ferā-s	ferā-ris (re)
ea-t	fera-t	ferā-tur
eā-mus	ferā-mus	ferā-mur
eā-tis	ferā-tis	ferā-minī
ea-nt	fera-nt	fera-ntur
ī-re-m	fer-re-m	fer-re-r
ī-v-eri-m	tul-eri-m	lā-tus sim
ī-v-isse-m	tul-isse-m	lā-tus essem

625. IMPERATIVE MOOD

PRESENT	ī	fer	fer-re
	ī-te	fer-te	feri-minī
FUTURE	ī-tō	fer-tō	fer-tor
	ī-tō	fer-tō	fer-tor
	ī-tōte	fer-tōte	——
	eu-ntō	feru-ntō	feru-ntor

626. INFINITIVE

PRESENT	ī-re	fer-re	fer-rī
PERFECT	ī-v-isse	tul-isse	lā-tus esse
FUTURE	ī-tūr-us esse	lā-tūrus esse	lā-tum īrī

627. PARTICIPLE

PRESENT	iē-ns	ferē-ns	——
FUTURE	i-tūr-us	lā-tūr-us	fere-ndus
PERFECT	——	——	lā-tus

628. GERUND

eu-ndī, etc. fere-ndī, etc.

SUPINE

i-tum lā-tum

RULES OF SYNTAX

THE following rules have been given in the body of this book, preceded by illustrative examples and notes. They are repeated here for convenience of reference. The numbers following the rules refer to the illustrative examples.

629. Nominative Subject. — The subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative case (32).

630. Adjective. — An adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case (32).

631. Direct Object. — The direct object of a transitive verb is in the Accusative case (42).

632. Limiting Genitive. — A noun limiting another, and denoting a different person or thing, is in the Genitive case (52).

633. Order of Words. — The normal order of a Latin sentence is: subject, modifiers of the subject, modifiers of the verb, verb; but this order is constantly changed for the sake of emphasis (53).

634. Indirect Object. — The Dative is the case of the indirect object, and is used with verbs of giving, and others whose meaning permits (58).

635. Ablative of Separation. — Verbs of depriving and freeing take the Ablative without a preposition. In case of other verbs of separation the usage varies, some taking the Ablative with a preposition, some without, and some admitting either construction (70).

636. Complementary Infinitive. — The Infinitive is used with verbs meaning to decide, hasten, begin, and in general with those requiring a second action of the same subject to complete their meaning (74).

637. Predicate Nominative. — A noun in the predicate with an intransitive or passive verb, agrees with the subject in case (75).

638. Appositive. — A noun limiting another, and denoting the same person or thing, is said to be in apposition with it, and agrees with it in case (**75**).

639. Ablative of Specification. — The Ablative is used to express that in respect to which anything is, or is done (**94**).

640. Ablative of Accompaniment. — The Ablative with **cum** is used to express accompaniment, but in military phrases **cum** may be omitted (**114**).

641. Adjectives as Substantives. — Plural adjectives are used quite frequently as substantives, the masculine to denote persons, the neuter to denote things (**119**).

642. Double Dative. — The Latin often uses a Dative of the object for which together with another Dative of the person for whom, where the English uses a predicate noun, and an indirect object. This is called the Double Dative, and is used principally with the verb **sum** (**129**).

643. Accusative of Time and Space. — Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the Accusative (**141**).

644. Dative of the Possessor. — The Dative is used with **sum** and similar verbs to denote the possessor (**146**).

645. Agreement of Relative. — The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; but its case depends upon its relation to other words in the sentence (**148**).

646. Ablative of Quality or Description. — The Ablative, with an adjective in agreement with it, is used to express quality (**157**).

647. Ablative of Time. — Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative (**167**).

648. Ablative Absolute. — A noun or pronoun limited by a participle is often used in the construction called the Ablative Absolute, to express the time or other circumstances of an action (**176**).

NOTE. — Two nouns or a noun and an adjective may be used together in the Ablative Absolute (**178**).

649. Ablative of Cause. — The Ablative is used with or without a preposition to denote cause (**184**).

NOTE. — The prepositions **dē** and **ex** with the Ablative, and **ob** and **propter** with the Accusative, are used to express cause (**184**).

650. Ablative of Manner. — The manner in which an act is performed is expressed by a noun in the Ablative with **cum** when it has no qualifying adjective, by the Ablative with or without **cum** when it has a qualifying adjective (**192**).

651. Ablative with Comparatives. — The Ablative is used after the comparative when **quam** is omitted, but when it is expressed the same case follows as precedes (**204**).

NOTE. — **Quam** *may* be used with any case preceding; it *need not* be used after the Nominative or Accusative; it *must* be used after the other cases.

652. Use of Comparative. — The comparative is sometimes used to express a rather high or too high a degree of the quality (**205**, 1).

653. Use of Superlative. — The superlative is often used to express not the highest, but a very high, degree of the quality (**205**, 2).

654. Ablative of Means. — The means or instrument of an action is expressed by the Ablative without a preposition (**224**).

655. Prepositions. — The following prepositions govern the Ablative only:

Ā, ab, or **abs, absque, dē,**
Cōram, palam, cum, ex, ē,
Sine, tenus, prō and **prae.**

In, sub, subter, and **super** govern both Ablative and Accusative. All other prepositions govern the Accusative only (**228**).

656. Special Rules for Prepositions. —

1. **Ab** is used where motion *away from* a place is indicated.
2. **Ex** is used where motion *out of* a place is indicated.
3. **In** and **sub** govern the Accusative with verbs of motion, the Ablative with verbs of rest (**229**).

657. Ablative of the Agent. — The voluntary agent of an action is expressed by **ā** or **ab** with the Ablative case (**230**).

658. Adjectives of Order and Succession. — Adjectives of order and succession, including superlatives and some comparatives, denote *what part* of an object is meant (**237**).

659. Alius and Alter. — **Alius** and **alter**, repeated in another case, express briefly a double statement (**251**).

660. Indirect Discourse, Simple Sentences. — Statements after verbs and other expressions of saying, perceiving, thinking, and the like are expressed by the Infinitive with a subject in the Accusative (**263**).

661. Ablative of Degree of Difference. — The Ablative is used without a preposition to express the degree of difference between two persons or things (**267**).

662. Dative with Adjectives. — The Dative is used with adjectives denoting resemblance, fitness, nearness, and the like, with their opposites (**289**).

NOTE. — Adjectives of fitness may take an Accusative with **ad**.

663. Dative with Intransitives. — Some verbs, intransitive in Latin, though apparently transitive, are followed by a Dative of the indirect object. Such are verbs denoting to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare (**294**).

664. Partitive Genitive. — Words denoting a part are used with a Genitive of the whole to which the part belongs (**299**).

NOTE. — Cardinal numbers and **quīdam** generally take the Ablative with **ex** or **dē** to express the whole of which a part is taken, the ordinals generally take the partitive Genitive (**300**).

665. Time of Infinitive. — The Infinitive expresses time relative to that of the verb upon which it depends (**304**).

666. Dative with Compounds. — Most verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub,** and **super,** and some with **circum,** are used with the Dative case (**310**).

667. Ablative with Deponents. — **Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,** and **vescor,** with their compounds, take the Ablative (**316**).

668. Two Accusatives. — Verbs of naming, making, choosing, calling, and showing take two Accusatives, one of the person or thing affected, the other a predicative Accusative (**357**).

NOTE. — In the passive the direct object becomes the subject, and the predicate Accusative the predicate Nominative.

669. Constructions of Place. — 1. The place from which is regularly expressed by the Ablative with a preposition, regularly **ab, dē,** or **ex**; but names of towns and small islands, also **domus** and **rūs,** omit the preposition (**393**).

2. The place to which is regularly expressed by the Accusative with a preposition; but names of towns and small islands, also **domus** and **rūs,** omit the preposition (**394**).

3. The place in which is regularly expressed by the Ablative with the preposition **in**; but names of towns and small islands, also **domus** and **rūs,** are put into the Locative (**395**).

NOTE. — The Locative has the same form as the Genitive in singulars of the first and second declensions; but in singulars of the third declension and in all plurals the same as the Dative or Ablative. The Locative forms of **domus** and **rūs** are **domī** and **rūrī**.

670. The Subjunctive. — The Subjunctive is used in independent clauses to express —

1. An exhortation, a command, a prohibition: the Hortatory Subjunctive.
2. A wish: the Optative Subjunctive.
3. A possibility: the Potential Subjunctive.
4. Doubt or indignation in questions: The Dubitative Subjunctive (**401**).

671. Sequence of Tenses. — In complex sentences a primary tense in the principal clause is followed by a primary in the subordinate; a secondary by a secondary (**410**).

672. Clauses of Purpose. — In clauses of purpose the Subjunctive is used with **ut** affirmative and **nē** negative (**419**).

673. Verbs of Fearing. — Verbs and other expressions of fearing are followed by the Subjunctive with **nē** affirmative and **ut** negative (**426**).

674. Relative Clauses of Purpose. — Clauses introduced by relatives and used to express purpose have their verbs in the Subjunctive, and follow the general laws for the sequence of tenses (**434**).

675. Clauses of Result. — 1. Pure result is expressed by the Subjunctive with **ut** affirmative, **ut nōn** negative (**441**).

2. After expressions of doubt, hindrance, and the like, the Subjunctive with **quīn** is used (**441**).

676. Subjunctive of Characteristic. — The Subjunctive is used, especially after expressions of existence and non-existence and questions implying a negative answer, to express a characteristic or essential quality of the subject (**448**).

677. Indirect Questions. — An indirect question is expressed by the Subjunctive (**454**).

678. Conditions. — More Vivid Future. — The Future (or Future Perfect) Indicative is used in the protasis of more vivid future conditions, and the Future Indicative in the apodosis (**468**).

679. Conditions. — Less Vivid Future. — The Present (or Perfect) Subjunctive is used in the protasis of less vivid future conditions, and the Present Subjunctive in the apodosis (**468**).

680. Conditions. — Contrary to Fact. — The Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are used in both protasis and apodosis in conditions contrary to fact, the Imperfect to express present time and the Pluperfect to express past time (**474**).

681. Cum Causal and Concessive. — **Cum** is followed by the Subjunctive when introducing causal and concessive clauses (**487**).

682. Temporal Clauses. — 1. The particles **postquam, ubi, simul atque (simul ac)** take the Indicative, usually the Perfect.

2. **Cum** temporal is used with the Subjunctive when the circumstance or action depends upon another, or when the time is described. It is used with the Indicative when the time is made emphatic or defined (**494**).

NOTE. — In narrative **cum** temporal is almost always used with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive.

683. The Imperative. — 1. The Present Imperative is used in commands or entreaties, but where distinct reference is made to future time, the Future Imperative is used (**504**).

2. In prohibitions **nē** with the Perfect Subjunctive, or **nōlī** (**nōlīte**) with the Infinitive, is used (**504**).

684. The Gerund. — The Gerund, as a noun, has the construction of other nouns, and, as a verb, retains its power of governing an object (**517**).

685. The Gerundive. — The gerundive is used by preference instead of the Gerund when the latter would, if used, take a direct object. This object is then put into the case in which the Gerund, if used, would have been, and the Gerundive agrees with it in gender, number and case (**519**).

NOTE. — The Gerund and Gerundive are used to express purpose (**519**).

686. The Supine. — The former Supine is used with verbs of motion to express the purpose of the motion (**526**).

687. The latter Supine is used with some adjectives and a few other words to express the act in reference to which the quality is asserted (**525**).

688. Dative of the Agent. — The person upon whom the duty, necessity or obligation of an act rests is expressed by the use of the Dative of the agent with the second periphrastic conjugation (**537**).

689. Indirect Discourse. — In the indirect discourse the verbs of the principal propositions are in the Infinitive, the verbs of the subordinate propositions in the Subjunctive (**543**).

TABLE OF ABBREVIATIONS

Abl.	= Ablative.
abs.	= absolute.
Acc.	= Accusative.
act.	= active.
adj.	= adjective.
adv.	= adverb.
adv. phr.	= adverbial phrase.
app.	= apposition.
art.	= article.
comp.	= comparative.
conj.	= conjunction.
conj.	= conjugation.
cor.	= correlative.
Dat.	= Dative.
dec.	= declension.
def.	= defective.
der.	= derivative.
Eng.	= English.
etc.	= and so forth.
f., fem.	= feminine.
fut.	= future.
Gen.	= Genitive.
Impf.	= Imperfect.
Ind.	= Indicative.
ind. disc.	= indirect discourse.
indef.	= indefinite.
Inf.	= Infinitive.
inter.	= interrogative.
lit.	= literally.
m., masc.	= masculine.
neut.	= neuter.
Nom.	= Nominative.
n.	= note.
part.	= participle.
part.	= partitive.
pass.	= passive.
per.	= person.
Perf., Pf.	= Perfect.
pl.	= plural.
Plup.	= Pluperfect.
pos.	= positive.
post-posit.	= post-positive.
pred.	= predicate.
prep.	= preposition.
Pres.	= Present.
princ.	= principal.
pron.	= pronoun.
R.	= root.
rel.	= relative.
s., sing.	= singular.
subj.	= subject.
subst.	= substantive.
superl.	= superlative.
Voc.	= Vocative.
vocab.	= vocabulary.
w.	= with.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

ā, ab, or **abs,** prep. with Abl., *from, away from, by.*

abdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead away, take away.*

abeō, īre, īvī or **iī, itus,** *go away, depart.*

abhinc, adv. (of past time), w. Acc. or Abl., *ago, since.*

abiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, *throw away, throw down, abandon.*

abscīdō, ere, ī, scīsus, *break off, cut off* or *away.*

absum, esse, āfuī, futūrus, *be away from, be absent.*

ac, conj., *and.*

accēdō, ere, cessī, cessus, *draw near, approach.*

accidō, ere, cidī, —, *happen, occur;* w. Dat. pers., *happen to.*

accipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *accept, receive, entertain* (as guest).

ācer, cris, cre, adj., *sharp, eager, fierce.*

acerbus, a, um, adj., *bitter, sour.*

acervus, ī, m., *heap, pile.*

aciēs, ēī, f., *edge, line of battle, battle line.*

ācriter, adv., *sharply, fiercely.*

ad, prep. w. Acc., *to, toward, near to, by, at, for.*

addūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead to* or *towards, induce, persuade.*

adeō, īre, īvī or **iī, itus,** *go to, approach, visit.*

adequitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *ride towards,* w. **ad.**

adferō, ferre, attulī, adlātus, *bring to, report.*

aditus, ūs, m., *approach, access.*

Admētē, ēs, f., *Admete.*

administrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *manage, perform, accomplish.*

admīror, ārī, ātus sum, *wonder at, admire.*

adorior, īrī, tus sum, *approach, attack.*

adrogantia, ae, f., *arrogance, pride.*

adsentior, īrī, sēnsus sum, *agree with, assent to.*

adsequor, ī, secūtus sum, *pursue, come up with.*

adsum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be near, be present;* w. Dat., *assist.*

Aduātucī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Aduatuci,* a people of Gaul.

adventus, ūs, m., *approach, arrival.*

adversus, a, um, adj., *turned towards, opposite.*

adversō colle, *up hill.*

advocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call, summon.*

aedificium, ī, n., *building.*

Aeduī, ōrum, m. pl., *Aedui,* a tribe in Gaul.

aeger, gra, grum, adj., *sick.*

aēneus, a, um, adj., *of bronze, brazen.*

aequāliter, adv., *equally, uniformly.*

aequus, a, um, adj., *equal, fair.*

aestās, ātis, f., *summer;* **aestāte initā,** *in the beginning of summer.*

aetās, ātis, f., *life, age.*

ager, grī, m., *field, territory.*

agger, eris, m., *rampart, mound.*

aggredior, gredī, gressus sum, *go to, approach, attack.*

āgmen, inis, n., *line, army on the march.*

āgmen claudō, *bring up the rear.*

āgnus, ī, m., *lamb.*

agō, ere, ēgī, āctus, *do, drive, move, construct, plead.*

agō grātiās tibi, *I thank you.*

agrestis, e, adj., *country, rural.*
agricola, ae, m., *farmer.*
agricultūra, ae, f., *agriculture.*
alacritās, ātis, f., *eagerness, alacrity.*
ālārius, a, um, adj., *of the wing.*
ālāriī, ōrum, m. pl., *auxiliaries.*
aliēnus, a, um, adj., *belonging to another, strange, unfriendly.*
aliō, adv., *elsewhere.*
aliquis, aliquid, indef. pron., *some one, some body, some thing.*
alius, a, ud, pronom. adj., *another, other;* **alius . . . alius**, *one . . . another;* **aliī aliam in partem**, *some in one direction, others in another.*
Allobrogēs, um, m. pl., *the Allobroges*, a warlike people in Gaul.
Alpēs, ium, f. pl., *the Alps.*
alter, era, erum, pronom. adj., *the other of two, the other, the one of two;* **alter . . . alter**, *the one . . . the other.*
altitūdō, inis, f., *height, altitude.*
altus, a, um, adj., *high, deep.*
Amāzōn, onis, f., *an Amason, a warlike woman.*
amicitia, ae, f., *friendship.*
amicus, a, um, adj., *friendly.*
amicus, ī, m., *friend.*
āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *send away, dismiss, lose.*
amnis, is, m., *river, stream.*
amplius, indec., n. comp. of **amplus**, *more, further;* w. numerals, *more than.*
amplus, a, um, adj., *large, wide, ample.*
ancora, ae, f., *anchor.*
angustus, a, um, adj., *narrow.*
animal, ālis, n., *animal.*
animus, ī, m., *mind, courage, disposition.*
annus, ī, m., *year.*
ante, prep. w. Acc., *before, in front of.*
ante, adv., *before, previously.*
antīquitus, adv., *in former times, anciently, long ago.*
aper, prī, m., *wild boar.*
apertus, a, um, adj., *open.*
appellō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call, address, call by name.*
appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātus, *come near, approach.*
apud, prep. w. Acc., *among, with.*
aqua, ae, f., *water.*
Aquītānī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Aquitani*, the people of Aquitania.
Aquītānia, ae, f., *Aquitania*, a division of Gaul.
Arar, aris, m., a river in Gaul, now the Saone.
arbitror, ārī, ātus sum, *think, suppose, believe.*
arbor, oris, f., *tree.*
Arcadia, ae, f., *Arcadia*, a mountainous province in Greece.
arcessō, ere, īvī, ītus, *send for, summon.*
Ariovistus, ī, m., *Ariovistus*, the king of a German tribe.
arma, ōrum, n. pl., *arms.*
armātī, ōrum, m. pl., *armed men.*
armiger, erī, m., *armor bearer.*
armō, āre, āvī, ātus, *arm, equip.*
ars, artis, f., *art, skill.*
ascendō, ere, ī, scēnsus, *go up, mount up, climb.*
ascēnsus, ūs, m., *ascent.*
asportō, āre, āvī, ātus, *carry away.*
at, conj., *but, but indeed, yet, however.*
Athēna, ae, f., *Athene.*
Athēnae, ārum, f. pl., *Athens.*
Atlās, antis, m., *Atlas*, a fabled king of Mauretania.
atque, conj., *and, and so, and even.*
attingō, ere, tigī, tāctus, *touch, reach.*
auceps, cipis, m., *bird catcher.*
auctor, ōris, m., *author.*
auctōritās, ātis, f., *authority, influence, reputation.*
audācia, ae, f., *boldness, daring, audacity, insolence.*
audācius, comp. adv., *more boldly, too boldly.*
audāx, ācis, adj., *bold, daring.*
audeō, ēre, ausus sum, *dare.*
audiō, īre, īvī, ītus, *hear.*
auferō, ferre, abstulī, ablātus, *carry off* or *away.*
Augēas, ae, m., *Augeas.*
aureus, a, um, adj., *of gold, golden.*
aurum, ī, n., *gold.*
aut, conj., *or;* **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or.*

autem, post-posit. conj., *but, moreover, however.*
auxilium, ī, n., *aid, help.*
avāritia, ae, f., *greed, avarice.*
āvertō, ere, ī, versus, *turn away, avert, turn;* **āversum hostem**, *the back of an enemy.*
avis, is, f., *bird.*
Axona, ae, m., a river in Gaul, now the Aisne.

B

barbarus, a, um, *foreign, strange, barbarous.*
barbarus, ī, m., *foreigner, stranger, barbarian.*
Belgae, ārum, m. pl., *the Belgae*, a warlike people of N. Gaul.
bellicōsus, a, um, adj., *warlike.*
bellō, āre, āvī, ātus, *wage* or *carry on war, war.*
Bellovacī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Bellovaci*, a people in Gaul.
bellum, ī, n., *war.*
bēlua, ae, f., *beast, monster, animal.*
bene, adv., *well, successfully.*
benefactor, ōris, m., *benefactor.*
beneficium, ī, n., *kindness, favor, benefit.*
benignē, adv., *kindly, courteously.*
Bibracte, is, n., *Bibracte*, the chief town of the Aedui, now Autun.
Bibrax, actis, f., *Bibrax*, a town of the Remi, now Bièvre.
Bibulus, ī, m., a proper name. *M. Calpurnius Bibulus*, consul with Caesar.
biceps, cipitis, adj., *two-headed.*
bīduum, ī, n., *space of two days, two days.*
Bistonēs, um, m. pl., *the Bistones*, a people of Thrace.
bonus, a, um, adj., *good.*
bonum, ī, n., *a good thing.*
bōs, bovis, m. and f., *ox, bull, cow.*
brevis, e, adj., *short, brief.*

C

C., abbreviation for **Gāius.**
c., abbreviation for **centum**, *one hundred.*
caelum, ī, n., *sky, heaven.*
Caesar, aris, m., *C. Julius Caesar* [100–44 B.C.].
calamitās, ātis, f., *disaster, calamity.*
calcar, āris, n., *spur.*
cālō, ōnis, m., *soldier's servant, camp follower.*
calor, ōris, m., *heat.*
campus, ī, m., *plain, field.*
canis, is, m. and f., *dog.*
capiō, ere, cēpī, captus, *take, seize, capture, choose, form.*
capra, ae, f., *she-goat.*
captīvus, ī, m., *captive, prisoner.*
captus, a, um, adj., *taken, charmed.*
caput, itis, n., *head.*
carcer, eris, m., *prison, jail.*
cārē, adv., *dearly.*
carō, carnis, f., *flesh.*
carpō, ere, sī, tus, *pick, pluck, gather.*
carrus, ī, m., *two-wheeled wagon.*
cārus, a, um, adj., *dear, precious.*
castellum, ī, n., *fort, stronghold, fortress, redoubt.*
Casticus, ī, m., *Casticus.*
castra, ōrum, n. pl., *camp.*
cāsus, ūs, m., *chance, accident, event, misfortune.*
catēna, ae, f., *chain.*
Catilīna, ae, m., *Catiline*, a conspirator against Rome.
causa, ae, f., *cause, reason;* **causā**, *for the sake of*, w. Gen.; in this sense it follows the word which it governs.
celeritās, ātis, f., *swiftness, quickness, speed.*
celeriter, adv., *quickly;* **celerrimē**, superl. deg., *very quickly;* **quam celerrimē**, *as quickly as possible.*
cēlō, āre, āvī, ātus, *conceal.*
Celtae, ārum, m. pl., *the Celts*, a people of Gaul.
centum, indec. adj., *a hundred.*
centuriō, ōnis, m., *captain, centurion.*
Cerberus, ī, m., *Cerberus*, a three-headed monster.
certē, adv., *certainly, surely, of course.*
certior factus, *having been informed.*
certus, a, um, adj., *certain, sure.*
cervus, ī, m., *stag, deer.*
circiter, adv., *about, near.*

circum, prep. w. Acc., *around, about, near.*
circumeō, īre, īvī or **iī, itus**, *go around, surround.*
circumveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, *come around, surround.*
cis, citrā, prep. w. Acc., *on this side of.*
citerior, ius, comp. adj., *hither.*
cīvis, is, m. and f., *citizen.*
cīvitās, ātis, f., *state.*
clam, adv., *secretly.*
clāmor, ōris, m., *shout, clamor.*
clārus, a, um, adj., *clear, famous, celebrated.*
claudō, ere, clausī, clausus, *close, shut, shut up.*
claudō āgmen, *bring up the rear.*
clāva, ae, f., *club.*
coepī, isse, def. verb, *begin.*
cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus, *learn, find out, know, understand.*
cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus, *drive together, collect, compel.*
cohors, ortis, f., *company of soldiers, cohort.*
cohortor, āri, ātus sum, *exhort, encourage.*
collis, is, m., *hill.*
columba, ae, f., *dove, pigeon.*
columna, ae, f., *column, pillar.*
commeātus, ūs, m., *a going to and fro, provisions.*
commemorō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call to mind, relate.*
committō, ere, mīsī, missus, *commit, begin, join, wage.*
commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move, excite, alarm, disturb.*
commūniō, īre, īvī, ītus, *fortify on all sides, fortify.*
comparō, āre, āvī, ātus, *get together, prepare, arrange.*
compellō, ere, pulī, pulsus, *drive together, drive, move.*
compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus, *fill completely, fill.*
compōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *place together, arrange, compare.*
cōnātus, ūs, m., *attempt, trial, undertaking.*
concēdō, ere, cessī, cessus, *retire, withdraw, yield, concede.*
concīdō, ere, cidī, cīsus, *cut to pieces, kill, destroy.*
concilium, ī, n., *council.*
conclāmō, āre, āvī, ātus, *shout aloud, cry out, shout.*
concordia, ae, f., *concord, harmony.*
condiciō, ōnis, f., *condition, agreement, terms.*
conditor, ōris, m., *founder.*
condō, ere, didī, ditus, *put together, found, establish, hide.*
condūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead together, hire.*
cōnferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *bring together.*
cōnfertus, a, um, adj., *crowded;* **cōnfertissimō āgmine**, *in a densely compact body, in a solid mass.*
cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *complete, accomplish, finish.*
cōnfīdō, ere, fīsus sum, *rely upon, trust*, w. Dat.
cōnfirmō, āre, āvī, ātus, *confirm, establish, strengthen.*
cōnfugiō, ere, fūgī, —, *flee for refuge.*
coniciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, *hurl, throw together.*
coniungō, ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, *join together, unite.*
coniūrātiō, ōnis, f., *conspiracy.*
coniūrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *swear together, conspire.*
conligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, *collect.*
conlocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *arrange, place, set, station.*
conloquium, ī, n., *dialogue, conference, colloquium.*
conloquor, quī, cūtus sum, *talk together, converse.*
cōnor, ārī, ātus sum, *try, attempt.*
cōnsanguineus, ī, m., *kinsman.*
cōnscrībō, ēre, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *enroll, enlist.*
cōnsēnsus, ūs, m., *consent.*
cōnsentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *agree, conspire.*
cōnsequor, quī, cūtus sum, *pursue, overtake.*

cōnserō, ere, uī, tus, *join;* **cōnserere manūs,** *join battle.*
cōnservō, āre, āvī, ātus, *preserve, save.*
cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus, *settle, encamp.*
cōnsilium, ī, n., *counsel, plan.*
cōnspectus, ūs, m., *sight, view.*
cōnspicor, ārī, ātus sum, *see, perceive.*
cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus, *station, agree upon, decide, appoint.*
cōnsuēscō, ere, ēvī, ētus, *become accustomed, be accustomed.*
cōnsuētūdō, inis, f., *custom.*
cōnsul, is, m., *consul,* one of the two highest Roman magistrates, chosen annually.
cōnsūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *use up, consume, destroy.*
contemnō, ere, tempsī, temptus, *despise, contemn.*
contendō, ere, tendī, tentus, *strive, contend, hasten.*
contentiō, ōnis, f., *contention, exertion.*
contentus, a, um, adj., *contented, content, satisfied.*
continenter, adv., *continuously.*
contineō, ēre, uī, tentus, *hold in, restrain, contain, check.*
continuus, a, um, adj., *continuous.*
contrā, prep. w. Acc., *against.*
contrahō, ere, trāxī, trāctus, *draw together, collect, produce.*
contumēlia, ae, f., *abuse, reproach.*
conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, *come together, assemble.*
convertō, ere, ī, versus, *turn about, change.*
convocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call together, summon.*
cōpia, ae, f., *supply, abundance;* pl., *troops, supplies.*
cōpiae domesticae, f. pl., *supplies from home.*
cor, cordis, n., *heart.*
cōram, prep. w. Abl., *in the presence of.*
cornū, ūs, n., *horn, wing.*
corpus, oris, n., *body.*
corripiō, ere, uī, reptus, *seize, take hold of, snatch.*
corrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus, *destroy, ruin.*
cottīdiānus, a, um, adj., *daily.*
cottīdiē, adv., *daily, each day.*
crās, adv., *to-morrow.*
Crassus, ī, m., *Crassus.*
Crastinus, ī, m., *C. Crastinus.*
crēber, bra, brum, adj., *frequent, numerous.*
crēdō, ere, didī, ditus, *believe.*
creō, āre, āvī, ātus, *make, elect.*
Crēta, ae, f., *Crete,* an island in the Mediterranean Sea.
Crēticus, a, um, adj., *Cretan, of Crete.*
crūdēlis, e, adj., *cruel.*
crux, crucis, f., *cross;* **tollere in crucem,** *crucify.*
culpa, ae, f., *fault, blame.*
culpō, āre, āvī, ātus, *blame, censure.*
cum, prep. w. Abl., *with, along with, in company with.*
cum, conj., *when, since, although, after, while.*
cupiditās, ātis, f., *desire, greed.*
cupidus, a, um, adj., *desirous of.*
cupiō, ere, īvī, ītus, *desire, wish.*
cūr, adv., *why.*
cūra, ae, f., *care, anxiety.*
Curēs, ium, m. and f. pl., *Cures,* ancient town of the Sabines.
currō, ere, cucurrī, cursus, *run, hasten.*
currus, ūs, m., *chariot, car.*
cūstōdiō, īre, īvī, ītus, *watch, guard.*
cūstōs, ōdis, m. and f., *guard, attendant.*
cymba, ae, f., *boat, skiff.*

D

dē, prep. w. Abl., *down, down from, concerning, about, of.*
dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus, *owe, ought.*
decem, indec. num., *ten.*
dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētus, *decide, decree.*
dēcerpō, ere, sī, tus, *tear off, gather, destroy.*
decimus, a, um, ord. num., *tenth.*
decumānus, a, um, adj., *decuman, rear.*
dēcurrō, ere, cucurrī, —, *run down.*
dēditiō, ōnis, f., *surrender.*
dēdō, ere, didī, ditus, *give up, surrender.*

dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead down* or *away, withdraw.*
dēfatīgō, āre, āvī, ātus, *wear out, exhaust.*
dēfendō, ere, ī, fēnsus, *defend.*
dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *bear down, report.*
dēfessus, a, um, adj., *wearied.*
dēiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, *hurl* or *throw down.*
deinde, adv., *afterwards, then.*
dēlectō, āre, āvī, ātus, *amuse.*
dēleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus, *lay low, destroy, annihilate.*
dēligō, āre, āvī, ātus, *bind fast.*
dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, *choose, select.*
Dēlos, ī, f., *Delos,* an island in the Aegaean Sea.
dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *point out, show, prove, indicate.*
dēmum, adv., *at last, finally.*
dēnique, adv., *at last.*
dēns, dentis, m., *tooth.*
dēnsus, a, um, adj., *thick, dense.*
dēpōnō, ēre, posuī, positus, *lay aside, give up.*
dēportō, āre, āvī, ātus, *bear off, bring home.*
dērīdeō, ēre, rīsī, rīsus, *laugh at, deride.*
dēscendō, ere, ī, scēnsus, *come down, descend.*
dēsīderō, āre, āvī, ātus, *long for, miss.*
dēsinō, ere, siī, —, *cease, leave off.*
dēsistō, ere, stitī, stitus, *cease, desist from.*
dēspērō, āre, āvī, ātus, *despair of.*
dēsum, esse, fuī, futūrus, w. Dat., *fail, be lacking to, desert.*
dēterior, ius, comp. adj., *worse.*
deus, ī, m., *god.*
dēvincō, ere, vīcī, victus, *overcome, subdue.*
dexter, tra, trum, adj., *right.*
Diāna, ae, f., *Diana,* a goddess.
dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus, *say, speak, relate, appoint, tell.*
dictum, ī, n., *saying, word.*
diēs, ēī, m. or f., *day.*
difficilis, e, adj., *difficult.*
dignus, a, um, adj. w. the Abl., *worthy, deserving.*
dīligenter, adv., *carefully, diligently, promptly.*
dīmittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *send apart, dismiss, release.*
Diomēdēs, is, m., *Diomedes,* king of the Bistones in Thrace.
discēdō, ere, cessī, cessus, *go away, depart, leave.*
discidium, ī, n., *discord, quarrel.*
discipulus, ī, m., *pupil.*
dispōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *dispose, arrange, station.*
dissimilis, e, adj., *unlike, dissimilar.*
distineō, ēre, uī, tentus, *hold apart, keep asunder, separate.*
diū, adv., *for a long time, long.*
diūtius, comp. adv., *any longer.*
dīversus, a, um, adj., *different, diverse, opposite.*
Dīvicō, ōnis, m., *Divico,* a general of the Helvetians.
dīvidō, ere, vīsī, vīsus, *separate, divide.*
dīvīsus, a, um, part., *divided, separated.*
Dīvitiacus, ī, m., *Divitiacus.*
dīvitiae, ārum, f. pl., *wealth, riches.*
dō, dare, dedī, datus, *give, permit, yield, grant, offer.*
doceō, ēre, uī, tus, *teach, show;* **doctus litterīs,** *learned.*
doleō, ēre, uī, itūrus, *feel pain, suffer pain, grieve for.*
dolus, ī, m., *guile, fraud, deceit.*
domesticus, a, um, adj., *domestic;* **domesticae cōpiae,** *supplies from home.*
dominus, ī, m., *master, lord.*
domus, ūs and **ī,** f., *house, home.*
dormiō, īre, īvī or **iī, ītūrus,** *sleep.*
dubitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *hesitate, doubt.*
ducentī, ae, a, card. num., *two hundred.*
dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead, draw, consider, think, extend.*
dulcis, e, adj., *sweet, pleasant.*
dum, conj., *while, until.*
Dumnorīx, īgis, m., *Dumnorix,* an Aeduan.
duo, duae, duo, card. num., *two.*
dux, ducis, m., *leader, commander.*

E

ē, ex, prep. w. Abl., *out of, from.*
ēdō, ere, didī, ditus, *put forth, make, cause.*
ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead out.*
ego, meī, pers. pron., *I.*
ēgredior, gredī, gressus sum, *go out.*
ēgregiē, adv., *excellently, exceedingly.*
ēgregius, a, um, adj., *excellent, remarkable, eminent.*
ēheu, interjection, *alas!*
ēiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, *cast out, drive out, expel.*
Ēlis, idis, f., *Elis*, a district of the Peloponnesus.
ēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *send out, let out, hurl.*
emō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus, *buy.*
ēnāscor, ī, nātus sum, *spring forth, arise.*
enim, conj., post-posit., *for.*
eō, īre, īvī or iī, itus, *go.*
epistula, ae, f., *letter, epistle.*
equa, ae, f., *mare.*
eques, itis, m., *horseman.*
equester, tris, tre, adj., *pertaining to a horseman, equestrian.*
equestrēs cōpiae, f. pl., *cavalry forces.*
equitātus, ūs, m., *cavalry.*
equus, ī, m., *horse.*
ēripiō, ere, uī, reptus, *snatch away, take away.*
ērudītus, a, um, adj., *learned, well-informed, educated.*
ēruptiō, ōnis, f., *breaking out, sally.*
Erymanthus, ī, m., *Erymanthus*, a chain of mountains in Arcadia; **Erymanthius, a, um**, adj., *Erymanthian.*
Erythīa, ae, f., *Erythia*, an island in the Bay of Cadiz.
et, conj., *and.*
et . . . et, *both . . . and.*
etiam, conj., *also, and also, even, and even.*
Eurystheus, ī, m., *Eurystheus*, a king of Mycenae.
Eurytiōn, ōnis, m., *Eurytion.*
ēvādō, ere, vāsī, vāsus, *go forth, escape.*
ēventus, ūs, m., *event, result, issue.*
ex, prep. w. Abl., see **ē.**
exeō, īre, īvī or iī, itus, *go out* or *forth, go away, depart.*
exerceō, ēre, uī, itus, *train, exercise.*
exercitātiō, ōnis, f., *exercise, practice.*
exercitus, ūs, m., *army.*
eximius, a, um, adj., *remarkable, illustrious.*
exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātus, *think, believe, suppose.*
expeditus, a, um, adj., *unencumbered, free.*
expellō, ere, pulī, pulsus, *drive out, expel, banish.*
explōrātor, ōris, m., *scout.*
expūgnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *take by assault, assault, storm.*
exsistō, ere, stitī, stitus, *stand forth, exist, appear.*
exspectō, āre, āvī, ātus, *await, expect, wait for.*
exstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus, *pile up, construct, raise.*
exterreō, ēre, uī, itus, *frighten, terrify.*
extrēmus, a, um, adj., *outermost, extreme, the end of.*

F

fābula, ae, f., *fable, story.*
facile, adv., *easily.*
facilis, e, adj., *easy.*
faciō, ere, fēcī, factus, *make, do, put, conclude, finish.*
facultās, ātis, f., *supply, opportunity.*
fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus, *deceive, cheat.*
falsus, a, um, adj., *false, groundless.*
fās, n., indec., *right.*
fēlīx, īcis, adj., *happy, fortunate.*
fera, ae, f., *wild beast.*
ferāx, ācis, adj., *fertile, productive.*
ferē, adv., *nearly, almost.*
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *bear, endure, bring, carry.*
fertilitās, ātis, f., *fertility.*
ferus, a, um, adj., *wild, fierce, barbarous, rough.*
fidēs, eī, f., *faith, protection, care.*
fīdō, ere, fīsus sum, *trust, rely upon.*
fidus, a, um, adj., *faithful.*
fīlia, ae, f., *daughter.*

fīliolus, ī, m., *little son, child.*
fīlius, ī, m., *son.*
finis, is, m., *end, limit;* pl., *territory, country.*
finitimus, a, um, adj., *neighboring;* as subst., **finitimī, ōrum**, m. pl., *neighbors.*
fiō, fierī, factus sum, *become, be made.*
flāgitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *demand.*
fleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus, *weep, cry.*
flētus, ūs, m., *weeping, tears.*
fluctus, ūs, m., *wave, billow.*
flūmen, inis, n., *river, stream.*
fōns, fontis, m., *fountain.*
fōrma, ae, f., *form, shape, appearance.*
formica, ae, f., *ant.*
forte, adv., *by chance.*
fortis, e, adj., *brave, powerful, courageous;*
fortissimus, a, um, superl. of **fortis**, *very brave, bravest.*
fortiter, adv., *bravely, courageously.*
fortūna, ae, f., *fortune, luck, chance, fate.*
fossa, ae, f., *trench, ditch, fosse.*
frāter, tris, m., *brother.*
frīgus, orīs, n., *cold.*
frūgēs, um, f. pl., *fruits of the field, produce of the fields.*
frūmentum, ī, n., *grain;* pl., *standing grain.*
fruor, ī, frūctus sum, w. Abl., *enjoy.*
frūstrā, adv., *in vain, to no purpose.*
fuga, ae, f., *flight.*
fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitus, *flee, run away.*
funditor, ōris, m., *slinger.*
fungor, ī, fūnctus sum, *perform.*
furor, ōris, m., *fury, madness.*

G

Galba, ae, m., *Galba.*
Gallī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Gauls.*
Gallia, ae, f., *Gaul.*
Gallicus, a, um, adj., *of the Gauls, Gallic.*
gallīna, ae, f., *hen.*
gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum, *rejoice, take pleasure.*
gelus, ūs, m., *cold, frost.*
gener, erī, m., *son-in-law.*
gēns, gentis, f., *tribe, nation.*
genus, eris, n., *kind, class, race.*
Germānī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Germans.*
gerō, ere, gessī, gestus, *wage, carry on, conduct, manage.*
Gēryōn, ōnis, m., *Geryon*, a mythical king in Spain.
gigās, antis, m., *giant.*
gladius, ī, m., *sword.*
glōria, ae, f., *glory, fame.*
gracilis, e, adj., *graceful.*
Graecus, a, um, adj., *Greek.*
grātia, ae, f., *favor, influence, kindness, obligation;* **grātiās tibi agō**, *I thank you.*
grātulor, ārī, ātus sum, *congratulate, rejoice with.*
gravis, e, adj., *heavy, weighty, dignified, serious.*
graviter, adv., *heavily, seriously, gravely.*
grex, gregis, m., *flock, herd.*

H

habeō, ēre, uī, itus, *have, hold, deliver, utter, consider.*
habitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *dwell, abide, remain, inhabit.*
haedus, ī, m., *kid.*
Harūdēs, um, m. pl., *the Harudes.*
harundō, inis, f., *reed, limed twigs.*
hasta, ae, f., *spear, lance.*
Hēlios, ī, m., *Helios*, the sun.
Helvētii, ōrum, m. pl., *the Helvetii*, a people of Gaul.
herbidus, a, um, adj., *grassy.*
Herculēs, is, m., *Hercules.*
Herculēae Columnae, f. pl., *the Pillars of Hercules.*
Herma, ae, m., *Hermes*, the messenger god.
Hesperidēs, um, f. pl., *the Hesperides*, daughters of Hesperus.
hīberna, ōrum, n. pl., *winter quarters.*
hīc, haec, hōc, dem. pron., *this, he, the latter.*
hīc, adv., *here.*
hiemō, āre, āvī, ātus, *winter, spend* or *pass the winter.*
hiems, mis, f., *winter, winter time.*

hinc, adv., *hence, thereupon.*
Hippolytē, ēs, f., *Hippolyte*, an Amazon.
Hispānia, ae, *f.*, *Spain.*
historia, ae, f., *narrative, history.*
hodiē, adv., *to-day.*
homō, inis, m. and f., *man, human being.*
honor, ōris, m., *honor.*
hōra, ae, f., *hour.*
hortus, ī, m., *garden.*
hospes, itis, m., *stranger, host, guest, guest friend.*
hospitium, ī, n., *hospitality.*
hostis, is, m. and f., *stranger, enemy.*
hūc, adv., *hither.*
humilis, e, adj., *humble.*
hydra, ae, f., *the Hydra, the water serpent.*

iaciō, ere, iēcī, **iactus**, *throw, cast, hurl.*
iam, adv., *now, already, long since.*
ibi, adv., *there.*
Iccius, ī, m., *Iccius.*
īdem, eadem, idem, dem. pron., *the same.*
identidem, adv., *again and again, repeatedly.*
idōneus, a, um, adj., *suitable, adapted, convenient.*
igitur, adv., *therefore.*
īgnis, is, m., *fire.*
ignōscō, ere, nōvī, **nōtus**, *pardon, forgive*, w. Dat.
ille, a, ud, dem. pron., *that, he, that well known, the former.*
imber, bris, m., *shower, rain.*
immortālis, e, adj., *immortal.*
impedimentum, ī, n., *hindrance, impediment;* pl., *baggage.*
impediō, īre, īvī, **ītus**, *impede, hinder, check, entangle.*
imperātor, ōris, m., *commander.*
imperātum, ī, n., *command, order.*
imperium, ī, n., *command, power, dominion.*
imperō, āre, āvī, **ātus**, *command, order.*
impetus, ūs, m., *attack, charge, assault, force.*
implicō, āre, āvī, or uī, **ātus** or **itus**, *entangle, entwine, enfold.*
implōrō, āre, āvī, **ātus**, *invoke, beseech, implore.*
impōnō, ere, posuī, **positus**, *place upon, put upon, impose.*
improbus, a, um, adj., *wicked, shameless, base.*
in, prep. w. Acc. and Abl.: w. Acc., *into, upon, among;* w. Abl., *in, on, over.*
inānis, e, adj., *empty, vain, useless.*
incalēscō, ere, caluī, —, *grow warm.*
incendō, ere, cendī, **cēnsus**, *set on fire, kindle, burn.*
incidō, ere, cidī, **cāsus**, *happen, fall upon.*
incipiō, ere, cēpī, **ceptus**, *begin.*
incitō, āre, āvī, **ātus**, *urge on, incite, arouse.*
incola, ae, m., *inhabitant.*
incolō, ere, uī, —, *dwell, inhabit.*
incolumis, e, adj., *uninjured, safe, unharmed.*
incrēdibilis, e, adj., *incredible.*
incursiō, ōnis, *f.*, *attack, invasion, hostile inroad.*
incūsō, āre, āvī, **ātus**, *accuse, blame, find fault with.*
inde, adv., *thence, then.*
indignitās, ātis, f., *indignity, insulting treatment.*
indignus, a, um, adj., *unworthy.*
indolēs, is, f., *character, disposition.*
ineō, īre, īvī or iī, **itus**, *go in* or *into, enter.*
inermis, e, adj., *unarmed, defenseless.*
inferior, ius, comp. adj., *lower.*
īnferō, ferre, tulī, **inlātus**, *bring upon, inflict, attack.*
īnfimus, a, um, superl. adj., *lowest.*
influō, ere, fluxī, **fluxus**, *flow into.*
ingēns, entis, adj., *huge, vast.*
inhiō, āre, āvī, **ātus**, *gape at, gaze at eagerly, long for.*
iniciō, ere, iēcī, **iectus**, *hurl* or *throw into, inspire.*
inimīcus, a, um, adj., *unfriendly, hostile;* as subst., *personal foe.*
inīquus, a, um, adj., *unjust, unfavorable.*
initium, ī, n., *beginning;* **initium faciō**, *begin.*
iniūria, ae, f., *injury, wrong, injustice.*
innāscor, ī, nātus sum, *grow, spring up.*

inopia, ae, f., *want, lack, scarcity.*
inquam, def. verb, *I say;* **inquit**, *he says, says he.*
insequor, ī, cūtus sum, *follow after, pursue.*
insidiae, ārum, f. pl., *snare, ambush, ambuscade.*
insolenter, adv., *unusually, haughtily, insolently.*
instruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus, *draw up, form, arrange.*
insula, ae, f., *island.*
integer, gra, grum, adj., *whole;* **integrīs vīribus**, *with fresh strength.*
intellegō, ere, lēxī, lēctus, *know, understand, perceive.*
inter, prep. w. Acc., *among, between;* **inter sē**, *to one another.*
intercēdō, ere, cessī, cessus, *come between, be between, intervene.*
interclūdō, ere, clūsī, clūsus, *cut off, shut off, hinder, prevent.*
interdiū, adv., *by day.*
intereā, adv., *in the meantime, meanwhile.*
interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *kill, destroy.*
interior, ius, comp. adj., *inner, interior of.*
interneciō, ōnis, f., *destruction, extermination, annihilation.*
interrogō, āre, āvī, ātus, *ask.*
interscindō, ere, scidī, scissus, *cut* or *break down, destroy.*
intervāllum, ī, n., *interval, distance.*
intimus, a, um, superl. adj., *inmost.*
intrā, prep. w. Acc., *within, among.*
intrōdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead within* or *into, introduce.*
intus, adv., *within.*
inveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, *come upon, find, find out.*
invideō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *envy, grudge.*
invocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call upon, invoke.*
ipse, a, um, intensive pron., *that* or *this very; self, himself, herself, very.*
īrācundus, a, um, adj., *irritable, passionate, angry.*
īrāscor, ī, ātus sum, *be angry.*
īrātus, a, um, adj., *angered, enraged, furious.*
is, ea, id, dem. pron., *that* or *this person, he, she, it.*
iste, a, ud, dem. pron., *this* or *that person; he, she, it*, referring especially to that which is near, or to the person addressed.
ita, adv., *thus, so; yes, it is so, true.*
Ītalia, ae, f., *Italy.*
itaque, conj., *and so, therefore.*
item, adv., *likewise, again, also.*
iter, itineris, n., *journey, road, right of way, march;* **ex itinere**, *on the march;* **iter facere**, *march.*
iterum, adv., *again, a second time.*
iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus, *order, bid, command.*
iūcundus, a, um, adj., *pleasing, agreeable, entertaining.*
iūdex, icis, m., *judge.*
iūdicō, āre, āvī, ātus, *judge.*
iugum, ī, n., *yoke.*
iūmentum, ī, n., *beast of burden, draught animal.*
iūnior, ius, comp. adj., *younger.*
Iuppiter, Iovis, m., *Jupiter*, the chief god among the Romans.
Iūra, ae, m., *Jura*, a chain of mountains extending from the Rhine to the Rhone.
iūs, iūris, n., *right, justice, law.*
iūstitia, ae, f., *justice.*
iūstus, a, um, adj., *just, right, fair, equitable.*
iuvenis, is, m., *young man.*
iuvō, āre, iūvī, iūtus, *assist, help, aid.*

L

L, abbreviation for **Lūcius.**
Lābiēnus, ī, m., *Labienus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
labor, ōris, m., *labor, work.*
lacessō, ere, īvī or **iī, ītus**, *excite, attack, harass, irritate.*
lacus, ūs, m., *lake.*
laetus, a, um, adj., *joyful, glad.*
laniō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tear* or *rend in pieces, mangle.*
lapis, idis, m., *stone.*
laqueus, ī, m., *noose, snare, trap.*

lātitūdō, inis, f., *width, breadth.*
lātus, a, um, adj., *wide, broad.*
latus, eris, n., *side, flank.*
laudō, āre, āvī, ātus, *praise.*
laus, laudis, f., *praise, glory.*
lavō, āre, lāvī, lautus or **lōtus**, *wash, bathe;* pass., *bathe.*
lēgātiō, ōnis, f., *embassy, legation.*
lēgātus, ī, m., *lieutenant, ambassador.*
legiō, ōnis, f., *legion*, consisting of ten cohorts, from 4000 to 6000 men.
legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, *gather, collect, read.*
lēnis, e, adj., *smooth.*
lēniter, adv., *smoothly, gently.*
leō, ōnis, m., *lion.*
Lernaeus, a, um, adj., *Lernaean, of Lerna.*
lēx, lēgis, f., *law.*
libenter, adv., *gladly, willingly.*
liber, brī, m., *book.*
līber, era, erum, adj., *free.*
līberālitās, ātis, f., *kindness, generosity, liberality.*
līberī, ōrum, m. pl., *children* (of free-born parents).
līberō, āre, āvī, ātus, *free, deliver, liberate.*
libet, libuit, libitum est, impers. verb, *it pleases;* **sī tibi libet**, *if you please.*
Libya, ae, f., *Libya, Africa.*
Lingonēs, um, m. pl., *the Lingones.*
lingua, ae, f., *tongue, language.*
linter, tris, f., *boat.*
Liscus, ī, m., *Liscus.*
littera, ae, f., *letter of the alphabet;* pl., *letter, epistle.*
locus, ī, m., *place;* in pl. neut., **loca, ōrum.**
longus, a, um, adj., *long.*
loquor, ī, cūtus sum, *speak, plead, talk.*
lūdificō, āre, āvī, ātus, *make sport of, mock, delude.*
lūdō, ere, sī, sus, *play, sport, make fun of, ridicule.*
lupus, ī, m., *wolf.*
lūx, lūcis, f., *light;* **lūce prīmā**, *at daybreak.*

M

M., abbreviation for **Mārcus.**
magis, comp. adv., *more.*
magister, trī, m., *teacher, master.*
magistrātus, ūs, m., *magistrate.*
māgnificē, adv., *nobly, magnificently.*
māgnitūdō, inis, f., *greatness, size, magnitude.*
māgnus, a, um, adj., *great, large;* **māgnīs itineribus**, *by forced marches.*
māior, ius, comp. of **māgnus**, *greater, larger.*
māiōrēs, um, m. pl., *ancestors.*
maie, adv., *badly, ill, wickedly.*
maiedīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus, *speak ill of, abuse, revile.*
maleficium, ī, n., *evil deed, injury, wrong.*
māiō, mālle, māiuī, —, *prefer, wish rather.*
mālum, ī, n., *apple.*
malum, ī, n., *evil thing, misfortune, calamity.*
malus, a, um, adj., *evil, wicked, bad, injurious.*
mandātum, ī, n., *injunction, command, order.*
mandō, āre, āvī, ātus, *order, command, commit, intrust.*
maneō, ēre, mānsī, sus, *remain.*
manipulus, ī, m., *company, maniple.*
mānsuēfaciō, ere, fēcī, factus, *make tame, tame.*
manus, ūs, f., *hand, band.*
mare, is, n., *sea.*
maritimus, a, um, adj., *pertaining to the sea, maritime.*
Marius, ī, m., *C. Marius*, the uncle of Caesar.
massa, ae, f., *mass, lump.*
māter, tris, f., *mother.*
mātūrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *hasten, make haste.*
mātūrus, a, um, adj., *ripe, fit, early.*
māximē, superl. adv., *especially.*
māximus, a, um, superl. adj., *greatest, largest, very large.*
medius, a, um, adj., *middle;* **mediō colle**, *on the middle of the hill.*
melior, ius, comp. adj., *better.*
memoria, ae, f., *memory.*
mēns, mentis, f., *mind, soul.*
mēnsis, is, m., *month.*
mercātor, ōris, m., *merchant.*

mereor, ērī, itus sum, *deserve.*
meus, a, um, poss. pron., *my, mine.*
miles, itis, m., *soldier.*
militāris, e, adj., *pertaining to a soldier, military.*
mille, pl., **milia, ium**, n., *thousand, thousands.*
minimē, superl. adv., *not at all, by no means, least.*
minimē vērō, *certainly not.*
minitor, ārī, ātus sum, *threaten.*
minor, us, comp. adj., *less, younger.*
Mīnos, ōis, m., *Minos*, a king of Crete.
mīrābilis, e, adj., *wonderful.*
miror, ārī, ātus sum, *wonder at, admire.*
mirus, a, um, adj., *wonderful, strange, remarkable.*
miser, era, erum, adj., *wretched, unhappy.*
miserēscō, ere, —, —, *feel pity, have compassion for.*
misericordia, ae, f., *pity, compassion.*
mītis, e, adj., *mild, gentle, merciful.*
mittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *send, dismiss.*
modo, adv., *only.*
modus, ī, m., *manner, end, limit.*
moenia, ium, n. pl., *walls, walls of a city.*
moneō, ēre, uī, itus, *warn, advise.*
mōns, montis, m., *mountain.*
mora, ae, f., *delay.*
mordeō, ēre, momordī, morsus, *bite, sting.*
morior, morī (morīrī), mortuus sum, *die.*
moror, ārī, ātus sum, *delay, remain, hinder.*
mors, mortis, f., *death.*
mortālis, e, adj., *subject to death, mortal.*
mortuus, a, um, adj., *dead.*
mōs, mōris, m., *custom, manner;* pl., *manners, character.*
moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move, excite, disturb.*
mox, adv., *soon.*
mulier, eris, f., *woman.*
multitūdō, inis, f., *multitude, great number.*
multō, adv., *much.*
multum, adv., *much.*
multus, a, um, adj., *much;* pl., *many.*
mūnimentum, ī, n., *defense, rampart, protection.*
mūniō, īre, īvī, ītus, *fortify, defend with a wall, defend.*
mūnus, eris, n., *duty, present, work.*
mūrus, ī, m., *wall.*
mūtō, āre, āvī, ātus, *change, alter.*

N

nam, conj., *for.*
nanciscor, ī, nactus or **nanctus sum**, *get, obtain, find.*
nārrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tell, relate, narrate.*
nāscor, ī, nātus sum, *be born, arise, spring forth.*
nātiō, ōnis, f., *nation, race of people.*
nātūra, ae, f., *nature, character, disposition.*
nauta, ae, m., *sailor.*
nāvicula, ae, f., *skiff, boat.*
nāvigō, āre, āvī, ātus, *sail, set sail.*
nāvis, is, f., *ship, boat.*
nē, conj., *that not, that, lest;* with a participle, *from.*
-ne, enclit., used in asking questions.
nē . . . quidem, *not . . . even.*
nec, conj., see **neque.**
necesse, neut. adj., *necessary, unavoidable.*
necessitās, ātis, f., *necessity.*
necessitūdō, inis, f., *necessity, alliance, friendship.*
negōtium, ī, n., *business, occupation, trouble, difficulty.*
Nemea, ae, f., *Nemea*, a city in Argolis.
Nemeus, a, um, adj., *Nemean.*
nēmō, Dat. **nēminī**, m. and f., *no one, nobody.*
neque or **nec**, conj., *and not, nor.*
neque . . . neque, *neither . . . nor.*
Nervii, ōrum, m. pl., *the Nervii*, a warlike people of Gaul.
nesciō, scīre, scīvī or **iī, scītus**, *not to know, be ignorant.*
neuter, tra, trum, adj., *neither.*
nihil, indecl., *nothing.*
nisi, conj., *unless, if not, except.*
nix, nivis, f., *snow.*
nōbilitās, ātis, f., *nobility, nobles.*

noctū, adv., *by night.*
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, *be unwilling, not to wish.*
nōmen, inis, n., *name.*
nōn, adv., *not.*
nōndum, adv., *not yet.*
nōnne, adv., *not?* expecting an affirmative answer.
nōnus, a, um, ord. num., *ninth.*
nōs, nostrum, pers. pron., *we.*
noster, tra, trum, adj., *our, ours;* **nostrī, ōrum**, m. pl., *our men.*
novem, card. num., *nine.*
Noviodūnum, ī, n., *Noviodunum*, a city in Gaul.
novus, a, um, adj., *new, young.*
nox, noctis, f., *night.*
nūdus, a, um, adj., *bare, stripped, deprived of.*
nūllus, a, um, adj., *none, no, not any.*
num, adv., in direct questions expects the answer *no*, in indirect it is translated *whether.*
numerus, ī, m., *number.*
nunc, adv., *now.*
nunquam (numquam), adv., *never.*
nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus, *announce, report, declare.*
nūntius, ī, m., *messenger.*
nūper, adv., *recently.*

O

ob, prep. w. Acc., *on account of.*
obses, idis, m. and f., *hostage.*
obsistō, ere, stitī, stitus, *stand in the way of, oppose, resist*, w. Dat.
obtineō, ēre, uī, tentus, *hold, obtain, possess, occupy.*
obviam, adv., *in the way;* after verbs of motion, *to meet.*
obvius, a, um, adj., *in the way, to meet.*
occāsus, ūs, m., *setting, falling.*
occāsus sōlis, *sunset.*
occīdō, ere, cīdī, cīsus, *strike down, kill.*
occupātus, a, um, adj., *busy.*
occupō, āre, āvī, ātus, *seize, hold, occupy.*
octāvus, a, um, ord. num., *eighth.*
octō, card. num., *eight.*
oculus, ī, m., *eye;* **ex oculīs**, *out of sight.*
ōdī, isse, def. verb, *hate.*
offerō, ferre, obtulī, oblātus, *bring before, present, offer.*
ōlim, adv., *formerly, once upon a time.*
omnīnō, adv., *altogether, wholly, at all.*
omnis, e, adj., *all, every.*
onus, eris, n., *burden, weight.*
oppidum, ī, n., *town.*
oppūgnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *storm, attack, assault, besiege.*
optimus, a, um, superl. adj., *best.*
opus, eris, n., *work, labor.*
ōrātiō, ōnis, f., *speech, oration, harangue.*
ōrātor, ōris, m., *orator, speaker.*
ōrdō, inis, m., *rank, row, order, arrangement.*
Orgetorix, īgis, m., *Orgetorix*, leader of the Helvetii.
orior, īrī, ortus sum, *arise, rise.*
ōrnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *adorn, equip, furnish.*
ostendō, ere, ī, tus, *show, display, exhibit.*
ōtium, ī, n., *leisure, vacant time.*
ōvum, ī, n., *egg.*

P

pābulum, ī, n., *fodder, forage.*
pācō, āre, āvī, ātus, *pacify, subdue.*
paene, adv., *almost, nearly.*
pāgus, ī, m., *district, canton.*
palūs, ūdis, f., *swamp, marsh.*
pandō, ere, pandī, passus, *spread out, stretch, extend.*
parātus, a, um, adj., *ready, prepared.*
parcō, ere, pepercī, parsus, *spare*, w. Dat.
pāreō, ēre, uī, itus, *obey, submit to*, w. Dat.
pariō, ere, peperī, paritus and **partus**, *bring forth, bear;* **ōvum parere**, *lay an egg.*
parō, āre, āvī, ātus, *get ready, prepare, procure.*
pars, partis, f., *part, direction.*
parum, adv., *too little, not enough.*
parvus, a, um, adj., *small, little.*
pāscō, ere, pāvī, pāstus, *feed, graze;* pass., *feed.*
passus, ūs, m., *pace*, consisting of five Roman feet.

passūs mille, *thousand paces*, a Roman mile.
patefaciō, ere, fēcī, factus, *make* or *lay open*, *open*.
pater, tris, m., *father*.
patior, ī, passus sum, *allow*, *suffer*, *endure*.
patria, ae, f., *native country*, *fatherland*.
paucī, ae, a, pl. adj., *few*.
paulātim, adv., *gradually*.
pāx, pācis, f., *peace*.
pecūnia, ae, f., *money*.
pecus, oris, n., *cattle*, *herd*, *flock*.
pedes, itis, m., *foot soldier*.
pedester, tris, tre, adj., *belonging to a foot soldier*, *pedestrian*.
pedestrēs cōpiae, *infantry forces*.
Pedius, ī, m., *Quintus Pedius*.
pēior, ius, comp. adj., *worse*.
pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus, *beat*, *strike*, *rout*, *drive*.
penna, ae, f., *feather*, *wing*.
per, prep. w. Acc., *through*, *by*, *during*.
peragō, ere, ēgī, āctus, *finish*, *complete*, *accomplish*.
percontātiō, ōnis, f., *questioning*, *inquiry*.
perdō, ere, didī, ditus, *lose*, *destroy*.
perdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead through*, *lead*, *prolong*.
pereō, īre, iī, itūrus, *pass away*, *disappear*, *perish*.
perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *bring through*, *endure*, *bring to an end*.
perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *accomplish*, *finish*, *complete*.
periculum, ī, n., *danger*.
permittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *give up*, *intrust*, *permit*.
permoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *alarm*, *move thoroughly*, *excite*.
perspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus, *see through*, *perceive*.
persuādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsus, *persuade*, w. Dat.
perterreō, ēre, uī, itus, *terrify thoroughly*, *frighten*.
pertineō, ēre, uī, tentus, *extend*, *pertain to*, *belong to*.
perturbō, āre, āvī, ātus, *throw into confusion*, *disturb*.
perveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, *come to*, *arrive at*, *reach*.
pēs, pedis, m., *foot*.
pessimus, a, um, superl. adj., *worst*.
petō ere, īvī or **ii, ītus**, *seek*, *beg*, *entreat*, *attack*.
phalanx, angis, f., *phalanx*, *battalion*.
pharetra, ae, f., *quiver*.
Pharnacēs, is, m., *Pharnaces*, a king of Pontus.
Pharsālus, ī, f., *Pharsalus*, a city in Thessaly, near which Caesar defeated Pompey.
pīlum, ī, n., *javelin*.
pīrāta, ae, m., *pirate*.
placeō, ēre, uī, itus, *please*; **sī tibi placet**, *if you please*.
plācō, āre, āvī, ātus, *appease*, *pacify*, *soothe*.
plānitiēs, ēī, f., *plain*.
plēbs, ēbis, f., *the common people*.
plērīque, aeque, aque, adj. pl., *very many*, *most*, *the most*.
plērumque, adv., *generally*, *for the most part*.
plūrimus, a, um, superl. adj., *very many*, *most*, *very much*.
plūs, plūris, adj. comp., *more*.
Plutarchus, ī, m., *Plutarch*.
poēma, atis, n., *poem*.
polliceor, ērī, itus sum, *promise*.
pōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *place*, *put*, *pitch*, *set*, *establish*.
pōns, pontis, m., *bridge*.
pontifex, icis, m., *Roman high priest*, *chief priest*, *pontifex*.
populor, ārī, ātus sum, *lay waste*, *ravage*, *devastate*.
populus, ī, m., *people*.
porta, ae, f., *gate*, *door*.
portō, āre, āvī, ātus, *carry*, *bear*.
pōscō, ere, popōscī, —, *demand*.
Poseidōn, ōnis, m., *Poseidon*, god of the sea.
possum, posse, potuī, —, *be able*, *can*.
post, prep. w. Acc., *after*, *behind*.
posteā, adv., *afterwards*.
posterior, ius, comp. adj., *latter*, *later*.
postquam, conj., *after*.
postrēmus, a, um, superl. adj., *last*.

postrīdiē, adv., *on the day after.*
postulātum, ī, n., *demand, request.*
postulō, āre, āvī, ātus, *demand, request.*
potēns, entis, adj., *powerful.*
potestās, ātis, f., *power, authority.*
potior, īrī, itus sum, *become master of, get control of*, w. Abl.
potius, adv., *rather, more.*
prae, prep. w. Abl., *in front of, before.*
praebeō, ēre, uī, itus, *furnish, offer, show, present.*
praeceps, ipitis, adj., *headlong.*
praeceptor, ōris, m., *teacher, instructor.*
praeclārus, a, um, adj., *celebrated, famous.*
praedicō, āre, āvī, ātus, *assert, declare.*
praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *place in command of.*
praemittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *send forward* or *ahead.*
praemium, ī, n., *reward.*
praepōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *place before, prefer.*
praesēns, entis, *present;* **suō exercitū praesente**, *in the presence of his own army.*
praesidium, ī, n., *defense, guard, garrison.*
praestō, āre, stitī, stitus, *stand out, be superior, excel.*
praesum, esse, fuī, —, *be at the head of, be over*, w. Dat.
praeter, prep. w. Acc., *before, in front of, beyond.*
praetereō, īre, iī, itus, *pass by.*
prātum, ī, n., *meadow.*
prīmō, adv., *first, at first.*
prīmum, adv., *first, at first.*
prīmus, a, um, adj., *first.*
prīnceps, ipis, m., *chief, leading man.*
prīncipātus, ūs, m., *chief place, leadership.*
prior, ius, comp. adj., *former, previous.*
prīstinus, a, um, adj., *former.*
priusquam, conj., *before.*
privātus, a, um, adj., *private.*
privō, āre, āvī, ātus, *deprive, rob.*
prō, prep. w. Abl., *in front of, before, in behalf of, for, instead of.*
prōcēdō, ere, cessī, cessus, *go forward, advance, proceed.*
Procillus, i, m., *Procillus.*
prōdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead forth* or *forward, bring forward.*
proelium, ī, n., *battle;* **proelium committere**, *to join* or *engage in battle.*
profectiō, ōnis, f., *setting out, departure.*
proficīscor, ī, fectus sum, *set out, advance, depart, march.*
prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus, *restrain, hinder, prevent, keep from, prohibit.*
prōiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, *throw down, throw, fling forward.*
prōmittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *send forth* or *forward, promise.*
prōmoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move forward, push forward, move.*
prope, adv., *near, nearly.*
properō, āre, āvī, ātus, *hasten.*
propior, ius, comp. of **prope**, *nearer.*
proprius, a, um, adj., *one's own, peculiar, personal.*
propter, prep. w. Acc., *because of, on account of.*
prōsum, prōdesse, fuī, futūrus, *be of use, benefit, profit.*
prōturbō, āre, āvī, ātus, *drive forth, repulse.*
prōvincia, ae, f., *province.*
prōvolō, āre, āvī, ātus, *fly forth, hasten forth, rush out.*
proximē, superl. adv., *very near, most recently, last.*
proximus, a, um, superl. adj., *very near, nearest, last.*
prūdēns, entis, adj., *prudent.*
prūdenter, adv., *prudently, wisely.*
prūdentia, ae, f., *prudence, discretion.*
puella, ae, f., *girl.*
puer, erī, m., *boy;* pl., *children.*
pūgna, ae, f., *battle, fight.*
pūgnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *fight;* **pūgnātum est**, *they fought.*
pulcher, chra, chrum, adj., *beautiful.*
pulchrē, adv., *beautifully.*
pulvīnus, ī, m., *cushion, pillow.*
punctus, ūs, m., *prick, sting.*
putō, āre, āvī, ātus, *think, suppose, reckon, consider.*

Q

Q., abbreviation for **Quintus**.
quā dē causā, prep. phr., *for which reason, wherefore, why.*
quaerō, ere, quaesīvī or **iī, ītus**, *ask, seek, inquire.*
quaestor, ōris, m., *quaestor, treasurer.*
quam, adv., *how, as much as, as, than.*
quam minimum, *as small as possible.*
quamquam, conj., *although, and yet.*
quandō, adv., *at what time, when.*
quantus, a, um, adj., *how great.*
quārē, adv., *by what means, wherefore, why.*
quārtus, a, um, ord. num., *fourth.*
quattuor, card. num., *four.*
-que, a particle affixed to the word it annexes, *and.*
quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, what, that.*
quia, conj., *because.*
quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *whoever, whichever, whatever.*
quid, inter., *why, how.*
quidam, quaedam, quoddam, *a certain, certain one, some.*
quidem, adv., *indeed, even.*
quīn, conj., *that not, but that, lest;* with a participle, *from.*
quīndecim, card. num., *fifteen.*
quīngentī, ae, a, card. num., *five hundred.*
quīnquāgintā, card. num., *fifty.*
quīnque, card. num., *five.*
quīntus, a, um, ord. num., *fifth.*
quis, quae, quid, inter. pron., *who? which? what?* as indef. pron. after **sī, nē, num**, *any one, anything.*
quisquam, quaequam, quicquam or **quidquam**, indef. pron., *any one, anybody, anything.*
quisque, quaeque, quodque or **quidque**, indef. pron., *each, every, each one, everybody, everything.*
quō, adv., *whither, where.*
quod, conj., *because.*
quō modo, adv., *in what manner, how.*
quondam, adv., *once, at one time, formerly.*
quoque, adv., *also, too* (placed after the emphatic word).

R

ratiō, ōnis, f., *reason, method, plan, manner.*
recēdō, ere, cessī, cessus, *go back, withdraw, retire, recede.*
recēns, entis, adj., *fresh, recent.*
recipiō, āre, āvī, ātus, *regain, recover.*
recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *take back, recover;* **sē recipere**, *betake themselves, retire, retreat.*
recitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *read out* or *aloud, recite.*
recūsō, āre, āvī, ātus, *refuse, decline.*
reddō, ere, didī, ditus, *give back, return, restore, surrender.*
redēmptiō, ōnis, f., *release, ransoming.*
redeō, īre, īvī or **iī, itus**, *go back, return.*
redigō, ere, ēgī, āctus, *lead back, render, reduce.*
redimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus, *buy off, release, ransom.*
redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead back.*
referō, ferre, rettulī, relātus, *bear* or *bring back, report, announce.*
refringō, ere, frēgī, frāctus, *break open, break in pieces.*
rēgīna, ae, f., *queen.*
rēgnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *rule, be king.*
rēgnum, ī, n., *royal power, throne.*
regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus, *rule, guide, direct, govern.*
relanguēscō, ere, languī, —, *grow languid* or *faint, become weary.*
relinquō, ere, līquī, lictus, *leave;* pass., *remain.*
reliquus, a, um, adj., *remaining:* **reliquī, ōrum**, m. pl., *the rest.*
rēmex, igis, m., *rower, oarsman.*
Rēmī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Remi*, a people of Gaul.
Remus, ī, m., *Remus*, brother of Romulus.
rēmus, ī, m., *oar.*
renovō, āre, āvī, ātus, *renew.*
repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsus, *drive back, repulse.*
repentīnus, a, um, adj., *sudden.*
reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus, *find out, find, discover, ascertain.*

repōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *gather up, lay aside, store up.*
reprehendō, ere, ī, hēnsus, *blame, censure, find fault with.*
rēs, reī, f., *thing, matter, affair, fact, event, circumstance.*
rēs frūmentāria, f., *grain supplies;* **rēs mīlitāris,** f., *military affairs.*
resistō, ere, stitī, —, *resist, oppose.*
respondeō, ēre, spondī, spōnsus, *reply, respond, answer.*
respōnsum, ī, n., *reply, response.*
restituō, ere, uī, ūtus, *restore, rebuild, give back.*
rēte, is, n., *net.*
retineō, ēre, uī, tentus, *hold back, restrain, retain.*
revellō ere, ī, vulsus, *pluck* or *tear away, pull out* or *away.*
revertō, ere, ī, versus, *turn back, come back, return.*
revertor, ī, versus sum, *turn back, return.*
revocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call back, recall.*
rēx, rēgis, *m., king.*
Rhēnus, ī, m., *the Rhine,* the dividing river between Gaul and Germany.
Rhodanus, ī, m., *the Rhone.*
rigeō, ēre, uī, —, *become stiff, be stiff* or *numb.*
rīpa, ae, f., *bank, river bank.*
rīxa, ae, f., *quarrel, dispute, strife.*
rogō, āre, āvī, ātus, *ask, question.*
Rōma, ae, f., *Rome.*
Rōmānus, a, um, *Roman.*
Rōmulus, ī, m., *Romulus,* founder of Rome.
rōstrum, ī, n., *beak.*
rūmor, ōris, m., *rumor, report.*
rūpēs, is, f., *rock, cliff.*
rūrsus, adv., *again.*
rūs, rūris, n., *country* (opposed to the city).

S

Sabis, is, m., *the Sambre,* a river in Gaul.
sacer, cra, crum, adj., *sacred.*
sacrificō, āre, āvī, ātus, *sacrifice.*
saepe, adv., *often.*
saepēs, is, f., *hedge.*
sagitta, ae, f., *arrow.*
sagittārius, ī, m., *archer, bowman.*
salūs, ūtis, f., *safety.*
sānē, adv., *by all means, truly, of course, certainly.*
sanguis, inis, m., *blood.*
sapiēns, entis, adj., *wise.*
sarcina, ae, f., *bundle;* pl., *personal baggage.*
satis, adj. and adv., *enough, sufficiently.*
saxum, ī, n., *rock.*
scientia, ae, f., *knowledge, skill, science.*
scīlicet, adv., *of course, certainly.*
sciō, īre, īvī, ītus, *know, understand.*
scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write.*
scrīptor, ōris, m., *writer, author.*
scūtum, ī, n., *shield.*
sē, *see* **suī.**
sectiō, ōnis, f., *booty, spoils.*
secundum, prep. w. Acc., *down, along.*
secundus, a, um, adj., *second, favorable.*
sed, conj., *but.*
sēdecim, card. num., *sixteen.*
sēdēs, is, f., *seat, abode, dwelling place.*
semper, adv., *always.*
senātus, ūs, m., *senate.*
senex, senis, adj., *old, aged;* subst., *old man.*
senior, ius, comp. adj., *older.*
sentiō īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *feel, know.*
septimus, a, um, ord. num., *seventh.*
Sēquanī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Sequani.*
sequor, ī, cūtus sum, *follow, pursue.*
serpēns, entis, f. or m., *serpent, snake.*
servitūs, ūtis, f., *slavery, servitude.*
servō, āre, āvī, ātus, *keep, preserve, save.*
sēscentī, ae, a, card. num., *six hundred.*
sex, card. num., *six.*
sexāgintā, card. num., *sixty.*
sī, conj., *if.*
sīc, adv., *thus, so.*
signifer, erī, m., *standard bearer.*
significātiō, ōnis, f., *sign, warning, signal.*
signum, ī, n., *standard.*
silva, ae, f., *wood, woods, forest.*
similis, e, adj., *like, similar.*
simul ac, conj., *as soon as.*
simulō, āre, āvī, ātus, *pretend.*
sine, prep. w. Abl., *without.*

singulāris, e, adj., *singular, extraordinary, remarkable.*
singulī, ae, a, num. distributive adj., *single, separate.*
sinister, tra, trum, adj., *left.*
sistrum, ī, n., *metallic rattle.*
sitiō, īre, īvī, or iī, —, *thirst, be thirsty.*
situs, ūs, m., *situation, location.*
socer, erī, m., *father-in-law.*
socius, ī, m., *ally.*
sōl, sōlis, m., *sun.*
soleō, ēre, itus sum, *be wont, be accustomed, use.*
sōlus, a, um, adj., *alone, only.*
solvō, ere, ī, lūtus, *release, pay.*
soror, ōris, f., *sister.*
spatium, ī, n., *space, distance, time.*
speciēs, ēī, f., *appearance, sight.*
spectō, āre, āvī, ātus, *look, face, be situated, lie.*
speculātor, ōris, m., *spy.*
spēs, speī, f., *hope.*
spīritus, ūs, m., *spirit, pride, insolence.*
sponte, Abl., *of one's accord, voluntarily.*
stabulum, ī, n., *stall, stable.*
statim, adv., *suddenly, immediately, at once.*
statuō, ere, uī, ūtus, *set up, set, establish, decide, determine.*
sterilis, e, adj., *unfruitful, barren.*
stipendiārius, a, um, adj., *tributary;* pl. subst., **stipendiārii**, ōrum, *tributaries.*
stō, āre, stetī, **status**, *stand.*
strāgēs, is, f., *overthrow, confusion, slaughter.*
strepitus, ūs, m., *noise, din, roar.*
studeō, ēre, uī, —, *desire, pay attention to*, w. Dat.
studium, ī, n., *desire, zeal.*
Stymphālius, a, um, adj., *Stymphalian.*
Stymphālus, ī, m., *Stymphalus*, a district in Arcadia.
sub, prep. w. Acc. and Abl., *under;* **sub monte**, *at the foot of the mountain.*
subitō, adv., *suddenly.*
subitus, a, um, adj., *sudden.*
sublevō, āre, āvī, ātus, *lift up.*
submergō, ere, mersī, mersus, *drown, sink, submerge, overwhelm.*
subsidium, ī, n., *help, assistance, relief.*
subsiliō, īre, uī, —, *leap up.*
Suessiōnēs, um, m. pl., *the Suessiones.*
suī, sibi, sē, sē, reflex pron., *of himself, herself, itself, themselves;* **inter sē**, *to one another.*
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be.*
summa, ae, f., *leadership.*
summus, a, um, superl. adj., *highest, top of, greatest, utmost.*
super, prep. w. Acc. and Abl., *over, above, upon, on the top of.*
superbus, a, um, adj., *haughty, proud.*
superior, ius, comp. adj., *former, higher, upper.*
superō, āre, āvī, ātus, *overcome, conquer, surpass, pass over, ascend.*
supersedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus, *refrain from, postpone*, w. Abl.
supersum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be over, remain, survive.*
suppetō, ere, īvī or iī, ītūrus, *be at hand.*
supplex, icis, m. and f., *suppliant.*
supplicātiō, ōnis, f., *supplication, prayer, entreaty, thanksgiving.*
suprēmus, a, um, *see* **summus.**
suspicor, ārī, ātus sum, *suspect.*
sustineō, ēre, uī, **tentus**, *sustain, endure, hold out.*
suus, a, um, poss. pron., *his, hers, its, her, their, theirs, his own*, etc.

T

T., abbreviation for **Titus.**
talentum, ī, n., *talent*, about $1200.
tālis, e, adj., *such a.*
tam, adv., *so.*
tamen, conj., *yet, nevertheless.*
tandem, adv., *at last, at length, finally.*
tantulus, a, um, adj., *so small, so little.*
tantus, a, um, adj., *so great.*
Tarquinius, ī, m., *Tarquin*, the last king of Rome.
Tartara, ōrum, n. pl., *Tartarus*, the lower world.
tēctum, ī, n., *roof, house.*
tēlum, ī, n., *missile, dart, weapon.*

tempestās, ātis, f., *storm, tempest, weather.*
templum, ī, n., *temple.*
tempus, oris, n., *time.*
teneō, ēre, uī, tus, *hold, keep, possess.*
tener, era, erum, adj., *tender, young.*
terra, ae, f., *land.*
terreō, ēre, uī, itus, *terrify, frighten.*
tertius, a, um, card. num., *third.*
testis, is, m. and f., *witness.*
testūdō, inis, f., *shed, shelter, tortoise-shaped covering.*
Tiberis, is, m., *the river Tiber.*
Tigurīnus, ī, m., *Tigurinus,* a district in Helvetia.
timeō, ēre, uī, —, *fear, be afraid of.*
timidus, a, um, adj., *timid, fearful.*
timor, ōris, m., *fear.*
tingō, ere, nxi, nctus, *wet, bathe, dye.*
Tīryns, ynthis or **ynthos,** f., *Tiryns,* an ancient town of Argolis.
tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus, *lift up, remove, break off;* **in crucem tollere,** *crucify.*
tormentum, ī, n., *an engine for hurling missiles.*
tot, indec. adj., *so many.*
tōtus, a, um, adj., *whole, entire.*
trādō, ere, didī, ditus, *give up, surrender.*
trādūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead across.*
trahō, ere, trāxī, trāctus, *draw, drag.*
trāns, prep. w. Acc., *across, over, beyond.*
trānseō, īre, īvī or **iī, itus,** *go across, cross.*
trānsgredior, ī, gressus sum, *go over, cross.*
trānsportō, āre, āvī, ātus, *carry across* or *over, transport.*
trēs, tria, card. num., *three.*
Trēverī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Treveri.*
tribūnus, ī, m., *tribune.*
trīceps, ipitis, adj., *three-headed.*
trīduum, ī, n., *space of three days, three days.*
trīgintā, card. num., *thirty.*
triplex, icis, adj., *threefold, triple.*
trīstis, e, adj., *sad.*
trucidō, āre, āvī, ātus, *slay, kill.*
tū, tuī, pers. pron., *thou, you.*
tuba, ae, f., *trumpet.*
tum, adv., *then, at that time.*
tumultus, ūs, m., *tumult, uprising, confusion.*
tumulus, ī, m., *mound, hill.*
turpitūdō, inis, f., *disgrace, shame.*
turris, is, f., *tower.*
tūtus, a, um, adj., *safe.*
tuus, a, um, poss. pron., *thy, thine, your, yours.*

U

ubi, conj., *where, when.*
ūllus, a, um, adj., *any.*
ulterior, ius, comp. adj., *farther.*
ultimus, a, um, sup. adj., *last, farthest, most remote.*
ultrā, prep. w. Acc., *on the other side, beyond.*
umerus, ī, m., *shoulder.*
unde, adv., *from which place, whence.*
ūndecim, card. num., *eleven.*
ūniversus, a, um, adj., *all together, whole, entire.*
unquam, adv., *ever, at any time.*
ūnus, a, um, card. num., *one.*
urbs, urbis, f., *city.*
urgeō, ēre, ursī, —, *urge, press hard, beset.*
ūsque, adv., *even, as far as, all the way to.*
ūsus, ūs, m., *experience, use.*
ut, conj., *that, in order that, so that;* after verbs of fearing, *that not;* w. Ind., *as, when;* with the Infinitive, *to.*
uter, tra, trum, adj., *which of two.*
uterque, traque, trumque, adj., *each, either, each one, both.*
utinam, adv., *I wish that! would that!*
ūtor, ī, ūsus sum, *use, enjoy, employ,* w. Abl.
utrimque, adv., *on both sides.*
ūva, ae, f., *grape, bunch of grapes.*
uxor, ōris, f., *wife.*

V

vadum, ī, n., *ford.*
valeō, ēre, uī, itūrus, *be well, be strong, avail;* **valē,** *farewell.*
Valerius, ī, m., *Lucius Valerius.*
vallēs, is, f., *valley.*
vāllum, ī, n., *wall, rampart.*

varius, a, um, adj., *various, different.*
vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus, *lay waste, devastate.*
vāstus, a, um, adj., *vast.*
vectigal, ālis, n., *tax, revenue, tribute.*
vehementer, adv., *eagerly, violently, vehemently.*
vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus, *carry, bear;* pass., *be carried, ride.*
vēndō, ere, didī, ditus, *sell.*
venēnātus, a, um, adj., *poisoned, poisonous.*
veniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, *come.*
venter, tris, m., *belly.*
ventus, ī, m., *wind.*
Verbigenus, i, m., *Verbigenus.*
verbum, ī, n., *word, saying.*
vereor, ērī, itus sum, *fear, be afraid.*
vergō, ere, —, —, *turn, be situated, slope.*
vērō, adv., post-posit., *in truth, surely, certainly, yes, but, though.*
versor, ārī, atus sum, *be busy, be.*
versus, ūs, m., *verse.*
vertex, icis, m., *top, summit.*
vescor, ī, —, —, *take food, eat, feed upon.*
Vesontiō, ōnis, m., *Vesontio*, a city in Gaul.
vesper, erī, m., *evening;* **sub vesperum**, *towards evening.*
vester, tra, trum, poss. pron., *your, yours.*
vestis, is, f., *clothing, clothes, garment.*
vēxillum, ī, n., *banner, flag.*
via, ae, f., *road, way.*
vice, Abl. of **vicis**, *instead of, in the place of.*
victor, ōris, m., *victor, conqueror.*
victōria, ae, f., *victory.*
vīcus, ī, m., *village.*
videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *see;* pass., *be seen, seem.*
vigilia, ae, f., *watch of the night* (fourth part of the night).
vīgintī, card. num., *twenty.*
vinciō, īre, vinxī, vinctus, *bind.*
vincō, ere, vīcī, victus, *conquer, overcome.*
vinea, ae, f., *shed* (for protecting besiegers).
vīnum, ī, n., *wine.*
vir, virī, m., *man.*
virgō, inis, f., *virgin, maid.*
virgula, ae, f., *little twig.*
virtūs, ūtis, f., *manhood, bravery, courage, valor, virtue.*
vīs (vis), f., *strength, force;* pl., **vīrēs, ium**, *strength.*
vīta, ae, f., *life.*
vītis, is, f., *vine.*
vīvō, ere, vīxī, victus, *live.*
vīvus, a, um, adj., *living, alive.*
vocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call, summon.*
volō, āre, āvī, ātus, *fly.*
volō, velle, voluī, —, *wish, be willing.*
voluntās, ātis, f., *wish, desire.*
voluptās, ātis, f., *pleasure, enjoyment.*
vōs, vestrum, pl. of **tū**, *you.*
vōx, vōcis, f., *voice, word.*
vulgus, ī, n., *crowd, common people.*
vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātus, *wound.*
vulnus, eris, n., *wound.*
vulpēs, is, f., *fox.*

X

X, *abbreviation for ten.*

Z

Zēla, ae, f., *Zela.*
zōna, ae, f., *belt, girdle.*

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

VERBS followed by the figures 1, 2, 4, have their principal parts formed regularly like those of the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations, respectively, as given in the paradigms. Irregular verbs, verbs of the Third Conjugation, and those of the other three which have any irregularities, have their principal parts given. Where a simple verb and one or more of its compounds occur under one heading, the parts of the first only are given, unless a change takes place in composition. The figures in parentheses refer to section numbers in the main part of the book or in the appendix. For abbreviations, see general table on page 250.

A

abandon, *relinquō, ere, līquī, lictus.*
able, be, *possum, posse, potuī* (**619**).
abode, *sēdēs, is*, f.
about, *dē*, w. Abl.; *circum*, w. Acc.; *circiter*, adv.; **about to**, see first periphrastic conjugation (**534** seq.).
accept, *accipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus.*
accomplish, *cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus.*
accord, of his own, *suā sponte*, Abl.
account of, on, *propter*, w. Acc.; Abl. of cause.
accuse, *incūsō*, 1.
accustomed, be, *cōnsuēscō, ere, suēvī, suētus; soleō, ēre, itus sum.*
across, *trāns*, w. Acc.
act, *agō, ere, ēgī, āctus.*
Aduatuci, *Aduātucī, ōrum*, m. pl.
advance, *prōcēdō, ere, cessī, cessus; prōgredior, ī, gressus sum.*
advise, *moneō*, 2.
Aeduans, (Aedui), *Aeduī, ōrum*, m. pl.
after, *post*, w. Acc.; *postquam*, conj.
again, *iterum.*
against, *in* or *contrā*, w. Acc.; Dat. after *īnferō*, bring against.
age, *aetās, ātis*, f.
aid, *auxilium, ī*, n.
alacrity, *alacritās, ātis*, f.
alarm, *commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus.*
all, *omnis, e; tōtus, a, um* (**593**), **at all**, *omnīnō.*
Allobroges, *Allobrogēs, um*, m. pl.
ally, *socius, ī*, m.
almost, *paene, prope.*
along, *per*, w. Acc.; *secundum*, w. Acc.
Alps, *Alpēs, ium*, f. pl.
also, *quoque*, following emphatic word; *etiam.*
although, *cum*, w. Subj.; Abl. abs.
always, *semper.*
am, *sum, esse, fuī, futūrus* (**615** seq.).
ambassador, *lēgātus, ī*, m.
ambush, *insidae, ārum*, f. pl.
among, *in*, w. Abl.; *apud* or *inter*, w. Acc.
ancestors, *māiōrēs, um*, m. pl.
anchor, *ancora, ae*, f.
and, *et, -que, atque.*
and so, *itaque.*
angry, *īrātus, a, um;* **angry, be**, *īrāscor, ī, īrātus sum.*
animal, *animal, ālis*, n.
announce, *nūntiō*, 1; *praedicō*, 1.
annoy, *lacessō, ere, īvī, ītus.*
another, *alius, a, ud* (**593**); **to one another**, *inter sē;* **of another**, *aliēnus, a, um.*
answer, *respōnsum, ī*, n.
ant, *formīca, ae*, f.
any (person or thing), *ūllus, a, um* (**593**), *aliquis, qua, quid* (*quod*) (**602**), *quisquam, quidquam.*
appear, *exsistō, ere, stitī, stitus.*
approach, *appropinquō*, 1; *adeō, īre, iī, itus.*
Aquitania, *Aquītānia, ae*, f.

Aquitanians, (Aquitani), *Aquītānī, ōrum*, m. pl.
Arar, *Arar, aris*, m.
Arcadia, *Arcadia, ae*, f.
archer, *sagittārius, ī*, m.
Ariovistus, *Ariovistus, ī*.
arise, *orior, īrī, ortus sum* (**314** seq.).
arm, *armō*, 1; **armed men**, *armātī, ōrum*, m. pl.
armor bearer, *armiger, erī*, m.
arms, *arma, ōrum*, n. pl.
army, *exercitus, ūs*, m.
around, *circum*, w. Acc.
arrival, *adventus, ūs*, m.
arrive, *perveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus*.
arrogance, *adrogantia, ae*, f.
arrow, *sagitta, ae*, f.
as, *ut;* **as soon as**, *simul ac* or *atque, cum prīmum*.
assault, *oppūgnō*, 1; **take by assault**, *expūgnō*, 1.
assemble, *convocō*, 1; *conveniō*, 4.
assign, *impōnō, ere, posuī, positus*.
assist, *iuvō, āre, iūvī, iūtus; adsum, esse, fuī, futūrus* (**615** seq.), w. Dat.
at, *ad*, w. Acc.; *sub*, w. Acc.; *in*, w. Acc.
Athens, *Athēnae, ārum*, f. pl.
attack, *impetus, ūs*, m.; **make an attack**, *impetum faciō, ere, fēcī, factus*.
attack, *oppūgnō*, 1.
attempt, *cōnātus, ūs*, m.
authority, *auctōritās, ātis*, f.
await, *exspectō*, 1.
Axona, *Axona, ae*, m.

B

baggage, *impedīmenta, ōrum*, n. pl.
bank (of river), *rīpa, ae*, f.
barbarous, *barbarus, a, um*.
barren, *sterilis, e*.
battle, *proelium, ī*, n.; *pūgna, ae*, f.
be, *sum, esse, fuī, futūrus* (**615** seq.).
beak, *rōstrum, ī*, n.
bear against, *īnferō, ferre, tulī, lātus* (**623** seq.); **bear off**, *auferō, ferre, abstulī, ablātus;* **bear arms**, *arma gerō, ere, gessī, gestus*.
beast of burden, *iūmentum, ī*, n.
beast, wild, *fera, ae*, f.
beautiful, *pulcher, chra, chrum*.
because, *quod;* **because of**, *propter*, w. Acc.
become, *fīō, fierī, factus sum* (**619** seq.); **become master of**, *potior, īrī, potītus sum*, w. Abl. (**314** seq.); **become stiff**, *rigeō, ēre, uī*, —.
before, *prae* or *prō*, w. Abl.; *ante*, w. Acc.; adv., *ante*.
beg, beg for, *petō, ere, īvī*, or *iī, ītus*.
begin, *coepī, isse; initium faciō, ere, fēcī, factus*.
beginning, *initium, ī*, n.; **make a beginning**, *initium faciō, ere, fēcī, factus;* **in the beginning of summer**, *initā aestāte*.
Belgae, *Belgae, ārum*, m. pl.
Bellovaci, *Bellovacī, ōrum*, m. pl.
benefactor, *benefactor, ōris*, m.
best, *optimus, a, um* (**598**).
betake oneself, *sē cōnferō, ferre, tulī, lātus* (**623** seq.).
better, *melior, ius* (**598**).
beyond, *praeter* or *ultrā*, w. Acc.
Bibracte, *Bibracte, is*, n.
Bibrax, *Bibrax, ctis*, f.
bind fast, *dēligō*, 1.
bird, *avis, is*, f.; **bird catcher**, *auceps, cipis*, m.
bite, *mordeō, ēre, momordī, morsus*.
blame, *culpō*, 1.
boar, wild, *aper, prī*, m.
boat, *nāvis, is*, f.; *cymba, ae*, f.
body, *corpus, oris*, n.
bold, *audāx, ācis*.
book, *liber, brī*, m.
boy, *puer, erī*, m.
brave, *fortis, e*.
bravely, *fortiter*.
bravery, *virtūs, ūtis*, f.
bravest, *fortissimus, a, um*.
brazen, *aēneus, a, um*.
break off, *tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus*.
bridge, *pōns, pontis*, m.
brief, *brevis, e*.
bring, *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus* (**623** seq.); *portō*, 1; **bring down**, *dēferō;* **bring over**, *trānsportō*, 1; **bring to an end**, *cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus;* **bring together**, *cōnferō; condūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus;* **bring up the rear**, *āgmen claudō, ere, clausī, clausus*.

broad, *lātus, a, um.*
brother, *frāter, tris*, m.
Brutus, *Brūtus, ī*, m.
building, *aedificium, ī*, n.
bull, *bōs, bovis*, m.
bunch of grapes, *ūva, ae*, f.
busy, be, *versor, ārī, ātus sum.*
but, *sed, autem* (post-pos.); **but that**, *quin.*
by, *ā* or *ab*, w. Abl.; Abl. of means.

C

Caesar, *Caesar, aris*, m.
calamity, *calamitās, ātis*, f.
call, *vocō*, 1; *appellō*, 1; **call to**, *advocō*, 1; **call together**, *convocō*, 1.
camp, *castra, ōrum*, n. pl.
can, see **able, be.**
capture, *capiō, ere, cēpī, captus.*
care, *cūra, ae*, f.
carry, *portō*, 1; **carry on**, *gerō, ere, gessī, gestus;* **be carried**, *vehor, ī, vectus sum.*
cart, *carrus, ī*, m.
cast, *iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactus;* **cast down**, *dēiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus;* **cast into**, *iniciō*, 3.
catch, *capiō, ere, cēpī, captus.*
cause, *causa, ae*, f.
cause, *ēdō, ere, didī, ditus.*
cavalry, *equitātus, ūs*, m., *equitēs, um*, m. pl.; **cavalry battle**, *proelium equestre*, n.; **cavalry forces**, *cōpiae equestrēs*, f. pl.
Celts, *Celtae, ārum*, m. pl.
centurion, *centuriō, ōnis*, m.
certain, *certus, a, um;* **a certain one**, *quīdam, quaedam, quoddam* (*quiddam*) (**372**, 1).
certainly, *sānē.*
chain, *catēna, ae*, f.
chance, *cāsus, ūs*, m.
change, *mūtō*, 1.
chariot, *currus, ūs*, m.
chief, *prīnceps, ipis*, m.; **chief command**, *summa, ae*, f.; **chief men**, *prīncipēs, um*, m. pl.; **chief priest**, *pontifex, icis*, m.
children, *līberī, ōrum*, m. pl.
choose, *dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus.*
citizen, *cīvis, is*, m. and f.
city, *urbs, urbis*, f.
cliff, *rūpēs, is*, f.
climb, *ascendō, ere, ī, scēnsus.*
close line, *āgmen claudō, ere, clausī, clausus.*
closely crowded, *cōnfertus, a, um.*
club, *clāva, ae*, f.
cohort, *cohors, ortis*, f.
cold, *gelus, ūs*, m.; *frīgus, oris*, n.
come, *veniō, īre, vēnī, ventus;* **come together**, *conveniō*, 4.
command, *imperium, ī*, n., *mandātum, ī*, n.; **be in command of**, *praesum, esse, fuī, futūrus*, w. Dat. (**615** seq.).
commander, *dux, ducis*, m.; *imperātor, ōris*, m.
compassion, *misericordia, ae*, f.
conceal, *cēlō*, 1; *condō, ere, didī, ditus.*
concerning, *dē*, w. Abl.
confer, *dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus* (**623** seq.).
conference, *conloquium, ī*, n.
conquer, *vincō, ere, vīcī, victus; superō*, 1.
consent, *voluntās, ātis*, f.
conspiracy, *coniūrātiō, ōnis*, f.
conspire, *coniūrō*, 1.
consul, *cōnsul, ulis*, m.
consulship of, in the, *cōnsul* and name of person, in the Abl. abs.
contend, *contendō, ere, ī, tentus.*
content, *contentus, a, um.*
continually, *continenter.*
country, *terra, ae*, f.; *fīnēs, ium*, m. pl.; **native country**, *patria, ae*, f.; (opposed to city), *rūs, rūris*, n.
courage, *virtūs, ūtis*, f.
Crassus, *Crassus, ī*, m.
Crete, *Crēta, ae*, f.
cross, *trānseō, īre, īī, itus* (**623** seq.).
crowd, *vulgus, ī*, n.
crowded, closely, *cōnfertus, a, um.*
cry out, *conclāmō*, 1.
Cures, *Curēs, ium*, f. pl.
cut down, *interscindō, ere, scidī, scissus;* **cut off**, *interclūdō, ere clūsī, clūsus.*

D

daily, *cottīdiānus, a, um; cottīdiē*, adv.
danger, *perīculum, ī*, n.
dare, *audeō, ēre, ausus sum* (**320**).

daughter, *fīlia, ae*, f. (**59**, n. 1).
day, *diēs, ēī*, m.; **by day**, *interdiū*; **every day**, *cottīdiē, in diēs*; **on the day after that day**, *postrīdiē ēius diēī*.
daybreak, at, *prīmā lūce*.
dear, *cārus, a, um*.
death, *mors, mortis*, f.
deceive, *fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus*.
decide, *cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus*.
deep, *altus, a, um*.
defeat, *vincō, ere, vīcī, victus*.
defend, *dēfendō, ere, ī, fensus*.
deliver, *līberō*, 1.
Delos, *Dēlos, ī*, f.
demand, *postulātum, ī*, n.
demand, *postulō*, 1; *flagitō*, 1; *pōscō, ere, popōscī*, —.
dense, *dēnsus, a, um*.
deprive, *prīvō*, 1.
descend, *dēscendō, ere, dī, ēnsus*.
desire, *cupiditās, ātis*, f.; *studium, ī*, n.
desist from, *dēsistō, ere, stitī, stitus*.
destroy, *dēleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus*.
destruction, *interneciō, ōnis*, f.
determine, *cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus*.
devastate, *vāstō*, 1.
Diana, *Diāna, ae*. f.
die, *morior, morī* (*morīrī*), *mortuus sum* (**314** seq.).
different, *dissimilis, e*; *dīversus, a, um*; *varius, a, um*.
difficult, *difficilis, e*.
direction, *pars, partis*, f.
disaster, *calamitās, ātis*, f.
disposition, *indolēs, is*, f.; *animus, ī*, m.
distance, *spatium, ī*, n.
district, *pāgus, ī*, m.
disturb, *commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus*; **disturb greatly**, *perturbō*, 1.
ditch, *fossa, ae*, f.
Divico, *Dīvicō, ōnis*, m.
Divitiacus, *Dīvitiacus, ī*, m.
do, *faciō, ere, fēcī, factus*; *agō, ere, ēgī, āctus*.
does not, *nōn* w. verb repeated; in questions, *nōnne* w. verb.
door, *porta, ae*, f.
doubt, *dubitō*, 1.
dove, *columba, ae*, f.
drag, *trahō, ere, trāxī, trāctus*.
draw near, *accēdō, ere, cessī, cessus*; **draw up**, *instruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus*.
drive, *agō, ere, ēgī, āctus*; *pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus*; *repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsus*.
drown, *submergō, ere, mersī, mersus*.
Dumnorix, *Dumnorix, ĭgis*, m.
during, *per*, w. Acc.; Acc. of duration of time.

E

each (one), *quisque, quaeque, quidque* (**372**); **(of two)** *uterque, traque, trumque* (**593**).
easily, *facile*.
easy, *facilis, e*.
egg, *ōvum, ī*, n.
embassy, *lēgātiō, ōnis*, f.
encamp, *cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus*.
encourage, *cohortor, ārī, ātus sum* (**314**).
endure, *sustineō, ēre, uī, tentus*.
enemy, *hostis, is*, m. and f., generally in pl.
engagement, *proelium, ī*, n.
engine, hurling, *tormentum, ī*, n.
enjoy, *fruor, ī, frūctus sum* (**314** seq.), *ūtor, ī, ūsus sum*, w. Abl.
enroll, *cōnscrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus*.
entrust, *permittō, ere, mīsī, missus*.
envy, *invideō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus*, w. Dat.
equip, *ōrnō*, 1.
establish, *cōnfīrmō*, 1.
Eurystheus, *Eurystheus, ī*, m.
even up to, *ūsque ad*, w. Acc.
evening, *vesper, erī*, m.; **at or toward evening**, *sub vesperum*.
everything, *omnia, ium*, n. pl.
excel, *praestō, āre, stitī*, —; *superō*, 1.
excellently, *ēgregiē*.
except, *nisi*.
exertion, *contentiō, ōnis*, f.
extend, *pertineō, ēre, uī, tentus*; **(stretch out)**, *pandō, ere, ī, passus*.

F

fable, *fābula, ae*, f.
fact, *rēs, reī*, f.
faithful, *fidus, a, um*.
famous, *clārus, a, um*.
farmer, *agricola, ae*, m.

farther, *ulterior, ius.*
fault, *culpa, ae*, f.
favor, *grātia, ae*, f.
fear, *timor, ōris*, m.
fear, *timeō, ēre, uī, —*; *vereor, ērī, itus sum* (**314** seq.).
feather, *penna, ae*, f.
feed, *pāscō, ere, pāvī, pāstus* or *pāscor, ī, pāstus sum.*
fertile, *fertilis, e.*
few, *paucī, ae, a.*
field, *ager, rī*, m.
fierce, *ācer, cris, cre; ferus, a, um.*
fiercely, *ācriter.*
fight, *pūgnō*, 1.
find, *inveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus;* **find out**, *reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus.*
finish, *cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus.*
fire, set on, *incendō, ere, dī, cēnsus.*
five, *quīnque*, indec.
fixed, *certus, a, um.*
flee, *fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitus.*
fleet, *clāssis, is*, f.
flight, *fuga, ae*, f.
fly, *volō*, 1; **fly out**, *ēvolō*, 1.
follow, *sequor, ī, cūtus sum* (**314**).
foot, *pēs, pedis*, m.; **at the foot of**, *sub*, w. Abl.
for, *enim* (post-posit.); sign of Dat.; sign of Acc. of duration of time; sign of Abl. of cause.
forage, *pābulum, ī*, n.
force, *vīs* (*vīs*), f.; *impetus, ūs*, m.
forces, *cōpiae, ārum*, f. pl.
forced marches, *māgna itinera*, n. pl.
forest, *silva, ae*, f.
form, *fōrma, ae*, f.
former, *prīstinus, a, um;* (in contrast with latter), *ille, a, ud* (**599**).
fortify, *mūniō*, 4.
fortress, *castellum, ī*, n.
fortune (good), *fōrtūna, ae*, f.
four, *quattuor*, indec.
fourth, *quārtus, a, um.*
fox, *vulpēs, is*, f.
free, *līberō*, 1.
frequent, *crēber, bra, brum.*
fresh strength, with, *integrīs vīribus.*
friend, *amīcus, ī*, m.
friendly, *amīcus, a, um.*
friendship, *amīcitia, ae*, f.
frighten, *terreō*, 2.
from, *ā* or *ab*, w. Abl.; *dē*, w. Abl.
fruits (of field), *frūgēs, um*, f. pl.
furnish, *praebeō*, 2.

G

Galba, *Galba, ae*, m.
garment, *vestis, is*, f.
garrison, *praesidium, ī*, n.
gate, *porta, ae*, f.
Gaul, *Gallia, ae*, f.
Gauls, *Gallī, ōrum*, m. pl.
general, *dux, ducis*, m.; *imperātor, ōris*, m.
generosity, *līberālitās, ātis*, f.
Germans, *Germānī, ōrum*, m. pl.
giant, *gigās, antis*, m.
girdle, *zōna, ae*, f.
girl, *puella, ae*, f.
give, *dō, dare, dedī, datus;* **give up**, *dēdō, ere, didī, ditus; trādō, ere, didī, ditus.*
glad, *laetus, a, um.*
go, *eō, īre, īvī* or *iī, itūrus* (**623**); **go away**, *discēdō, ere, cessī, cessus; abeō, īre, iī, itūrus;* **go on**, *gerō, ere, gessī, gestus;* **go out of**, *exeō, īre, iī, itūrus.*
goat, *capra, ae*, f.
god, *deus, deī*, m.
gold, *aurum, ī*, n.
golden, *aureus, a, um.*
good, *bonus, a, um.*
graceful, *gracilis, e.*
gradually, *paulātim.*
grain, *frūmentum, ī*, n.; **grain supplies**, *rēs frūmentāria, reī frūmentāriae*, f.
grape, *ūva, ae*, f.
grassy, *herbidus, a, um.*
gravely, *graviter.*
great, *māgnus, a, um.*
groundless, *falsus, a, um.*
guard, *praesidium, ī*, n.
guard, *cūstōdiō*, 4.
guest-friend, *hospes, itis*, m.

H

hand, *manus, ūs*, f.; **be at hand**, *suppetō, ere, petīvī, ītūrus.*
happen, *incidō, ere, cidī, cāsus.*

happy, *fēlix, īcis; laetus, a, um.*
hasten, *properō*, 1; *mātūrō*, 1; *contendō, ere, dī, tus.*
have, *habeō*, 2; Dat. of possessor (**146**); **have to**, 2d Periphr. Conj. (**537**).
he, *is* (**598**), *hīc* (**598**), *ille* (**599**).
heap, *acervus, ī*, m.
hear, *audiō*, 4.
heat, *calor, ōris*, m.
height, *altitūdō, inis*, f.
help, *auxilium, ī*, n.
help, *adsum, esse, fuī, futūrus*, w. Dat. (**615** seq.).
Helvetians (Helvetii), *Helvētiī, ōrum*, m. pl.
hen, *gallīna, ae*, f.
Hercules, *Herculēs, is*, m.
here, *hīc.*
hide, *condō, ere, didī, ditus.*
high, *altus, a, um*; **high priest**, *pontifex, icis*, m.
higher, *superior, ius.*
hill, *collis, is*, m.; **up hill**, *adversō colle.*
himself, see **self.**
hinder, *impediō*, 4.
hindrance, *impedīmentum, ī*, n.
his, *ēius* (**598**), *hūius* (**598**), *illīus* (**599**); reflexive *suus, a, um.*
hither, *hūc.*
hold, *teneō, ēre, uī, tus*; **hold back**, *retineō*, 2.
home, *domus, ūs* or *ī*, f. (**134**); **at home**, *domī*; **home supplies**, *rēs domesticae*, f. pl.
honor, *honor, ōris*, m.
hope, *spēs, speī*, f.
horse, *equus, ī*, m.
horseman, *eques, itis*, m.
hostage, *obses, idis*, m. and f.
hostile, *inimīcus, a, um.*
hour, *hōra, ae*, f.
house, *domus, ūs* or *ī*, f. (**134**).
however, *autem* (post-posit.); *tamen.*
hundred, *centum*, indec.
hurl, *iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactus.*
hurling engine, *tormentum, ī*, n.

I

I, *ego, meī* (**596**).
Iccius, *Iccius, ī*, m.
if, *sī*; **if not**, *nisi.*
immediately, *statim.*
implore, *implōrō*, 1,
in, *in*, w. Abl.
incredible, *incrēdibilis, e.*
indignity, *indignitās, ātis*, f.
infantry forces, *cōpiae pedestrēs*, f. pl.
influence, *grātia, ae*, f.
inform, *certiōrem faciō, ere, fēcī, certior factus.*
inhabit, *incolō, ere, uī, cultus*; *habitō*, 1.
inhabitant, *incola, ae*, m.
injury, *iniūria, ae*, f.
injustice, *iniūria, ae*, f.
insolently, *īnsolenter.*
inspire (in), *iniciō, ere, iēcī, iectus.*
insult, *contumēlia, ae*, f.
interior, *interior, ius* (**595**).
into, *in*, w. Acc.
intrust, *permittō, ere, mīsī, missus.*
irritable, *īrācundus, a, um.*
island, *īnsula, ae*, f.
it, *is, ea, id.*
Italy, *Ītalia, ae*, f.

J

join battle, *manūs cōnserō, ere, uī, tus*; **join with** or **together**, *coniungō, ere, iūnxī, iūnctus.*
journey, *iter, itineris*, n.
Jura, *Iūra, ae*, m.
just, *iūstus, a, um.*
justice, *iūstitia, ae*, f.

K

keep apart, *distineō, ēre, uī, tentus*; **keep from**, *prohibeō*, 2; **keep in**, *contineō*, 2.
kept, sign of imperfect of repeated action.
kid, *haedus, ī*, m.
kill, *interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus; occīdō, ere, cīdī, cīsus; trucīdō*, 1.
kindness, *beneficium, ī*, n.
king, *rēx, rēgis*, m.
kinsman, *cōnsanguineus, ī*, m.
know, *intellegō, ere, lēxī, lēctus; sciō, īre, īvī, itus.*

L

Labienus, *Lābiēnus, ī*, m.
labor, *labor, ōris*, m.

lacking, be, *dēsum, esse, fuī, futūrus*, w. Dat. (**615** seq.).
lake, *lacus, ūs*, m.
lamb, *āgnus, ī*, m.
land, *terra, ae*, f.
large, *māgnus, a, um.*
last, *proximus, a, um;* adv., *proximē;* **at last,** *dēnique.*
latter, *hīc* (**598**).
law, *lēx, lēgis*, f.
lay (an egg), *pariō, ere, peperī, partus;* **lay waste,** *vāstō*, 1.
lead, *dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus;* **lead across,** *trādūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus;* lead down, *dēdūcō;* **lead forward,** *prōdūcō;* **lead out,** *ēdūcō;* **lead through,** *perdūcō;* **lead together,** *condūcō.*
leader, *dux, ducis*, m.
leadership, *prīncipātus, ūs*, m.; *summa, ae*, f.
leap up, *subsiliō, īre, uī*, —.
leave, *relinquō, ere, līquī, lictus.*
left, *sinister, tra, trum.*
legion, *legiō, ōnis*, f.
length, at, *dēnique, dēmum.*
lest, *nē*, w. Subj.
let, sign of Imp. or Hortatory Subj.; **let loose,** *āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus; ēmittō.*
letter (of alphabet), *littera, ae*, f.; (epistle), *litterae, ārum*, f. pl.
lieutenant, *lēgātus, ī*, m.
life, *vīta, ae*, f.
likewise, *item; quoque* (after the emphatic word).
line of battle, *aciēs, ēī*, f.; **line of march,** *āgmen, inis*, n.
lion, *leō, ōnis*, m.
Liscus, *Liscus, ī*, m.
live, *vīvō, ere, vīxī, vīctus;* **live in,** *incolō, ere, uī, cultus; habitō;* 1.
long, *longus, a, um; māgnus, a, um;* adv., *diū.*
longer, *diūtius.*
lose, *āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus; perdō, ere, didī, ditus.*

M

magnitude, *māgnitūdō, inis*, f.
make, *faciō, ere, fēcī, factus;* **make a march,** *iter faciō.*
man, *vir, virī*, m.; (human being), *homō, inis*, m. and f.
manner, *modus, ī*, m.
many, *multī, ae, a*, pl.
march, *iter, itineris*, n.; **on the march,** *ex* or *in itinere.*
march, *iter faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.*
mare, *equa, ae*, f.
marsh, *palūs, ūdis*, f.
mass, *massa, ae*, f.
master, *magister, trī*, m.; **become master of,** *potior, īrī, ītus sum* (**314, 315**).
means, by no, *minimē.*
meantime, in the, *intereā.*
meet, *occurrō, ere, currī, cursus* (w. Dat.).
memory, *memoria, ae*, f.
messenger, *nūntius, ī*, m.
middle of, *medius, a, um* (**658**).
mile, *mīlle passūs* (**664**).
military affairs, *rēs mīlitāris, reī mīlitāris*, f.
mind, *mēns, mentis*, f.; *animus, ī*, m.
mine, *meus, a, um.*
mischief, *maleficium, ī*, n.
misfortune, *malum, ī*, n.
missile, *tēlum, ī*, n.
mock, *lūdificō*, 1.
more, *magis*, adv.; sign of comparative.
moreover, *praetereā; autem* (post-posit.).
mount, mountain, *mōns, montis*, m.
move, *moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus; commoveō*, 2.
much, *multus, a, um;* adv., *multō, multum.*
multitude, *multitūdō, inis*, f.
my, *meus, a, um.*

N

naked, *nūdus, a, um.*
name, *nōmen, inis*, n.
Nantuates, *Nantuātēs, um*, m. pl.
narrow, *angustus, a, um.*
nation, *nātiō, ōnis*, f.
nature, *nātūra, ae*, f.
naval, *nāvālis, e.*
near, *prope, ad*, w. Acc.
nearest, *proximus, a, um.*
nearly, *prope, paene.*
necessary, *necesse*, indec.
neighboring, *finitimus, a, um.*

neighbors, *finitimī, ōrum*, m. pl.
neither . . . nor, *neque . . . neque.*
Nervii, *Nervii, ōrum*, m. pl.
net, *rēte, is*, n.
never, *nunquam.*
nevertheless, *tamen.*
new, *novus, a, um.*
night, by, *noctū.*
ninth, *nōnus, a, um.*
no, *nōn*, w. verb repeated; **no (one), nobody**, *nūllus, a, um; nēmō*, Dat. *nēminī.*
nobility, *nōbilitās, ātis*, f.
not, *nōn;* **not to**, *nē*, w. Subj.; **not yet**, *nōndum.*
nothing, *nihil*, indec.
Noviodunum, *Noviodūnum, ī*, n.
number, *numerus, ī*, m.; *multitūdō, inis*, f.

O

oar, *rēmus, ī*, m.
occupy, *occupō*, 1.
Octodurus, *Octodūrus, ī*, m.
of, sign of Gen.; *dē*, w. Abl.
often, *saepe.*
on, *in*, w. Abl.
once, *quondam;* **at once**, *statim.*
one, *ūnus, a, um* (**593**); **one . . . another**, *alius . . . alius;* **the one . . . the other**, *alter . . . alter;* **to one another**, *inter sē.*
open, *apertus, a, um;* **lay open**, *patefaciō, ere, fēcī, factus.*
or, *aut.*
order (rank), *ōrdō, inis* m.; *mandātum, ī*, n.; **in order to**, *ut*, w. Subj.
order, *iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus* (w. Inf.); *imperō*, 1 (w. Subj. usually).
Orgetorix, *Orgetorīx, īgis*, m.
other, *alius, a, ud* (**593**); **other side of, on the**, *trāns*, w. Acc.; *ultrā*, w. Acc.
ought, *dēbeō*, 2; 2nd Periphr. Conj. (**537**)
our, *noster, tra, trum;* **our men**, *nostrī, ōrum*, m. pl.
out of, *ē, ex*, w. Abl.
outcry, *clāmor, ōris*, m.
over, *in*, w. Abl.
overcome, *vincō, ere, vīcī, victus; superō*, 1.
own, his, *suus, a, um.*
ox, *bōs, bovis*, m.

P

pace, *passus, ūs*, m.
pardon, *ignōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtus*, w. Dat.
part, *pars, partis*, f.
pass by, *praetereō, īre, iī, itus.*
passionate, *irācundus, a, um.*
peace, *pāx, pācis*, f.
people, *populus, ī*, m.
perish, *pereō, īre, iī, itūrus.*
persuade, *persuādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsus* (w. Dat.).
pick up, *conligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus; tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus.*
pillar, *columna, ae*, f.
pitch, *pōnō, ere, posuī, positus.*
pity, *miserēscō, ere*, —, —.
place, *locus, ī*, m.; pl., *loca, ōrum*, n.
place, *pōnō, ere, posuī, positus; statuō, ere, uī, ūtus; conlocō*, 1.
plain, *campus, ī*, m.
plan, *cōnsilium, ī*, n.
pleasure, *voluptās, ātis*, f.
poisoned, *venēnātus, a, um.*
power, royal, *rēgnum, ī*, n.
powerful, *potēns, entis.*
praise, *laudō*, 1.
precious, *cārus, a, um.*
prefer, *mālō, mālle, māluī*, — (**619** seq.).
prepare, *parō*, 1; *comparō*, 1.
present, be, *adsum, esse, fuī, futūrus* (**615**).
pretend, *simulō*, 1.
pride, *spīritus, ūs*, m.
priest, high, *pontifex, icis*, m.
private, *prīvātus, a, um.*
proceed, a march, *iter prōcēdō*, 3.
Procillus, *C. Valerius Procillus, C. Valerī Procillī*, m.
proclaim, *nūntiō*, 1; *praedicō*, 1.
prolong, *perdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.*
property, all their, *sua omnia*, n. pl.
protection, *praesidium, ī*, n.
provide, *comparō*, 1.
province, *prōvincia, ae*, f.
provisions, *cōpiae, ārum*, f. pl.; *commeātus, ūs*, m.

provoke, *lacessō, ere, īvī, ītus.*
prudence, *prūdentia, ae*, f.
prudently, *prūdenter.*
pupil, *discipulus, ī*, m.
purchase, *emō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus.*
purpose of, for the, *ad*, w. Acc. of gerundive.
pursue, *īnsequor, ī, cūtus sum* (**314**).
push up, *agō, ere, ēgī, āctus.*

Q

quarters, *partēs, ium*, f. pl.; **winter quarters**, *hīberna, ōrum*, n. pl.
queen, *rēgīna, ae*, f.
quickly, *celeriter.*
quickness, *celeritās, ātis*, f.

R

rampart, *vāllum, ī*, n.
ravage, *vāstō*, 1.
reach, *attingō, ere, tigī, tāctus.*
read, *legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus.*
ready, *parātus, a, um.*
reason, *causa, ae*, f.; **for this reason**, *quā dē causā.*
receive, *accipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus.*
recently, *nūper*; **most recently**, *proximē.*
recover, *reciperō*, 1.
redoubt, *castellum, ī*, n.
reduce, *redigō, ere, ēgī, āctus.*
refrain from, *supersedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus.*
refuse, *recūsō*, 1.
regard to, in, *dē*, w. Abl.
rejoice, *gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum* (**320**).
remain, *maneō, ēre, mānsī, sus.*
Remi, *Rēmī, ōrum*, m. pl.
render, *reddō, ere, didī, ditus.*
renew, *renovō*, 1.
reply, *respondeō, ēre, spondī, spōnsus.*
repulse, *repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsus.*
respects, in all, *omnibus rēbus*, Abl. pl.
rest of, *reliquus, a, um.*
retain, *retineō, ēre, uī, tentus.*
return, *redeō, īre, iī, itūrus*; *revertor, ī, versus sum.*
revenue, *vectīgal, ālis*, n.
revile, *maledīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus*, w. Dat.
reward, *praemium, ī*, n.
Rhine, *Rhēnus, ī*, m.
Rhone, *Rhodanus, ī*, m.
ride, pass. of *vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus*; **ride towards**, *adequitō*, 1.
right of way, *iter, itineris*, n.
ripe, *mātūrus, a, um.*
river, *flūmen, inis*, n.; **river bank**, *rīpa, ae*, f.
road, *via, ae*, f.; *iter, itineris*, n.
rock, *rūpēs, is*, f.
Roman, *Rōmānus, a, um.*
Rome, *Rōma, ae*, f.
royal power, *rēgnum, ī*, n.
rumor, *rūmor, ōris*, m.
run down, *dēcurrō, ere, cucurrī* or *currī, cursus.*
rush against, *concurrō, ere, cucurrī* or *currī, cursus.*

S

Sabinus, *Sabīnus, ī*, m.
sacred, *sacer, cra, crum.*
sacrifice, *sacrificō*, 1.
safe, *incolumis, e*; *tūtus, a, um.*
safety, *salūs, ūtis*, f.
sail, *nāvigō*, 1.
sailor, *nauta, ae*, m.
sally, *ēruptiō, ōnis*, f.
same, *īdem, eadem, idem* (**296**).
save, *servō*, 1.
say, *dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus*; **says he**, *inquit*, placed in the midst of a direct quotation.
scarcity, *inopia, ae*, f.
scout, *explōrātor, ōris*, m.
sea, *mare, is*, n.
second, *secundus, a, um.*
secretly, *clam.*
see, *videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus.*
seek, *petō, ere, īvī, ītus.*
seize, *occupō*, 1.
select, *dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus.*
self, *ipse, a, um* (intensive) (**599**); *suī* (reflexive) (**597**).
senate, *senātus, ūs*, m.
send, *mittō, ere, mīsī, missus*; **send forward**, *praemittō*, 3.
separate, *dīvidō, ere, vīsī, vīsus.*
Sequani, *Sēquanī, ōrum*, m. pl.
serpent, *serpēns, entis*, m. or f.

set on fire, *incendō, ere, dī, cēnsus;* **set out**, *proficīscor, ī, fectus sum.*
settle, *cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus.*
seven, *septem*, indec.
seventh, *septimus, a, um.*
severely, *graviter.*
shed, *vinea, ae*, f.
shield, *scūtum, ī*, n.
short, *brevis, e.*
shout, *clāmor, ōris*, m.
shower, *imber, bris*, m.
side, *latus, eris*, n.; **on the other side**, *trāns* or *ultrā*, w. Acc.; **on this side**, *cis* or *citrā*, w. Acc.
sight, *cōnspectus, ūs*, m.
signal, *significātiō, ōnis*, f.; *signum, ī*, n.
since, *cum*, w. subj.; Abl. abs.
six, *sex*, indec.
six hundred, *sēscentī, ae, a.*
sixth, *sextus, a, um.*
size, *māgnitūdō, inis*, f.
skiff, *nāvicula, ae*, f.
slight, *parvulus, a, um.*
slinger, *funditor, ōris*, m.
slope, *vergō, ere*, —, —.
small, *parvus, a, um.*
snatch away, *ēripiō, ere, uī, reptus.*
snow, *nix, nivis*, f.
so, *ita, tam;* **so great**, *tantus, a, um.*
soldier, *mīles, itis*, m.
some (one), *aliquis, qua, quid* (*quod*) (602); **some . . . others**, *aliī . . . aliī* (593); **some in one direction, some in another**, *aliī aliam in partem.*
son, *filius, ī*, m.
soon, *mox;* **as soon as**, *simul atque* or *ac; cum prīmum.*
sour, *acerbus, a, um.*
space, *spatium, ī*, n.; **space of three days**, *trīduum, ī*, n.; **space of two days**, *bīduum, ī*, n.
Spain, *Hispānia, ae*, f.
spare, *parcō, ere, pepercī, parsus*, w. Dat.
speak, *loquor, ī, cūtus sum; dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus.*
speed, *celeritās, ātis*, f.
stag, *cervus, ī*, m.
standard, *signum, ī*, n.
standard bearer, *signifer, erī*, m.
state, *cīvitās, ātis*, f.
station, *statuō, ere, uī, ūtus.*
still, *tamen.*
sting, *punctus, ūs*, m.
stone, *lapis, idis*, m.
storm, *oppūgnō*, 1.
story, *fābula, ae*, f.
strength, *vīs* (*vis*), f.; **with fresh strength**, *integrīs vīribus.*
such a, *tālis, e.*
sudden, *subitus, a, um.*
suddenly, *subitō.*
Suessiones, *Suessiōnēs, um*, m. pl.
suffer, *patior, ī, passus sum* (314); *doleō, ēre, uī, itūrus; ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.*
suitable, *idōneus, a, um.*
summer, *aestās, ātis*, f.; **in the beginning of summer**, *initā aestāte.*
summit, *vertex, icis*, m.
summon, *arcessō, ere, īvī, ītus.*
sun, *sōl, is*, m.; *Hēlios, ī*, m.
sunset, *sōlis occāsus, ūs*, m.; **at sunset**, *sub occāsū sōlis.*
suppliant, *supplex, icis*, m. and f.
supplies from home, *rēs domesticae*, f. pl.
supply, *cōpia, ae*, f.
surpass, *superō*, 1.
surrender, *dēditiō, ōnis*, f.
surrender, *trādō, ere, didī, ditus.*
survive, *supersum, esse, fuī, futūrus* (615 seq.).
sweet, *dulcis, e.*
swiftly, *celeriter.*
swiftness, *celeritās, ātis*, f.
sword, *gladius, ī*, m.

T

take, *capiō, ere, cēpī, captus;* **take by assault or storm**, *expūgnō*, 1.
teach, *doceō, ēre, uī, tus.*
tear in pieces, *laniō*, 1.
tell, *nārrō*, 1; *dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus.*
temple, *templum, ī*, n.
ten, *decem*, indec.
tenth, *decimus, a, um.*
terms, *condiciō, ōnis*, f.
terrify, *terreō*, 2; **terrify greatly or thoroughly**, *perterreō*, 2.
territory, *fīnēs, ium*, m. pl.

than, *quam;* Abl. after comp.
that, *is, ea, id* (**598**); *ille, a, ud* (**599**); (rel.), *quī, quae, quod;* that, in order that, so that, *ut;* that not, *nē, ut nōn;* but that, that, *quīn;* that (after verbs of fearing), *nē.*
their, *suus, a, um* (reflexive); *eōrum, ārum, ōrum*, Gen. pl. of **is** (**598**).
themselves. See **self.**
then, *tum.*
there (adv.), *ibi;* (expletive) not translated.
therefore, *itaque, quārē, quā dē causā.*
they, *illī, ae, a* (**599**); *iī, eae, ea* (**598**).
thing, *rēs, reī*, f.
think, *arbitror, ārī, ātus sum* (**314**).
third, *tertius, a, um.*
this, *hīc, haec, hōc* (**598**).
threaten, *minitor, ārī, ātus sum* (**314**).
three, *trēs, tria.*
through, *per*, w. Acc.
throw, *iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactus;* **throw into**, *iniciō, ere, iēcī, iectus.*
thus, *ita.*
Tigurinus, *Tigurīnus, ī*, m.
time, *tempus, oris*, n.
timid, *timidus, a, um.*
to, sign of Dat.; *ad*, w. Acc.; sign of subj. of purpose.
too, comp. of adj. or adv.
top, *vertex, icis*, m.; **top of**, *summus, a, um* (**237**).
toward (towards), *ad*, w. Acc.
tower, *turris, is*, f.
town, *oppidum, ī*, n.
train, *exerceō*, 2.
transport, *trādūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus; trānsportō*, 1.
tribune, *tribūnus, ī*, m.
triple, *triplex, plicis.*
troops, *cōpiae, ārum*, f. pl.
trouble, *negōtium, ī*, n.
trust firmly, *cōnfīdō, ere, fīsus sum* (**320**).
try, *cōnor, ārī, ātus sum* (**314**).
tumult, *tumultus, ūs*, m.
turn aside, *āvertō, ere, vertī, versus.*
turned away, *āversus, a, um.*
twelve, *duodecim*, indec.
twig, *virgula, ae*, f.
two, *duo, ae, o.*
two-headed, *biceps, ipitis.*
two hundred, *ducentī, ae, a.*

U

unarmed, *inermis, e.*
under, *sub.*, w. Acc. or Abl.
undertake, *cōnor, ārī, ātus sum* (**314**).
undertaking, *cōnātus, ūs*, m.
Unelli, *Unellī, ōrum*, m. pl.
unfriendly, *inimīcus, a, um.*
unhappy, *miser, era, erum.*
unlike, *dissimilis, e.*
until, *ūsque ad*, w. Acc.
unwilling, be, *nōlō, nōlle, nōluī*, —.
unworthy, *indīgnus, a, um.*
upon, *in*, w. Acc. and Abl.; *super*, w. Acc. and Abl.
urge on, *incitō*, 1.
use, *ūsus, ūs*, m.
use, *ūtor, ī, ūsus sum*, w. Abl. (**314**).

V

vain, in, *frūstrā.*
valor, *virtūs, ūtis*, f.
value, of less, *dēterior, ius.*
vast, *vāstus, a, um.*
Veneti, *Venetī, ōrum*, m. pl.
very, adj. or adv. in superl.
Vesontio, *Vesontiō, ōnis*, m.
victory, *victōria, ae*, f.
village, *vīcus, ī*, m.
vine, *vītis, is*, f.
violently, *vehementer.*
visit, *vīsō, ere, vīsī, vīsus; adeō, īre, iī, itus.*
voice, *vōx, vōcis*, f.

W

wage, *gerō, ere, gessī, gestus;* **wage war**, *bellō*, 1.
wall, *mūrus, ī*, m.; *vāllum, ī*, n.
war, *bellum, ī*, n.
warlike, *bellicōsus, a, um.*
warn, *moneō*, 2.
waste, lay, *vāstō*, 1.
watch, *vigilia, ae*, f.
water, *aqua, ae*, f.

way, *via, ae*, f.; *iter, itineris*, n.
weapon, *tēlum, ī*, n.
weep, *fleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus*.
weeping, *flētus, ūs*, m.
well, *bene*, adv.
what (rel.), *quī, quae, quod* (**600**); (inter.), *quis, quae, quid* (**601**).
when (rel. and inter.), *cum, ubi*.
whence, *unde*.
where (rel. and inter.), *ubi, quō*.
which (rel.), *quī, quae, quod* (**600**); (inter.), *quis, quae, quid* (**601**).
while, *dum*.
who, *quī, quae; quis, quae*.
whole, *tōtus, a, um* (**593**).
whose, *cūius*, s.; *quōrum, quārum, quōrum*, pl. (**600**).
why, *cūr, quārē, quā dē causā*.
wicked, *improbus, a, um*.
wide, *lātus, a, um*.
width, *lātitūdō, inis*, f.
wife, *uxor, ōris*, f.
wild beast, *fera, ae*, f.
willing, be, *volō, velle, voluī*, — (**619** seq.).
willingly, *libenter*.
wine, *vīnum, ī*, n.
wing, *cornū, ūs*, n.
winter, *hiems, emis*, f.; **in time of winter**, *hiemis tempore*.
winter, *hiemō*, 1.
winter quarters, *hīberna, ōrum*, n. pl.
wise, *sapiēns, entis*.
wish, *volō, velle, voluī*, — (**619** seq.).
with, *cum*, w. Abl.
withdraw, *discēdō, ere, cessī, cessus; concēdō*, 3.
within, *intrā*, w. Acc.; sign of Abl. of time; adv., *intus*.
without, *sine*, w. Abl.
witness, *testis, is*, m. and f.
wolf, *lupus, ī*, m.
woman, *mulier, eris*, f.
wonder at, *mīror, ārī, ātus sum* (**314**).
wonderful, *mīrus, a, um*.
wont, be, *cōnsuēscō, ere, suēvī, suētus; soleō, ēre, itus sum* (**320**).
woods, *silva, ae*, f.
work, *opus, eris*, n.; *labor, ōris*, m.
worthy, *dīgnus, a, um*, w. Abl.
would that, *utinam*, w. Subj.
wound, *vulnus, eris*, n.
wound, *vulnerō*, 1.
wretched, *miser, era, erum*.

Y

year, *annus, ī*, m.
yes. See **97**.
you, *tū(s)* (**596**); *vōs* (pl.).
your, *tuus, a, um*, s.; *vester, tra, trum*, pl.

TYPOGRAPHY BY J. S. CUSHING & CO., NORWOOD, MASS.

Harkness's Standard Latin Text-Books

Harkness's Standard Latin Grammar
A new standard text-book for Schools and Colleges.
Cloth, 12mo, 430 pages $1.12

Harkness's Easy Method for Beginners in Latin
An elementary Grammar for beginners; a book of Latin Exercises and a Latin Reader.
Cloth, 12mo, 348 pages $1.20

Harkness's First Year in Latin
A complete course, including an outline of Latin Grammar, with progressive exercises in reading Latin, etc.
Cloth, 12mo, 332 pages $1.12

Harkness's Latin Exercises for the First Year
The same as the First Year in Latin, with the omission of the outline of Latin Grammar.
Cloth, 12mo, 268 pages $1.00

Harkness's New Latin Reader
A standard Latin Reader designed to accompany Harkness's Latin Grammar, with notes, vocabularies, etc.
Cloth, 12mo, 227 pages . . . . . 87 cents

Harkness's Introductory Latin Book
An outline of Latin Grammar, with special reference to drill on the inflections and principles of the language.
Cloth, 12mo, 162 pages . . . . . 87 cents

Harkness's Introduction to Latin Prose Composition
A book containing elementary exercises to accompany the Latin Reader; elements of Latin Syntax, Latin style, etc.
Cloth, 12mo, 306 pages $1.05

Harkness's Cæsar's Commentaries
New edition, with colored illustrations, maps, notes, vocabulary, etc.
Cloth, 12mo, 377 pages $1.20

Harkness's Cicero's Orations
Containing ten orations, with explanatory notes, vocabulary, etc.
Cloth, 12mo, 398 pages $1.22

Harkness's Sallust's Catiline
Adapted to the Standard Latin Grammar, with notes, vocabulary, etc.
Cloth, 12mo, 165 pages . . . . . 90 cents

Harkness's Course in Cæsar, Sallust and Cicero
A preparatory course in Latin Reading, including four books of Cæsar, Sallust's Catiline, and eight orations of Cicero, with notes, vocabulary, etc.
Cloth, 12mo, 696 pages $1.40

Copies of any of the books of Harkness's Standard Latin Series will be sent prepaid to any address, on receipt of the price, by the Publishers:

American Book Company

New York • Cincinnati • Chicago

First Latin Readings

An Equivalent for Cæsar

By R. ARROWSMITH, Ph.D.
Professor of Latin and Greek, Teachers College, New York City

AND

G. M. WHICHER, M.A.
Instructor in Classics, Packer Collegiate Institute, Brooklyn, N. Y.

Cloth, 12mo, 344 pages. Price, $1.25

This work has been prepared in response to a growing demand for a new first reading book in Latin, offering more simple and interesting material for the second-year work than is now provided by Cæsar's Commentaries, the first connected reading pupils meet in the Latin course.

It is the aim of the present volume to offer for the student's first reading in Latin, material in which the least, rather than the more, difficult Latin comes first; which contains the largest possible general vocabulary, instead of a small special vocabulary; which is drawn from a wide, instead of a narrow, range of literature; and which may be associated with other departments of teaching with greater success and productiveness than Cæsar's Commentaries.

The selections in First Latin Readings have, therefore, been chosen with reference to their difficulty, their interest as literature, and, as far as possible, their relation to Roman life and custom, and not with reference to their exclusive use as drilling material on formal classical construction.

Exercises in Latin prose composition, based on the text of each author represented, have been prepared, and are included in the book.

Copies of First Latin Readings will be sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price by the Publishers:

American Book Company

New York • Cincinnati • Chicago

Latin Texts

CAESAR. Harkness's Caesar's Gallic War	$1.20
Harper and Tolman's Caesar's Gallic War	1.20
The same, Text Edition	.75
CICERO. Harkness's Cicero's Orations	1.22
Rockwood's Cicero's Cato Maior de Senectute	.75
Lord's Cicero's Laelius de Amicitia	.70
GELLIUS. Knapp's Stories from Aulus Gellius	.30
HORACE. Lincoln's Horace	1.22
JUVENAL. Lindsay's Satires of Juvenal	1.00
LIY. Lincoln's Livy's Roman History	1.22
NEPOS. Lindsay's Cornelius Nepos	1.10
Text Edition	.40
OVID. Lincoln's Ovid	1.22
QUINTILIAN. Frieze's Quintilian (Books X and XII)	1.20
QUINTUS CURTIUS RUFUS. Crosby's Quintus Curtius Rufus	1.05
SALLUST. Harkness's Sallust's Catiline	.90
Herbermann's Sallust's Jugurthine War	1.12
TACITUS. Tyler's Histories of Tacitus	1.22
Tyler's Germania and Agricola of Tacitus	.87
VERGIL. Frieze's Vergil's Aeneid (Complete)	1.30
The same, Text Edition	.50
Frieze's Vergil's Aeneid (Six Books), Bucolics, and Georgics	1.30
Frieze's Vergil's Bucolics and Georgics. Text Edition	.25
Frieze's Vergil's Complete Works	1.60
Harper and Miller's Vergil's Aeneid (Six Books)	1.25
Harper and Miller's Vergil's Aeneid (Six Books), and Bucolics	1.50
Searing's Vergil's Aeneid (Six Books), Bucolics, and Georgics	1.60
Searing's Vergil's Aeneid (Six Books)	1.40
VIRI ROMAE. Arrowsmith and Knapp's Selections from Viri Romae	.75
Text Edition	.25
LATIN READINGS. Arrowsmith & Whicher's First Latin Readings	1.25
LATIN PROSE. Harkness's Preparatory Course in Latin Prose Authors (Caesar, Sallust, Cicero)	1.40
ROMAN LIFE. Peck and Arrowsmith's Roman Life in Latin Prose and Verse	1 50
ROMAN SATIRE. Merrill's Fragments of Roman Satire	.75
EPIGRAPHY. Egbert's Latin Inscriptions. Fully Illustrated	3.50

Copies of any of the above books will be sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price by the Publishers:

American Book Company

NEW YORK • CINCINNATI • CHICAGO

Harper's Classical Series

LATIN

Harper and Burgess's Inductive Latin Primer
By WM. R. HARPER, Ph.D., D.D., President of the University of Chicago, and ISAAC B. BURGESS, A.M., of the University of Chicago.
Cloth, 12mo, 424 pages $1.00

Harper and Burgess's Inductive Latin Method
Cloth, 12mo, 323 pages $1.00
Both the Latin Primer and Latin Method are designed for beginners, and to supply an adequate preparation for reading Cæsar. The Primer is more elementary and easier in grade, and is thus suited to pupils less mature or less thoroughly trained than those who can take up the Method.

Harper and Tolman's Cæsar's Gallic War
Eight Books. By WM. R. HARPER, Ph.D., D.D., and HERBERT CUSHING TOLMAN, Ph.D., of Vanderbilt University.
Cloth, 12mo, 502 pages $1.20
THE SAME. Text only . . . . . 75 cents

Harper and Miller's Vergil's Æneid
Six Books of the Æneid. With Notes and Vocabulary. By WM. R. HARPER, Ph.D., D.D., and F. J. MILLER, Ph.D., of the University of Chicago. Cloth, 12mo, 461 pages $1.25

Harper and Miller's Vergil's Æneid (six books) and Bucolics
With Notes and Vocabulary. Cloth, 12mo, 564 pages . $1.50

GREEK

Harper and Castle's Inductive Greek Primer
On the same plan as the Inductive Latin Primer. By WM. R. HARPER, Ph.D., D.D., and CLARENCE F. CASTLE, Ph.D., of the University of Chicago. Cloth, 12mo, 416 pages . . $1.25

Harper and Waters's Inductive Greek Method
By WM. R. HARPER, Ph.D., D.D., and WILLIAM E. WATERS, Ph.D.
Cloth, 12mo, 355 pages $1.00
The Greek Primer and Greek Method are similar in plan and scope to the corresponding books of the Latin series, and either book will prepare for the reading of Xenophon's Anabasis.

Harper and Castle's Exercises in Greek Prose Composition
By WM. R. HARPER, Ph.D., D.D., and CLARENCE F. CASTLE, Ph.D.
Cloth, 12mo, 127 pages . . . . . 75 cents

Harper and Wallace's Xenophon's Anabasis
By WM. R. HARPER, Ph.D., D.D., and JAMES WALLACE, Ph.D.
Seven Books. The first four books have full Notes, Topics for Collateral Study, Inductive Exercises, Vocabulary, etc. The last three books are arranged for practice in sight reading.
Cloth, 12mo, 575 pages $1.50

Copies of any of the above books will be sent prepaid to any address, on receipt of the price, by the Publishers:

American Book Company

New York • Cincinnati • Chicago

Greek Methods

Gleason and Atherton's First Greek Book

By CLARENCE W. GLEASON, A.M., Master in the Roxbury Latin School, and CAROLINE STONE ATHERTON, A.M. With an introduction by William C. Collar, A.M.
Cloth, 12mo, 299 pages $1.00

This new book for beginners is constructed on new and original lines, representing the best modern methods of teaching the language and the changed position of Greek in the school course.

Harper and Castle's Inductive Greek Primer

By WILLIAM R. HARPER, Ph.D., D.D., President of the University of Chicago, and CLARENCE F. CASTLE, Ph.D.
Cloth, 12mo, 416 pages. Illustrated $1.25

This first book for beginners in Greek is based on the inductive method of teaching language. It combines in one volume a progressive grammar, a preparatory Greek composition, and an introduction to the reading of a first Greek author.

Coy's Greek for Beginners

By EDWARD G. COY, A.M. Cloth, 12mo, 152 pages . . $1.00

A companion book to Hadley and Allen's Greek Grammar and an introduction to either Coy's First Greek Reader, or the Anabasis of Xenophon.

Harkness's First Greek Book

By ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph.D., LL.D. Cloth, 12mo, 276 pp. $1.05

An introductory Greek Grammar and Greek Reader designed to accompany Hadley and Allen's Greek Grammar, with references also to Goodwin's and Crosby's Grammars.

Pearson's Greek Prose Composition

By HENRY C. PEARSON, A.B. Cloth, 12mo, 187 pages . $0.90

The aim of this book is to combine a thorough and systematic study of the essentials of Greek Syntax with abundant practice in translating and in composition.

Harper and Castle's Exercises in Greek Prose Composition

By WILLIAM R. HARPER, Ph.D., D.D., and CLARENCE F. CASTLE, Ph.D. Cloth, 12mo, 127 pages $0.75

These exercises are based on the first four books of Xenophon's Anabasis, to which are added inductive studies in the uses of the Greek Modes, designed to aid the pupil in the study of Greek Syntax.

Copies of any of the above books will be sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price by the Publishers:

American Book Company

NEW YORK • CINCINNATI • CHICAGO

The First Greek Book

BY

C. W. GLEASON, A.M.
Master in the Roxbury Latin School

C. S. ATHERTON, A.M.
Late of the Roxbury Latin School

WITH AN INTRODUCTION BY

WILLIAM C. COLLAR, A.M.

Flexible cloth, 285 pages. Illustrated. Price, $1.00

In the preparation of this new book for beginners, the authors have had in mind the changed position of Greek in the school course. Believing that the true aim of Greek study is the development of the power to read Greek authors, they have departed in many features from the time-honored practice of introductory Greek books. The essentials of the language are presented concisely and clearly; non-essentials are omitted; practice in form and construction is carried only far enough to insure definiteness.

Some of the distinctive features of the book are the following:

The second aorist, a tense constantly used, is introduced early in the book. Contract nouns and adjectives, always a stumbling-block, are postponed to a more natural position than is usually given them. The dual has been removed to its proper place, the appendix. Dialogues, fables, and reading exercises are given as early as possible and continued through the book. The study of forms begins with the verb, followed by the O-declension of nouns, as pupils find it easier to learn adjectives in the order of their declension, than to learn first the feminine, and later the masculine and neuter.

The English-Greek exercises have been made subordinate to the sentences to be translated into English, as that will be the pupil's main work in the study of Greek.

Copies of Gleason and Atherton's First Greek Book will be sent, prepaid, to any address, on receipt of the price, by the Publishers:

American Book Company

New York • Cincinnati • Chicago

This book should be returned to the Library on or before the last date stamped below.

A fine of five cents a day is incurred by retaining it beyond the specified time.

Please return promptly.

DUE DEC 24 1918

DUE DEC 22 1919

DUE JUL 11 1918

DUE AUG 12 1918

DUE SEP 30 1918

DUE NOV 4 1918

DUE MAY 2 1919